This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

A 1,025,816

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Masterpieces of the English Drama

CHRISTOPHER MARLOWE

WITH INTRODUCTION BY

WILLIAM LYON PHELPS

YALE UNIVERSITY

NEW YORK · CINCINNATI · CHICAGO

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Digitized by Google

822.8
M35
P54

COPYRIGHT, 1912, BY
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

MARLOWE.

W. P. 8

Digitized by Google

Replacement
Wahr
5-13-44
50207

D 5-15-44 MFP

CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	1
TAMBURLAINE THE GREAT. PART THE FIRST	27
TAMBURLAINE THE GREAT. PART THE SECOND	103
THE TRAGICAL HISTORY OF DOCTOR FAUSTUS	181
THE JEW OF MALTA	231
EDWARD THE SECOND	313
NOTES	406
GLOSSARY	423

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

CHRISTOPHER MARLOWE

BIOGRAPHICAL accounts of Marlowe resemble those of all other Elizabethan dramatists in containing two grains of fact in a bushel of conjecture.[1] Had Ben Jonson's library not been burned, or had Thomas Heywood spent the time on his projected *Lives of the Poets* that he squandered on the *Hierarchy of the Blessed Angels*, we should probably know for certain many things that remain shrouded in complete darkness. Nothing in literary history is more depressing to contemplate than the misdirected energy of Shakespeare's contemporaries; they produced huge folios on impossible themes. Had any one of them spent a half-holiday, during their busy years of quill-driving, in narrating the simple facts of Shakespeare's career, those few sheets would have outweighed in interest for us tons of the controversial, scholastic, and theolog-

[1] For all that is known, and much that has been guessed of Marlowe's career, see John H. Ingram, *Christopher Marlowe and his Associates*, London, 1904. He holds a brief for Marlowe's personal character, and discusses the various versions of his tragic death. The new light thrown on the relations between Marlowe and Kyd, by Professor Boas (see his edition of Kyd, Clarendon Press), is sceptically treated. Dyce's Introduction to Marlowe's *Works* is still valuable: other complete editions are Bullen's, 1887, and Brooke's, 1910. The histories of Elizabethan drama by Ward and by Schelling are scholarly and suggestive. An excellent bibliography, not only of Marlowe's writings, but of critical literature on the subject, is given in Ingram's book, and goes far to atone for the immense amount of guess-work with which this handsome volume is padded.

Digitized by Google

ical stuff that they built with so much toil. Heywood's alert and inquisitive mind seems to have had some notion of the future importance of such a book, for he said positively that it was his intention to produce a biographical history of the poets, ancient and modern, including all his contemporaries. But although he wrote over two hundred plays, and many other volumes, this particular one became valuable only as a paving-stone in an oft-mentioned place.

Of the actual facts in Marlowe's life we know little except that he was born in Canterbury in February, 1564, that he studied at Cambridge University (if the "Marlin" and "Chrof. Marlen" on the books there be the dramatist), and that he was killed by a person named Francis Archer, and buried at Deptford, June first, 1593.[1] We cannot even prove that he wrote *Tamburlaine*; the external evidence is astonishingly small. We have to assume it on the basis of a variety of contemporary references. We do not know whether or not he wrote any part of the early historical plays usually included in Shakespeare's works. We can form no idea of how many interpolations there may have been in the four plays on which his fame as a dramatist rests. Nor do we know for certain when a single one of these four dramas was composed or first acted; so that all the vast theories that have been erected on their chronological place in the Elizabethan drama rest upon guess-work.

Besides the four plays included in this volume, two others bearing Marlowe's name may receive passing mention, though as pieces of literature they are unimportant. On January third, 1593, while Marlowe

[1] Nothing whatever is known of his personal appearance.

Digitized by Google

was still living, *The Massacre at Paris* was put on the boards; this was published somewhat later, but there being no date on the title-page of what is apparently the earliest edition, the year of its first appearance in print is not known. This title-page, however, bears the legend, "Written by Christopher Marlowe." That is the only line in the whole volume of any real interest. Another play, *The Tragedy of Dido, Queen of Carthage*, was published in quarto form as early as 1594, and on the title-page appeared "Written by Christopher Marlowe and Thomas Nashe, Gent." This drama contains some verses that seem like faint echoes of the mighty line; but it also includes such gems of poetry as,

"Gentle Achates, reach the tinder-box,"

which we may hope supplied some of the fire lacking in the verse.

Marlowe wrote narrative and lyric poetry as well as dramatic. His translations from the Latin are worthless; but his splendid fragment, *Hero and Leander* (entered on the Stationers' Books, September twenty-eighth, 1593, and published in 1598), indicates a high order of creative genius. It is one of the most notable expressions of the Pagan Renaissance in England. The dramatist Chapman completed it, and although his part of the work is much finer than ordinary post mortem conclusions, it naturally suffers by comparison with the early portion. Out of the thousands of beautiful lyrical poems produced by the Elizabethans, Marlowe's exquisite *Passionate Shepherd to His Love*, commencing,

Digitized by Google

"Come live with me, and be my love,"

is one of the very best. The thrilling music of those spacious times is enchantingly heard in the splendid line,

"Melodious birds sing madrigals."

Although the author of *Tamburlaine the Great*[1] must apparently share with Thomas Kyd some of the glory of discovering the possibilities of dramatic blank verse and of founding the English romantic drama, still the appearance of this play is one of the most important events in the literary history of the English-speaking race. It is not going too far to say that "it worked a revolution in English dramatic art." The irrepressible conflict between the rules of the classicists and the freedom of the romanticists was permanently settled by *Tamburlaine*. He conquered the Elizabethan stage as in real life he conquered the world. The authority of Seneca, the learning of Sir Philip Sidney and his friends, the precedent of *Gorboduc*, were all overthrown by the colossal figure of the barbarian chieftain and the glorious poetry he uttered. At one blow the shackles of pseudo-classicism and vain pedantry were struck off; it took a Samson to do it, but he was at hand. It is within the limits of truth to say that the course of Elizabethan drama, the greatest part of the greatest period of the greatest literature of the world, was determined more by *Tamburlaine* than by any other single cause. And, unlike most literary beginnings, which are unconscious, the author of *Tamburlaine* was himself aware of the importance

[1] The first and second parts were both published in 1590

Digitized by Google

of his achievement — he knew what he was about. Like Milton in the Preface to *Paradise Lost*, like Jonson in the Prologue to *Every Man in his Humour*, like Victor Hugo in *Cromwell* and *Hernani*, the poet appeared with a definite program. Shakespeare was no innovator; he was content to do everything better than anybody else, and let his creations speak for themselves. Not so the maker of *Tamburlaine*. His prologue is a shout of defiance.

"From jigging veins of rhyming mother wits,
And such conceits as clownage keeps in pay,
We'll lead you to the stately tent of war,
Where you shall hear the Scythian Tamburlaine
Threatening the world with high astounding terms,
And scourging kingdoms with his conquering sword.
View but his picture in this tragic glass,
And then applaud his fortune as you please."

Here is a definite and uncompromising attack on rhyme as a vehicle of dramatic expression: a crack of the whip at professional buffoonery, so dear to Elizabethan spectators and so despised by the poets; and a contemptuous blow in the face to the public, whose attitude toward the piece was indifferent to the author, for it was written to please no one but himself.

Courage and conviction, backed by genius, had their natural reward. The first *matinée* of *Tamburlaine* was an epoch-making day. The character of the Scourge of God, as portrayed by the great actor Edward Alleyn, himself a man of colossal size and great histrionic ability, fairly dazzled the Elizabethans. We must always remember that people then went to the theatre not to see, but to hear; stage scenery and

Digitized by Google

settings were scanty; the play was the thing. Mouthed in sonorous Elizabethan fashion, this new and magnificent blank verse must have charmed and electrified the Elizabethans like marvellous music.

Blank verse had been introduced into English poetry by the Earl of Surrey, who, about the middle of the sixteenth century, translated two books of the *Æneid* in this measure. But Surrey's style was naturally rough and halting; and a perusal of his work gives little idea of what possibilities lay in this instrument. The stiff Senecan tragedy *Gorboduc* (acted about 1561) was written in blank verse of monotonous rigidity; it chilled rather than charmed. The playwrights who immediately preceded Marlowe failed in the one thing in which he most emphatically succeeded; namely, expression. They could conceive dramatic situations, but the language accompanying the supreme moment was usually entirely inadequate, and often pitiably weak. Marlowe's characters and events required a "great and thundering speech"; and, needless to say, it was plentifully supplied. It thundered, indeed, so loudly that some contemporaries laughed it to scorn, but their laughter has the discordant tone of envy rather than the ring of sincerity. In the preface to Greene's *Menaphon*, Nash remarked: "Idiote art-masters, that intrude themselves to our eares as the alcumists of eloquence; who (mounted on the stage of arrogance) think to outbraue better pens with the swelling bumbast of a bragging blanke verse." And again, he alludes to what he calls "the spacious volubilitie of a drumming decasillabon." Greene, who sneered at Marlowe as a "cobler's eldest sonne," said with swelling blank verse we should not dare "God

Digitized by Google

out of heauen with that atheist *Tamburlan.*" Ben Jonson said the play had nothing in it "but the scenical strutting and furious vociferation to warrant [it] to the ignorant gapers."

Tamburlaine was peculiarly Elizabethan in tone, and it is not at all surprising to find that in Restoration days it had passed almost into oblivion. Charles Saunders, in a preface to his play *Tamerlane the Great* in 1681, wrote: "It hath been told me there is a Cockpit play going under the name of *The Scythian Shepherd or Tamberlain the Great*, which how good it is any one may judge by its obscurity, being a thing, not a bookseller in London, or scarce the players themselves who acted it formerly, cow'd call to remembrance."

Tamburlaine was a real character in history, whose actual achievements sound like a wild romance. Timur, called Timur Lenk (that is, Timur the Lame), Tamerlane, or Tamburlaine, was an Asiatic Napoleon of the fourteenth century. He was born in 1333 in Central Asia, and for some time was merely the chief of a petty tribe. But he finally overran and subdued an enormous stretch of territory, extending from the Chinese Wall to the Mediterranean Sea, and from Siberia to the Ganges. His cruelty was as notable as his genius, though not so uncommon. He is said to have built a pyramid constructed entirely of the heads of his foes. He died in 1405, and his empire went to pieces. In 1543 a Spanish biography of him appeared at Seville, composed by Pedro Mexia. This book had great vogue, and was translated into various European languages. The English version was printed in 1571, and it is extremely probable that it is the chief

Digitized by Google

source of the drama *Tamburlaine.* The details are largely the same; the cage, the crumbs of bread, the scraps of meat, and the title, Scourge of God, are all in the original.

It is difficult to speak calmly of this tremendous ten-act tragedy. If its author exceeded all bounds of restraint, the critics from that day to this have unconsciously followed his example. To some it is wisdom, to others foolishness; but both those who condemn and those who praise have drawn heavily on their stock of adjectives. Lamb did not take it seriously; but Swinburne in writing of it had one of his frequent fits of ecstasy. The play of course shows no regard for dramatic structure. There is no development, either of plot or of character; there might as well have been a hundred acts as ten. As some one has said of Hauptmann, the play does not end, it quits.

But the salient virtue of this drama, apart from its superb diction, is that we have, for the first time in English tragedy, one grand, consistent, unforgettable character. We do not ask of romantic heroes, either in Cooper or in Shakespeare, that they shall resemble actual life. All we demand is that they make a permanent impression on the imagination. This Tamburlaine assuredly does. No one who has ever once read the play can by any possibility forget the protagonist. He is the incarnation of the spirit of aspiration — the spirit of Marlowe, and the spirit of the Elizabethan age. He revels in the intoxication of boundless power. His swelling confidence hypnotizes his friends, and paralyses his enemies. His most bitter foes feel the resistless fascination of the man. Some of the best things said about him are uttered by his

Digitized by Google

a matter of fact, nobody knows. It is also assumed that Marlowe knew no German, and therefore founded his play on the English translation of the *Faustbuch*; and in order to account for this, many scholars further assume that there was an earlier edition of the English translation, and that this earlier edition appeared shortly after 1587 and is now lost. If we possessed this unknown book, and possessed also some definite knowledge as to the first performance of the English play, we should be within the limits of knowledge instead of in the fog of conjecture. The "earliest known reference" to the presentation of the play occurs in Henslowe, by which we learn that it was acted September thirtieth, 1594.

But whether the date of the composition of Marlowe's *Faustus* be 1589 or 1592, he has the credit of having produced the first play in any language on this immortal theme; and the short time (whatever theory we adopt) that intervened between the appearance of the *Faustbuch* in Germany and the play in England is nothing less than remarkable. Marlowe must have instantly perceived the splendid dramatic possibilities of the story, for he made out of them, notwithstanding all crudities and blemishes, a dramatic masterpiece.

It is not at all fair to Marlowe to compare the imperfect text of his hastily composed *Faustus* with the *Faust* of Goethe. The former was written by a young man with scarcely any literary background. Goethe had all the leisure of ease and mature years, with two centuries of culture behind him. After all, Marlowe's character of Faustus is essentially childish; he longs for magic power, like a boy who has read the *Arabian Nights*. Goethe's hero longs for life, which he has

Digitized by Google

missed, life with all its variety of experience. And into his mouth Goethe put the thoughts of one of the greatest literary geniuses that the world has seen since the death of Shakespeare. The qualities that win our admiration and respect for Marlowe's drama are the thrilling intensity of the climax, which in other hands might have been absurd, the wonderful height of pure poetry reached in certain passages, and the extraordinary conception of Mephistopheles. As a boy in Canterbury, Marlowe had in all probability seen representations of the devil on the local stage, for the mysteries and moralities were not extinct; he was of course familiar with the devil of Puritan imagination, and of the conception of hell as a definite place of fire. But instead of making Mephistopheles a grotesque bugaboo, compounded of mirth and horror, he made him a spirit of sombre melancholy, tortured with the eternal memory of his lost estate. And the geography of hell shows that Marlowe was in advance of his time.

> "Hell hath no limits, nor is circumscribed
> In one self place: for where we are is hell,
> And where hell is there must we ever be."

That the miracles of one age are the commonplaces of another is curiously shown in this drama. The Duchess, on being requested to demand an illustration of the supernatural power of Faustus, asks what to Elizabethan minds was an impossible thing — grapes in January. Mephistopheles is gone only for a moment, and returns with the desired fruit; and in reply to the Duke's amazed inquiry, Faustus explains that although it is winter here it is summer in certain

Digitized by Google

parts of the world, and "by means of a swift spirit" the grapes are brought.

The final awful soliloquy of Faustus and the terrific climax of the play raise a rather interesting question in art. Marlowe's reputation in his own time was that of an atheist, and it is probable that he was a defiant unbeliever. But no Puritan sermon could have exceeded in religious force and effect the depiction of Faustus's fearful struggles with conscience, and the unspeakable horror of his departure. Now, either Marlowe, like Greene, felt occasional pangs of remorse (of which, however, there is no other evidence than this play) and the last soliloquy came from his own terror-stricken heart, or his artistic temperament was so completely ascendant that he was able to treat this sinner's dissolution with precisely the same artistic aloofness with which we should describe the sufferings of Prometheus. Such an attitude toward the Christian religion at that time is, to say the least, unusual; and it would require two things, the most absolute and assured unbelief, and an extraordinary power of artistic ventriloquism.

The Famous Tragedy of the Rich Jew of Malta was licensed for the press on May seventeenth, 1594, but the earliest known edition is a quarto of 1633, forty years after Marlowe's death. On the title-page appears "Written by Christopher Marlo." In spite of many hypotheses and conjectures, no one knows when it was written nor when it was first acted. We know that Alleyn added greatly to his renown by his wonderful portrayal of Barabas; on the stage this Jew was largely a comic character, and wore a huge false nose. The source of the drama is unknown; there

Digitized by Google

seems to have been an earlier play on a similar subject; but as the play is lost, all conjectures built on it are of no moment. This is undoubtedly Marlowe's best acting play, as *Faustus* is perhaps his literary masterpiece. The plot is wildly improbable, like most of the works of Shakespeare; but it is steadily interesting, and crowded with action. The critics seem mostly to have decided that the first two acts are fine, and that the last three indicate a sad falling off. With this judgment I find it impossible to agree. The interest in the story is maintained steadily to the powerful and unexpected conclusion; and the climax is of that kind that has particularly delighted spectators in all ages of theatrical history, "for 'tis the sport to have the enginer Hoist with his own petar."

With reference to the literary value of *The Jew of Malta* much wordy war has been waged. Swinburne says, "Only Milton has surpassed the opening soliloquy." This is exaggerative, for Shakespeare has surpassed it fifty times, as have other English poets, including Marlowe himself. It does not compare for an instant with several passages in *Tamburlaine*, nor with the apostrophe to Helen in *Faustus*. Indeed, I think that the Jew's soliloquy at the beginning of the *second* act is poetically superior. It is interesting, however, to compare this first "key-note" speech with the opening lines of Jonson's *Volpone*, spoken also in worship of the golden calf. Jonson's verse is noble, stately, and regular; but it is carefully constructed, and smells of the lamp. Marlowe's is careless in a royally splendid way.

This drama historically has its place in the Tragedy of Blood school that runs like a red stream through

Digitized by Google

the entire course of Elizabethan drama. The Tragedy of Blood began with Kyd's *Spanish Tragedy*, and *Titus Andronicus*, powerfully affected Marlowe and Chapman, reached a climax in Webster, and an anticlimax in Ford. Not only do the majority of the dramatis personæ die violently in the works of this school, but there is usually a hired assassin who believes in crime for crime's sake. He takes a joyous and artistic delight in deeds of the most revolting nature. The scoundrel Aaron, in *Titus Andronicus*, is typical of this stock figure:

"Even now I curse the day — and yet I think
Few come within the compass of my curse —
Wherein I did not some notorious ill:
As kill a man, or else devise his death;
Ravish a maid, or plot the way to do it;
Accuse some innocent, and forswear myself:
Set deadly enmity between two friends:
Make poor men's cattle break their necks:
Set fire on barns and haystacks in the night,
And bid the owners quench them with their tears:
Oft have I digg'd up dead men from their graves,
And set them upright at their dear friends' doors,
Even when their sorrows almost were forgot:
And on their skins, as on the bark of trees,
Have with my knife carved in Roman letters,
'Let not your sorrow die, though I am dead.'
Tut, I have done a thousand dreadful things
As willingly as one would kill a fly:
And nothing grieves me heartily indeed,
But that I cannot do ten thousand more."

Now Ithamore, in *The Jew of Malta*, fills this rôle acceptably; for Barabas, to test him, describes some of the playful avocations of his own leisure moments:

Digitized by Google

"As for myself, I walk abroad o' nights
And kill sick people groaning under walls;
Sometimes I go about and poison wells."

To which virtuous sentiments Ithamore cheerfully replies:

"One time I was an ostler in an inn,
And in the night-time secretly would I steal
To travellers' chambers, and there cut their throats."

The fact is, that the theatrical villain of the Tragedy of Blood had the same zest in crime that the small boy of all time has in the perpetration of practical jokes on respectable citizens.

Marlowe in this play did not scruple to appeal to the popular prejudice against Jews by representing Barabas as an hellish monster; but just as Milton made a hero out of Satan, so Marlowe created a Jew of such colossal force, both in cunning and in courage, that one feels admiration for his vast ambition and tremendous power, without any sympathy. But Marlowe apparently does not love the Christians any more than the Jews; they too are represented as devoid of truth, honour and probity. The only decent people in the play are the heathen, intentionally or not.

A comparison of *The Jew of Malta* with *The Merchant of Venice* is even more damaging to Marlowe's reputation than the comparison of *Faustus* with Goethe's masterpiece; for Shakespeare wrote his play under conditions precisely similar to Marlowe's, and not far from the same time. The fundamental difference in the result is that whereas Barabas is an impossible monster, Shylock is wonderfully human. I do not believe for a moment that Shakespeare sym-

Digitized by Google

pathized with Shylock, or meant his audience to do so. I feel certain that the downfall of the man was greeted with tremendous applause. But none the less, he is a real character, a sharply defined individual, not a racial caricature; and Shakespeare allows him to speak cleverly and powerfully in his own defence, in the method later adopted by Browning. Where Shakespeare excels Marlowe is in his vastly superior power of psychological analysis, to say nothing of the glorious poetry of the conclusion, which ends in beautiful moonlight and harmonious laughter in Portia's gardens. Shakespeare had one artistic virtue simply unknown to Marlowe — moderation. In the felicitous words of William Watson:

"Your Marlowe's page I close, my Shakespeare's ope.
How welcome — after gong and cymbal's din —
The continuity, the long slow slope
And vast curves of the gradual violin!"

Marlowe's influence on Shakespeare was in all probability very great; but it is interesting to cite a single famous passage from the latter poet, where it is easy to see which are the lines written in the Marlowesque and which those in the true Shakespearian manner.

"Where should Othello go?
Now, how dost thou look now? O ill-starr'd wench!
Pale as thy smock! when we shall meet at compt,
This look of thine will hurl my soul from heaven,
And fiends will snatch at it. Cold, cold, my girl?
Even like thy chastity. —
O cursed, cursed slave! — Whip me, ye devils,
From the possession of this heavenly sight!
Blow me about in winds! roast me in sulphur!
Wash me in steep-down gulfs of liquid fire!"

Digitized by Google

There are certain striking similarities in the three plays, *Tamburlaine*, *Faustus*, and *The Jew of Malta*. In all three, the emphasis is laid on one character; the others are merely sketched in. Concentration on a single hero was the aim, conscious or unconscious, of the dramatist. And in each instance, this hero is the personification of some mad, devouring ambition. The living breath of aspiration vitalizes not only this chief character, but sets the whole play aglow with poetic fire. In *Tamburlaine*, the desire is for earthly power: he will bestride the narrow world like a colossus, and the petty men must walk under his huge legs, and peep about to find themselves dishonourable graves. The critics have generally agreed that the splendid speech of Tamburlaine:

> "Our souls, whose faculties can comprehend
> The wondrous architecture of the world,"

ends in a lamentable anticlimax:

> "Until we reach the ripest fruit of all,
> That perfect bliss and sole felicity,
> The sweet fruition of an earthly crown."

But Tamburlaine did not think so; nor, I am convinced, did the poet. The critics seem to be completely mistaken here; for they approve of the early part of the speech, with which modern thought would sympathize, and condemn the conclusion, because it grates harshly on latter-day ears. But in the days of Queen Elizabeth and Philip II, when royalty was surrounded with the panoply of supreme majesty, was it not brave to be a king? A god was not so glorious as a king.

Digitized by Google

As in *Tamburlaine* the ambition is for earthly power, so in *Faustus* the summum bonum is *magic* — the control of time and space. In *The Jew of Malta* it is wealth, and the power that wealth brings: he does not wish to be merely a rich man:

"Fie; what a trouble 'tis to count this trash."

He will not rest until he has everything, until he sways empires with his wealth. The richest merchants must be beggars in comparison with him.

It is a different Marlowe that we see in *Edward II*; and although the play has been extravagantly praised, I believe it to be poetically markedly inferior to the other three. It is universally assumed to have been Marlowe's last dramatic work; but the fact is, no one knows anything definite about this important matter. We do not know when it was written, nor when it was first put on the stage. It was licensed for printing July sixth, 1593, about a month after Marlowe was slain; but the first known edition is the quarto of 1594, *The Troublesome Reign and Lamentable Death of Edward the Second, King of England: with the Tragical Fall of Proud Mortimer.* The title-page informs us that it was "written by Chri. Marlow, Gent."

In this drama the interest is not concentrated on one character, as it was in the others: the King, the Queen, Mortimer, and Gaveston all stand out sharply, and lesser persons are not crudely set forth. But it deals with a single elemental passion, as did *Tamburlaine*, *Faustus*, and *The Jew*: this passion is *friendship*. In order to understand it, one must look upon the passion of friendship from the Elizabethan point of view, which in this matter differs very largely from

Digitized by Google

our own. Compared to the friendships of the Elizabethan giants, our best college friendships to-day are pale. The English language has never exceeded in passion the lines of Shakespeare's sonnets; and most of the best ones were written to a man, which, when first discovered by very young students, invariably causes a painful shock. Not infrequently Elizabethans valued their friends higher than their wives, or any of the ties of blood. If one doubts this, read the words of Melantius in *The Maid's Tragedy*.

As Tamburlaine lost his life in the passion for earthly power, as Faustus lost his soul in the passion for forbidden magic, as the Jew died a horrible death in the pursuit of wealth, so Edward loses his character, his position, his influence, his queen, and finally his life, in the vain passion of friendship. For Marlowe here shows the same terrible irony displayed in his other works; the King, who longs for Gaveston's friendship, believing that in this one instance he is beloved as a man rather than as a king, is cruelly deceived; Gaveston's love is founded wholly on selfishness. The heart-hunger of royal personages, who so seldom hear the language of frankness and sincerity, has been repeatedly used as a motive in literature; we have only to remember Browning's *In a Balcony* and Daudet's *Les Rois en Exil*. Marlowe has employed it with great power and with a closer approach to humanity than in any other drama ascribed to him. From the modern point of view, this weak king seems idiotic; but one must understand Elizabethan ideas of friendship before one can understand that it was a terrible passion, elevating and degrading like other passions; and that just as kings have been ruined by wine and

Digitized by Google

by women, so in the sixteenth century it was possible to be ruined by a friend.

King Edward is indeed a pathetic figure in Marlowe's drama, as he was in history, from the contemporary chronicles of which the dramatist probably drew his material; and it is rather strange to find Marlowe, who delighted in representing in his other protagonists the very superlative of will-power, selecting here for portrayal a man damned with indecision. It can best be accounted for by remembering what has already been so emphasized, that the King's passion was too strong for his character. His death is horrible and his last speeches are full of pathos, especially the oft-quoted one in which he compares his present squalor with his former splendour, and wishes his wife to remember the contrast. But Charles Lamb's comment on this passage, which practically all editors of Marlowe quote as though it were holy writ, is fustian and nonsense: "The death-scene of Marlowe's king moves pity and terror beyond any scene, ancient or modern, with which I am acquainted." Twenty superior scenes might be cited, but we need think for the moment only of Lear's whisper,

"Cordelia, Cordelia, stay a little."

Lamb deserves the homage of all students of the Elizabethan drama for his incomparable services in making that drama known; but his hyperbole of criticism is as absurd in this instance as is his ridiculous comparison of the death of Calantha in the *Broken Heart* to Calvary and the Cross.

Edward II belongs to the group of "chronicle-histories" in English dramatic literature; it was one of

Digitized by Google

the first, and ranks deservedly high. Had Marlowe lived to middle age he might have done splendid work in this field; but at his best, and if he had lived to be a hundred, he could never have written a play like *Henry IV*, for the simple reason that he has given not the slightest indication of possessing a sense of humour. And the absence of this is not merely a positive loss — it destroys, as Mr. Saintsbury has pointed out, the power of self-criticism. Marlowe had no check on his own work; like Victor Hugo and Wordsworth, he could not always tell when he was sublime and when he was something very different. Yet self-control, which was apparently lacking in Marlowe's own life and character, might have prevented his muse from soaring to the vertiginous heights reached in *Tamburlaine* and *Faustus*. The real glory of Marlowe as a poet is his boundless aspiration; we may grant that *Edward II* shows a commendable absence of the rant and bluster that sometimes disfigure his other plays; still it unfortunately exhibits also an absence of his supreme gifts as a poet. If I had to give up any one of his four great dramas, I would most willingly spare the history of the forlorn king.

Marlowe's reticence in all his plays on the subject of the love between men and women is as notable as is Stevenson's in his romances. This topic, which has been the mainspring of the drama among all nations, probably did not interest him. Possibly he was so masculine in temperament that men's ambitions and powers were enough to draw all his intellectual attention. Perhaps in his short life he had never met a good woman. He has certainly created not a single feminine character that interests us deeply, or who

Digitized by Google

TAMBURLAINE THE GREAT

Part the First

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

TAMBURLAINE THE GREAT

THE PROLOGUE

From jigging veins of rhyming mother wits,
And such conceits as clownage keeps in pay,[n]
We'll lead you to the stately tent of war,
Where you shall hear the Scythian Tamburlaine
Threatening the world with high astounding terms,
And scourging kingdoms with his conquering sword.
View but his picture in this tragic glass,
And then applaud his fortune as you please.

[n] A superior n in the text indicates a note at the end of the volume.

Digitized by Google

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ

MYCETES, King of Persia.
COSROE, his Brother.
ORTYGIUS, CENEUS, MEANDER, MENAPHON, THERIDAMAS, } Persian Lords and Captains.
TAMBURLAINE, a Scythian Shepherd.
TECHELLES, USUMCASANE, } his Followers.
BAJAZETH, Emperor of the Turks.
KING OF ARABIA.
KING OF FEZ.
KING OF MOROCCO.
KING OF ARGIER (Algiers).
SOLDAN OF EGYPT.
GOVERNOR OF DAMASCUS.
AGYDAS, MAGNETES, } Median Lords.
CAPOLIN, an Egyptian Captain.
PHILEMUS, a Messenger.

ZENOCRATE, Daughter of the Soldan of Egypt.
ANIPPE, her Maid.
ZABINA, Wife of Bajazeth.
EBEA, her Maid.
Virgins of Damascus.

Digitized by Google

TAMBURLAINE THE GREAT

Part the First

ACT THE FIRST

Scene I

Enter Mycetes, Cosroe, Meander, Theridamas, Ortygius, Ceneus, Menaphon, *with others*

Myc. Brother Cosroe, I find myself aggrieved,
Yet insufficient to express the same;
For it requires a great and thundering speech:
Good brother, tell the cause unto my lords;
I know you have a better wit than I.
Cos. Unhappy Persia, that in former age
Hast been the seat of mighty conquerors,
That, in their prowess and their policies,
Have triumphed over Afric and the bounds
Of Europe, where the sun scarce dares appear
For freezing meteors and congealèd cold,
Now to be ruled and governed by a man
At whose birthday Cynthia with Saturn joined,
And Jove, the Sun, and Mercury denied
To shed their influence in his fickle brain!
Now Turks and Tartars shake their swords at thee,
Meaning to mangle all thy provinces.
Myc. Brother, I see your meaning well enough,
And through your planets I perceive you think
I am not wise enough to be a king;

Digitized by Google

But I refer me to my noblemen
That know my wit, and can be witnesses.
I might command you to be slain for this:
Meander, might I not?
Meand. Not for so small a fault, my sovereign lord.
Myc. I mean it not, but yet I know I might;
Yet live; yea live, Mycetes wills it so.
Meander, thou, my faithful counsellor,
Declare the cause of my conceivèd grief,
Which is, God knows, about that Tamburlaine,
That, like a fox in midst of harvest time,
Doth prey upon my flocks of passengers;
And, as I hear, doth mean to pull my plumes:
Therefore 'tis good and meet for to be wise.
Meand. Oft have I heard your majesty complain
Of Tamburlaine, that sturdy Scythian thief,
That robs your merchants of Persepolis
Trading by land unto the Western Isles,
And in your confines with his lawless train
Daily commits incivil outrages,
Hoping (misled by dreaming prophecies)
To reign in Asia, and with barbarous arms
To make himself the monarch of the East;
But ere he march in Asia, or display
His vagrant ensign in the Persian fields,
Your grace hath taken order by Theridamas,
Charged with a thousand horse, to apprehend
And bring him captive to your highness' throne.
Myc. Full true thou speak'st, and like thyself, my lord,
Whom I may term a Damon for thy love:
Therefore 'tis best, if so it like you all,
To send my thousand horse incontinent
To apprehend that paltry Scythian.
How like you this, my honourable lords?
Is't not a kingly resolution?
Cos. It cannot choose, because it comes from you.

Digitized by Google

Myc. Then hear thy charge, valiant Theridamas,
The chiefest captain of Mycetes' host,
The hope of Persia, and the very legs
Whereon our state doth lean as on a staff,
That holds us up, and foils our neighbour foes:
Thou shalt be leader of this thousand horse,
Whose foaming gall with rage and high disdain
Have sworn the death of wicked Tamburlaine.
Go frowning forth; but come thou smiling home,
As did Sir Paris with the Grecian dame;
Return with speed — time passeth swift away;
Our life is frail, and we may die to-day.

Ther. Before the moon renew her borrowed light,
Doubt not, my lord and gracious sovereign,
But Tamburlaine and that Tartarian rout,
Shall either perish by our warlike hands,
Or plead for mercy at your highness' feet.

Myc. Go, stout Theridamas, thy words are swords,
And with thy looks thou conquerest all thy foes;
I long to see thee back return from thence,
That I may view these milk-white steeds of mine
All loaden with the heads of killèd men,
And from their knees e'en to their hoofs below
Besmeared with blood that makes a dainty show.

Ther. Then now, my lord, I humbly take my leave.

Myc. Theridamas, farewell! ten thousand times.
[*Exit* THERIDAMAS.
Ah, Menaphon, why stay'st thou thus behind,
When other men press forward for renown?
Go, Menaphon, go into Scythia;
And foot by foot follow Theridamas.

Cos. Nay, pray you let him stay; a greater [task]
Fits Menaphon than warring with a thief:
Create him prorex of all Africa,
That he may win the Babylonians' hearts
Which will revolt from Persian government,
Unless they have a wiser king than you.

Digitized by Google

Myc. "Unless they have a wiser king than you."
These are his words; Meander, set them down.
Cos. And add this to them — that all Asia
Laments to see the folly of their king.
Myc. Well, here I swear by this my royal seat —
Cos. You may do well to kiss it then.
Myc. Embossed with silk as best beseems my state,
To be revenged for these contemptuous words.
Oh, where is duty and allegiance now?
Fled to the Caspian or the Ocean main?
What shall I call thee? brother? — no, a foe;
Monster of nature! — Shame unto thy stock
That dar'st presume thy sovereign for to mock!
Meander, come: I am abused, Meander.
[*Exeunt all but* COSROE *and* MENAPHON.
Men. How now, my lord? What, mated and amazed
To hear the king thus threaten like himself!
Cos. Ah, Menaphon, I pass not for his threats;
The plot is laid by Persian noblemen
And captains of the Median garrisons
To crown me Emperor of Asia:
But this it is that doth excruciate
The very substance of my vexèd soul —
To see our neighbours that were wont to quake
And tremble at the Persian monarch's name,
Now sit and laugh our regiment to scorn;
And that which might resolve me into tears,
Men from the farthest equinoctial line
Have swarmed in troops into the Eastern India,
Lading their ships with gold and precious stones,
And made their spoils from all our provinces.
Men. This should entreat your highness to rejoice,
Since Fortune gives you opportunity
To gain the title of a conqueror
By curing of this maimèd empery.
Afric and Europe bordering on your land,

Digitized by Google

And continent to your dominions,
How easily may you, with a mighty host,
Pass into Græcia, as did Cyrus once,
And cause them to withdraw their forces home,
Lest you subdue the pride of Christendom.

[*Trumpet within.*

Cos. But, Menaphon, what means this trumpet's sound?

Men. Behold, my lord, Ortygius and the rest
Bringing the crown to make you Emperor!

Enter ORTYGIUS *and* CENEUS, *with others, bearing a crown*

Orty. Magnificent and mighty Prince Cosroe,
We, in the name of other Persian states
And commons of the mighty monarchy,
Present thee with the imperial diadem.

Cen. The warlike soldiers and the gentlemen,
That heretofore have filled Persepolis
With Afric captains taken in the field,
Whose ransom made them march in coats of gold,
With costly jewels hanging at their ears,
And shining stones upon their lofty crests,
Now living idle in the wallèd towns,
Wanting both pay and martial discipline,
Begin in troops to threaten civil war,
And openly exclaim against their king:
Therefore, to stop all sudden mutinies,
We will invest your highness Emperor,
Whereat the soldiers will conceive more joy
Than did the Macedonians at the spoil
Of great Darius and his wealthy host.

Cos. Well, since I see the state of Persia droop
And languish in my brother's government,
I willingly receive the imperial crown,
And vow to wear it for my country's good,

Digitized by Google

In spite of them shall malice my estate.
Orty. And in assurance of desired success,
We here do crown thee monarch of the East,
Emperor of Asia and Persia;
Great Lord of Media and Armenia;
Duke of Africa and Albania,
Mesopotamia and of Parthia,
East India and the late-discovered isles;
Chief Lord of all the wide, vast Euxine Sea,
And of the ever-raging Caspian Lake.
All. Long live Cosroe, mighty Emperor!
Cos. And Jove may[n] never let me longer live
Than I may seek to gratify your love,
And cause the soldiers that thus honour me
To triumph over many provinces!
By whose desire of discipline in arms
I doubt not shortly but to reign sole king,
And with the army of Theridamas
(Whither we presently will fly, my lords)
To rest secure against my brother's force.
Orty. We knew, my lord, before we brought the crown,
Intending your investion so near
The residence of your despisèd brother,
The lords would not be too exasperate
To injury or suppress your worthy title;
Or, if they would, there are in readiness
Ten thousand horse to carry you from hence,
In spite of all suspected enemies.
Cos. I know it well, my lord, and thank you all.
Orty. Sound up the trumpets then. [*Trumpets sound.*
All. God save the King! [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE II

Enter TAMBURLAINE *leading* ZENOCRATE, TECHELLES, USUMCASANE, AGYDAS, MAGNETES, Lords, *and* Soldiers, *laden with treasure*

Tamb. Come, lady, let not this appal your thoughts;
The jewels and the treasure we have ta'en
Shall be reserved, and you in better state,
Than if you were arrived in Syria,
Even in the circle of your father's arms,
The mighty Soldan of Ægyptia.

Zeno. Ah, shepherd! pity my distressèd plight,
(If, as thou seem'st, thou art so mean a man,)
And seek not to enrich thy followers
By lawless rapine from a silly maid,
Who, travelling with these Median lords
To Memphis, from my uncle's country of Media,
Where all my youth I have been governèd,
Have passed the army of the mighty Turk,
Bearing his privy signet and his hand
To safe conduct us thorough Africa.

Mag. And since we have arrived in Scythia,
Besides rich presents from the puissant Cham,
We have his highness' letters to command
Aid and assistance, if we stand in need.

Tamb. But now you see these letters and commands
Are countermanded by a greater man;
And through my provinces you must expect
Letters of conduct from my mightiness,
If you intend to keep your treasure safe.
But, since I love to live at liberty,
As easily may you get the Soldan's crown
As any prizes out of my precinct;
For they are friends that help to wean my state
'Till men and kingdoms help to strengthen it,

Digitized by Google

And must maintain my life exempt from servitude. —
But, tell me, madam, is your grace betrothed?
Zeno. I am — my lord — for so you do import.
Tamb. I am a lord, for so my deeds shall prove:
And yet a shepherd by my parentage.
But, lady, this fair face and heavenly hue
Must grace his bed that conquers Asia,
And means to be a terror to the world,
Measuring the limits of his empery
By east and west, as Phœbus doth his course.
Lie here ye weeds that I disdain to wear!
This complete armour and this curtal-ax
Are adjuncts more beseeming Tamburlaine.
And, madam, whatsoever you esteem
Of this success and loss unvaluèd,
Both may invest you Empress of the East;
And these that seem but silly country swains
May have the leading of so great an host,
As with their weight shall make the mountains quake,
Even as when windy exhalations
Fighting for passage, tilt within the earth.
Tech. As princely lions, when they rouse themselves,
Stretching their paws, and threatening herds of beasts,
So in his armour looketh Tamburlaine.
Methinks I see kings kneeling at his feet,
And he with frowning brows and fiery looks,
Spurning their crowns from off their captive heads.
Usum. And making thee and me, Techelles, kings,
That even to death will follow Tamburlaine.
Tamb. Nobly resolved, sweet friends and followers!
These lords perhaps do scorn our estimates,
And think we prattle with distempered spirits;
But since they measure our deserts so mean,
That in conceit bear empires on our spears,
Affecting thoughts coequal with the clouds,
They shall be kept our forcèd followers,
Till with their eyes they view us emperors.

Digitized by Google

Zeno. The gods, defenders of the innocent,
Will never prosper your intended drifts,
That thus oppress poor friendless passengers.
Therefore at least admit us liberty,
Even as thou hopest to be eternized,
By living Asia's mighty Emperor.
Agyd. I hope our ladies' treasure and our own
May serve for ransom to our liberties:
Return our mules and empty camels back,
That we may travel into Syria,
Where her betrothèd lord Alcidamas,
Expects th' arrival of her highness' person.
Mag. And wheresoever we repose ourselves,
We will report but well of Tamburlaine.
Tamb. Disdains Zenocrate to live with me?
Or you, my lords, to be my followers?
Think you I weigh this treasure more than you?
Not all the gold in India's wealthy arms
Shall buy the meanest soldier in my train.
Zenocrate, lovelier than the love of Jove,
Brighter than is the silver Rhodope,
Fairer than whitest snow on Scythian hills —
Thy person is more worth to Tamburlaine,
Than the possession of the Persian crown,
Which gracious stars have promised at my birth.
A hundred Tartars shall attend on thee,
Mounted on steeds swifter than Pegasus;
Thy garments shall be made of Median silk,
Enchased with precious jewels of mine own,
More rich and valurous than Zenocrate's.
With milk-white harts upon an ivory sled,
Thou shalt be drawn amidst the frozen pools,
And scale the icy mountains' lofty tops,
Which with thy beauty will be soon resolved.
My martial prizes with five hundred men,
Won on the fifty-headed Volga's waves,
Shall we all offer to Zenocrate —

Digitized by Google

And then myself to fair Zenocrate.
Tech. What now! — in love?
Tamb. Techelles, women must be flatterèd:
But this is she with whom I am in love.

Enter a Soldier

Sold. News! news!
Tamb. How now — what's the matter?
Sold. A thousand Persian horsemen are at hand,
Sent from the king to overcome us all.
Tamb. How now, my lords of Egypt, and Zenocrate!
How! — must your jewels be restored again,
And I, that triumphed so, be overcome?
How say you, lordings — is not this your hope?
Agyd. We hope yourself will willingly restore them.
Tamb. Such hope, such fortune, have the thousand horse.
Soft ye, my lords, and sweet Zenocrate!
You must be forcèd from me ere you go.
A thousand horsemen! — We five hundred foot! —
An odds too great for us to stand against.
But are they rich? — and is their armour good?
Sold. Their plumèd helms are wrought with beaten gold
Their swords enamelled, and about their necks
Hang massy chains of gold, down to the waist,
In every part exceeding brave and rich.
Tamb. Then shall we fight courageously with them?
Or look you I should play the orator?
Tech. No: cowards and faint-hearted runaways
Look for orations when the foe is near:
Our swords shall play the orator for us.
Usum. Come! let us meet them at the mountain top,
And with a sudden and a hot alarum,
Drive all their horses headlong down the hill.
Tech. Come, let us march!
Tamb. Stay, ask a parley first.

Digitized by Google

The Soldiers *enter*

Open the mails, yet guard the treasure sure;
Lay out our golden wedges to the view,
That their reflections may amaze the Persians;
And look we friendly on them when they come;
But if they offer word or violence,
We'll fight five hundred men-at-arms to one,
Before we part with our possession.
And 'gainst the general we will lift our swords,
And either lance his greedy thirsting throat,
Or take him prisoner, and his chain shall serve
For manacles, till he be ransomed home.
Tech. I hear them come; shall we encounter them?
Tamb. Keep all your standings and not stir a foot,
Myself will bide the danger of the brunt.

Enter THERIDAMAS *and others*

Ther. Where is this Scythian Tamburlaine?
Tamb. Whom seek'st thou, Persian? — I am Tamburlaine.
Ther. Tamburlaine! —
A Scythian shepherd so embellishèd,
With nature's pride and richest furniture!
His looks do menace Heaven and dare the gods:
His fiery eyes are fixed upon the earth,
As if he now devised some stratagem,
Or meant to pierce Avernus' darksome vaults
To pull the triple-headed dog from hell.
Tamb. Noble and mild this Persian seems to be,
If outward habit judge the inward man.
Tech. His deep affections make him passionate.
Tamb. With what a majesty he rears his looks!
In thee, thou valiant man of Persia,
I see the folly of thy emperor.
Art thou but captain of a thousand horse,

Digitized by Google

That by charàcters graven in thy brows,
And by thy martial face and stout aspèct,
Deserv'st to have the leading of a host!
Forsake thy king, and do but join with me,
And we will triumph over all the world;
I hold the Fates bound fast in iron chains,
And with my hand turn Fortune's wheel about:
And sooner shall the sun fall from his sphere,
Than Tamburlaine be slain or overcome.
Draw forth thy sword, thou mighty man-at-arms,
Intending but to raze my charmèd skin,
And Jove himself will stretch his hand from Heaven
To ward the blow and shield me safe from harm.
See how he rains down heaps of gold in showers,
As if he meant to give my soldiers pay!
And as a sure and grounded argument,
That I shall be the monarch of the East,
He sends this Soldan's daughter rich and brave,
To be my Queen and portly Emperess.
If thou wilt stay with me, renownèd man,
And lead thy thousand horse with my conduct,
Besides thy share of this Egyptian prize,
Those thousand horse shall sweat with martial spoil
Of conquered kingdoms and of cities sacked;
Both we will walk upon the lofty cliffs,
And Christian merchants that with Russian stems
Plough up huge furrows in the Caspian Sea,
Shall vail to us, as lords of all the lake.
Both we will reign as consuls of the earth,
And mighty kings shall be our senators.
Jove sometimes maskèd in a shepherd's weed,
And by those steps that he hath scaled the Heavens
May we become immortal like the gods.
Join with me now in this my mean estate,
(I call it mean because being yet obscure,
The nations far removed admire me not,)
And when my name and honour shall be spread

Digitized by Google

As far as Boreas claps his brazen wings,[n]
Or fair Boötes sends his cheerful light,
Then shalt thou be competitor with me,
And sit with Tamburlaine in all his majesty.
Ther. Not Hermes, prolocutor to the gods,
Could use persuasions more pathetical.
Tamb. Nor are Apollo's oracles more true,
Than thou shalt find my vaunts substantial.
Tech. We are his friends, and if the Persian king
Should offer present dukedoms to our state,
We think it loss to make exchange for that
We are assured of by our friend's success.
Usum. And kingdoms at the least we all expect,
Besides the honour in assurèd conquests,
When kings shall crouch unto our conquering swords
And hosts of soldiers stand amazed at us;
When with their fearful tongues they shall confess,
These are the men that all the world admires.
Ther. What strong enchantments tice my yielding soul!
These are resolvèd, noble Scythians:
But shall I prove a traitor to my king?
Tamb. No, but the trusty friend of Tamburlaine.
Ther. Won with thy words, and conquered with thy looks,
I yield myself, my men, and horse to thee,
To be partaker of thy good or ill,
As long as life maintains Theridamas.
Tamb. Theridamas, my friend, take here my hand,
Which is as much as if I swore by Heaven,
And called the gods to witness of my vow.
Thus shall my heart be still combined with thine
Until our bodies turn to elements,
And both our souls aspire celestial thrones.
Techelles and Casane, welcome him!
Tech. Welcome, renownèd Persian, to us all!
Usum. Long may Theridamas remain with us!

Digitized by Google

Tamb. These are my friends, in whom I more rejoice
Than doth the King of Persia in his crown,
And by the love of Pylades and Orestes,
Whose statues we adore in Scythia,[a]
Thyself and them shall never part from me
Before I crown you kings in Asia.
Make much of them, gentle Theridamas,
And they will never leave thee till the death.

Ther. Nor thee nor them, thrice noble Tamburlaine
Shall want my heart to be with gladness pierced,
To do you honour and security.

Tamb. A thousand thanks, worthy Theridamas.
And now fair madam, and my noble lords,
If you will willingly remain with me
You shall have honours as your merits be;
Or else you shall be forced with slavery.

Agyd. We yield unto thee, happy Tamburlaine.

Tamb. For you then, madam, I am out of doubt.

Zeno. I must be pleased perforce. Wretched Zenocrate! [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

ACT THE SECOND

SCENE I

Enter COSROE, MENAPHON, ORTYGIUS, *and* CENEUS, *with* Soldiers

Cos. Thus far are we towards Theridamas,
And valiant Tamburlaine, the man of fame,
The man that in the forehead of his fortune
Bears figures of renown and miracle.
But tell me, that hast seen him, Menaphon,
What stature wields he, and what personage?
Men. Of stature tall, and straightly fashionèd,
Like his desire lift upward and divine;
So large of limbs, his joints so strongly knit,
Such breadth of shoulders as might mainly bear
Old Atlas' burthen — 'twixt his manly pitch,[n]
A pearl, more worth than all the world, is placed,
Wherein by curious sovereignty of art
Are fixed his piercing instruments of sight,
Whose fiery circles bear encompassèd
A heaven of heavenly bodies in their spheres,
That guides his steps and actions to the throne,
Where honour sits invested royally:
Pale of complexion, wrought in him with passion,
Thirsting with sovereignty and love of arms;
His lofty brows in folds do figure death,
And in their smoothness amity and life;
About them hangs a knot of amber hair,
Wrappèd in curls, as fierce Achilles' was,
On which the breath of Heaven delights to play,

Digitized by Google

Making it dance with wanton majesty. —
His arms and fingers, long and sinewy,
Betokening valour and excess of strength —
In every part proportioned like the man
Should make the world subdued to Tamburlaine.

Cos. Well hast thou portrayed in thy terms of life
The face and personage of a wondrous man;
Nature doth strive with Fortune and his stars
To make him famous in accomplished worth;
And well his merits show him to be made
His fortune's master and the king of men,
That could persuade at such a sudden pinch,
With reasons of his valour and his life,
A thousand sworn and overmatching foes.
Then, when our powers in points of swords are joined
And closed in compass of the killing bullet,
Though strait the passage and the port be made
That leads to palace of my brother's life,
Proud is his fortune if we pierce it not.
And when the princely Persian diadem
Shall overweigh his weary witless head,
And fall like mellowed fruit with shakes of death,
In fair Persia, noble Tamburlaine
Shall be my regent and remain as king.

Orty. In happy hour we have set the crown
Upon your kingly head that seeks our honour,
In joining with the man ordained by Heaven,
To further every action to the best.

Cen. He that with shepherds and a little spoil
Durst, in disdain of wrong and tyranny,
Defend his freedom 'gainst a monarchy,
What will he do supported by a king,
Leading a troop of gentlemen and lords,
And stuffed with treasure for his highest thoughts!

Cos. And such shall wait on worthy Tamburlaine.
Our army will be forty thousand strong,
When Tamburlaine and brave Theridamas

Digitized by Google

Have met us by the river Araris;
And all conjoined to meet the witless king,
That now is marching near to Parthia,
And with unwilling soldiers faintly armed,
To seek revenge on me and Tamburlaine,
To whom, sweet Menaphon, direct me straight.
Men. I will, my lord. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II

Enter MYCETES, MEANDER, *with other* Lords *and* Soldiers

Myc. Come, my Meander, let us to this gear.
I tell you true, my heart is swoln with wrath
On this same thievish villain, Tamburlaine,
And on that false Cosroe, my traitorous brother.
Would it not grieve a king to be so abused
And have a thousand horsemen ta'en away?
And, which is worse, to have his diadem
Sought for by such scald knaves as love him not?
I think it would; well then, by Heavens I swear,
Aurora shall not peep out of her doors,
But I will have Cosroe by the head,
And kill proud Tamburlaine with point of sword.
Tell you the rest, Meander: I have said.
Meand. Then having passed Armenian deserts now,
And pitched our tents under the Georgian hills,
Whose tops are covered with Tartarian thieves,
That lie in ambush, waiting for a prey,
What should we do but bid them battle straight,
And rid the world of those detested troops?
Lest, if we let them linger here awhile,
They gather strength by power of fresh supplies.
This country swarms with vile outrageous men
That live by rapine and by lawless spoil,

Digitized by Google

Fit soldiers for the wicked Tamburlaine;
And he that could with gifts and promises
Inveigle him that led a thousand horse,
And make him false his faith unto his king,
Will quickly win such as be like himself.
Therefore cheer up your minds; prepare to fight;
He that can take or slaughter Tamburlaine
Shall rule the province of Albania:
Who brings that traitor's head, Theridamas,
Shall have a government in Media,
Beside the spoil of him and all his train:
But if Cosroe (as our spials say,
And as we know) remains with Tamburlaine,
His highness' pleasure is that he should live,
And be reclaimed with princely lenity.

A Spy. A hundred horsemen of my company
Scouting abroad upon these champion plains
Have viewed the army of the Scythians,
Which make report it far exceeds the king's.

Meand. Suppose they be in number infinite,
Yet being void of martial discipline,
All running headlong greedy after spoils,
And more regarding gain than victory,
Like to the cruel brothers of the earth,
Sprung of the teeth of dragons venomous,
Their careless swords shall lance their fellows' throats,
And make us triumph in their overthrow.

Myc. Was there such brethren, sweet Meander, say,
That sprung of teeth of dragons venomous?

Meand. So poets say, my lord.

Myc. And 'tis a pretty toy to be a poet.
Well, well, Meander, thou art deeply read,
And having thee, I have a jewel sure.
Go on, my lord, and give your charge, I say;
Thy wit will make us conquerors to-day.

Meand. Then, noble soldiers, to entrap these thieves,
That live confounded in disordered troops,

Digitized by Google

If wealth or riches may prevail with them,
We have our camels laden all with gold,
Which you that be but common soldiers
Shall fling in every corner of the field;
And while the base-born Tartars take it up,
You, fighting more for honour than for gold,
Shall massacre those greedy-minded slaves;
And when their scattered army is subdued,
And you march on their slaughtered carcasses,
Share equally the gold that bought their lives,
And live like gentlemen in Persia.
Strike up the drum! and march courageously!
Fortune herself doth sit upon our crests.

Myc. He tells you true, my masters: so he does.
Drums, why sound ye not, when Meander speaks?

[*Exeunt, drums sounding.*

SCENE III

Enter COSROE, TAMBURLAINE, THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, USUMCASANE, *and* ORTYGIUS, *with others*

Cos. Now, worthy Tamburlaine, have I reposed
In thy approvèd fortunes all my hope.
What think'st thou, man, shall come of our attempts?
For even as from assurèd oracle,
I take thy doom for satisfaction.

Tamb. And so mistake you not a whit, my lord;
For fates and oracles of Heaven have sworn
To royalize the deeds of Tamburlaine,
And make them blest that share in his attempts.
And doubt you not but, if you favour me,
And let my fortunes and my valour sway
To some direction in your martial deeds,
The world will strive with hosts of men-at-arms,
To swarm unto the ensign I support:
The host of Xerxes, which by fame is said
To have drank the mighty Parthian Araris,

Digitized by Google

Was but a handful to that we will have.
Our quivering lances, shaking in the air,
And bullets, like Jove's dreadful thunderbolts,
Enrolled in flames and fiery smouldering mists,
Shall threat the gods more than Cyclopian wars:
And with our sun-bright armour as we march,
We'll chase the stars from Heaven and dim their eyes
That stand and muse at our admirèd arms.

Ther. You hear, my lord, what working words he hath;
But when you see his actions top his speech,
Your speech will stay or so extol his worth
As I shall be commended and excused
For turning my poor charge to his direction.
And these his two renownèd friends, my lord,
Would make one thirst and strive to be retained
In such a great degree of amity.

Tech. With duty and with amity we yield
Our utmost service to the fair Cosroe.

Cos. Which I esteem as portion of my crown.
Usumcasane and Techelles both,
When she that rules in Rhamnus' golden gates,
And makes a passage for all prosperous arms,
Shall make me solely Emperor of Asia,
Then shall your meeds and valours be advanced
To rooms of honour and nobility.

Tamb. Then haste, Cosroe, to be king alone,
That I with these, my friends, and all my men
May triumph in our long-expected fate. —
The king, your brother, is now hard at hand;
Meet with the fool, and rid your royal shoulders
Of such a burthen as outweighs the sands
And all the craggy rocks of Caspia.

Enter a Messenger

Mes. My lord, we have discovered the enemy
Ready to charge you with a mighty army.

Digitized by Google

Cos. Come, Tamburlaine! now whet thy wingèd sword,
And lift thy lofty arm into the clouds,
That it may reach the King of Persia's crown,
And set it safe on my victorious head.

Tamb. See where it is, the keenest curtal-ax
That e'er made passage thorough Persian arms.
These are the wings shall make it fly as swift
As doth the lightning or the breath of Heaven,
And kill as sure as it swiftly flies.

Cos. Thy words assure me of kind success;
Go, valiant soldier, go before and charge
The fainting army of that foolish king.

Tamb. Usumcasane and Techelles, come!
We are enow to scare the enemy
And more than needs to make an emperor.

[*Exeunt to the battle.*

SCENE IV

Enter MYCETES *with his crown in his hand*

Myc. Accursed be he that first invented war!
They knew not, ah they knew not, simple men,
How those were hit by pelting cannon shot,
Stand staggering like a quivering aspen leaf
Fearing the force of Boreas' boisterous blasts.
In what a lamentable case were I
If Nature had not given me wisdom's lore,
For kings are clouts that every man shoots at,
Our crown the pinn that thousands seek to cleave;
Therefore in policy I think it good
To hide it close; a goodly stratagem,
And far from any man that is a fool:
So shall I not be known; or if I be,
They cannot take away my crown from me.
Here will I hide it in this simple hole.

Digitized by Google

Enter TAMBURLAINE

Tamb. What, fearful coward, straggling from the camp,
When kings themselves are present in the field?
Myc. Thou liest.
Tamb. Base villain! darest give me the lie?
Myc. Away; I am the king; go; touch me not.
Thou break'st the law of arms, unless thou kneel
And cry me "mercy, noble king."
Tamb. Are you the witty King of Persia?
Myc. Ay, marry am I: have you any suit to me?
Tamb. I would entreat you speak but three wise words.
Myc. So I can when I see my time.
Tamb. Is this your crown?
Myc. Ay, didst thou ever see a fairer?
Tamb. You will not sell it, will you?
Myc. Such another word and I will have thee executed. Come, give it me!
Tamb. No; I took it prisoner.
Myc. You lie; I gave it you.
Tamb. Then 'tis mine.
Myc. No; I mean I let you keep it.
Tamb. Well; I mean you shall have it again.
Here; take it for a while: I lend it thee,
'Till I may see thee hemmed with armèd men;
Then shalt thou see me pull it from thy head:
Thou art no match for mighty Tamburlaine.
[*Exit* TAMBURLAINE.
Myc. O gods! Is this Tamburlaine the thief?
I marvel much he stole it not away.
[*Trumpets sound to the battle, and he runs out.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE V

Enter COSROE, TAMBURLAINE, MEANDER, THERIDAMAS, ORTYGIUS, MENAPHON, TECHELLES, USUMCASANE, *with others*

Tamb. Hold thee, Cosroe ! wear two imperial crowns;
Think thee invested now as royally,
Even by the mighty hand of Tamburlaine,
As if as many kings as could encompass thee
With greatest pomp, had crowned thee emperor.
Cos. So do I, thrice renownèd man-at-arms,
And none shall keep the crown but Tamburlaine.
Thee do I make my regent of Persia,
And general lieutenant of my armies.
Meander, you, that were our brother's guide,
And chiefest counsellor in all his acts,
Since he is yielded to the stroke of war,
On your submission we with thanks excuse,
And give you equal place in our affairs.
Meand. Most happy Emperor, in humblest terms,
I vow my service to your majesty,
With utmost virtue of my faith and duty.
Cos. Thanks, good Meander: then, Cosroe, reign,
And govern Persia in her former pomp!
Now send embassage to thy neighbour kings,
And let them know the Persian king is changed,
From one that knew not what a king should do,
To one that can command what 'longs thereto.
And now we will to fair Persepolis,
With twenty thousand expert soldiers.
The lords and captains of my brother's camp
With little slaughter take Meander's course,
And gladly yield them to my gracious rule.
Ortygius and Menaphon, my trusty friends,
Now will I gratify your former good,

Digitized by Google

And grace your calling with a greater sway.
Orty. And as we ever aimed at your behoof,
And sought your state all honour it deserved,
So will we with our powers and our lives
Endeavour to preserve and prosper it.
Cos. I will not thank thee, sweet Ortygius;
Better replies shall prove my purposes.
And now, Lord Tamburlaine, my brother's camp
I leave to thee and to Theridamas,
To follow me to fair Persepolis.
Then will we march to all those Indian mines,
My witless brother to the Christians lost,
And ransom them with fame and usury.
And till thou overtake me, Tamburlaine,
(Staying to order all the scattered troops,)
Farewell, lord regent and his happy friends!
I long to sit upon my brother's throne.
Meand. Your majesty shall shortly have your wish,
And ride in triumph through Persepolis.
[*Exeunt all but* TAMBURLAINE, THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, *and* USUMCASANE.
Tamb. "And ride in triumph through Persepolis!"
Is it not brave to be a king, Techelles?
Usumcasane and Theridamas,
Is it not passing brave to be a king,
"And ride in triumph through Persepolis"?
Tech. Oh, my lord, 'tis sweet and full of pomp.
Usum. To be a king is half to be a god.
Ther. A god is not so glorious as a king.
I think the pleasure they enjoy in Heaven,
Cannot compare with kingly joys in earth. —
To wear a crown enchased with pearl and gold,
Whose virtues carry with it life and death;
To ask and have, command and be obeyed;
When looks breed love, with looks to gain the prize,
Such power attractive shines in princes' eyes!
Tamb. Why say, Theridamas, wilt thou be a king?

Digitized by Google

Ther. Nay, though I praise it, I can live without it.
Tamb. What say my other friends? Will you be kings?
Tech. I, if I could, with all my heart, my lord.
Tamb. Why, that's well said, Techelles; so would I,
And so would you, my masters, would you not?
Usum. What then, my lord?
Tamb. Why then, Casane, shall we wish for aught
The world affords in greatest novelty,
And rest attemptless, faint, and destitute?
Methinks we should not: I am strongly moved,
That if I should desire the Persian crown,
I could attain it with a wondrous ease.
And would not all our soldiers soon consent,
If we should aim at such a dignity?
Ther. I know they would with our persuasions.
Tamb. Why then, Theridamas, I'll first assay
To get the Persian kingdom to myself;
Then thou for Parthia; they for Scythia and Media;
And, if I prosper, all shall be as sure
As if the Turk, the Pope, Afric, and Greece,
Came creeping to us with their crowns apace.
Tech. Then shall we send to this triumphing king,
And bid him battle for his novel crown?
Usum. Nay, quickly then, before his room be hot.
Tamb. 'Twill prove a pretty jest, in faith, my friends.
Ther. A jest to charge on twenty thousand men!
I judge the purchase more important far.
Tamb. Judge by thyself, Theridamas, not me;
For presently Techelles here shall haste
To bid him battle ere he pass too far,
And lose more labour than the game will quite.
Then shalt thou see this Scythian Tamburlaine,
Make but a jest to win the Persian crown.
Techelles, take a thousand horse with thee,
And bid him turn him back to war with us,
That only made him king to make us sport.

Digitized by Google

We will not steal upon him cowardly,
But give him warning and more warriors.
Haste thee, Techelles, we will follow thee.
[*Exit* TECHELLES.
What saith Theridamas?
Ther. Go on for me. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE VI

Enter COSROE, MEANDER, ORTYGIUS, MENAPHON, *with* Soldiers

Cos. What means this devilish shepherd to aspire
With such a giantly presumption
To cast up hills against the face of Heaven,
And dare the force of angry Jupiter?
But as he thrust them underneath the hills,
And pressed out fire from their burning jaws,
So will I send this monstrous slave to hell,
Where flames shall ever feed upon his soul.
Meand. Some powers divine, or else infernal, mixed
Their angry seeds at his conception;
For he was never sprung of human race,
Since with the spirit of his fearful pride,
He dare so doubtlessly resolve of rule,
And by profession be ambitious.
Orty. What god, or fiend, or spirit of the earth,
Or monster turnèd to a manly shape,
Or of what mould or mettle he be made,
What star or fate soever govern him,
Let us put on our meet encountering minds;
And in detesting such a devilish thief,
In love of honour and defence of right,
Be armed against the hate of such a foe,
Whether from earth, or hell, or Heaven, he grow.
Cos. Nobly resolved, my good Ortygius;
And since we all have sucked one wholesome air,

Digitized by Google

And with the same proportion of elements
Resolve, I hope we are resembled
Vowing our loves to equal death and life.
Let's cheer our soldiers to encounter him,
That grievous image of ingratitude,
That fiery thirster after sovereignty,
And burn him in the fury of that flame,
That none can quench but blood and empery.
Resolve, my lords and loving soldiers, now
To save your king and country from decay.
Then strike up, drum; and all the stars that make
The loathsome circle of my dated life,
Direct my weapon to his barbarous heart,
That thus opposeth him against the gods,
And scorns the powers that govern Persia!

[*Exeunt; drums and trumpets sounding.*

SCENE VII

Alarms of battle within. Enter COSROE, *wounded*, TAMBURLAINE, THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, USUMCASANE, *with others*

Cos. Barbarous and bloody Tamburlaine,
Thus to deprive me of my crown and life!
Treacherous and false Theridamas,
Even at the morning of my happy state,
Scarce being seated in my royal throne,
To work my downfall and untimely end!
An uncouth pain torments my grievèd soul,
And death arrests the organ of my voice,
Who, entering at the breach thy sword hath made,
Sacks every vein and artier of my heart. —
Bloody and insatiate Tamburlaine!

Tamb. The thirst of reign and sweetness of a crown
That caused the eldest son of heavenly Ops

Digitized by Google

To thrust his doting father from his chair,
And place himself in the empyreal Heaven,
Moved me to manage arms against thy state.
What better precedent than mighty Jove?
Nature that framed us of four elements,
Warring within our breasts for regiment,
Doth teach us all to have aspiring minds:
Our souls, whose faculties can comprehend
The wondrous architecture of the world,
And measure every wandering planet's course,
Still climbing after knowledge infinite,
And always moving as the restless spheres,
Will us to wear ourselves, and never rest,
Until we reach the ripest fruit of all,
That perfect bliss and sole felicity,
The sweet fruition of an earthly crown.

Ther. And that made me to join with Tamburlaine:
For he is gross and like the massy earth,
That moves not upwards, nor by princely deeds
Doth mean to soar above the highest sort.

Tech. And that made us the friends of Tamburlaine,
To lift our swords against the Persian king.

Usum. For as when Jove did thrust old Saturn down,
Neptune and Dis gained each of them a crown,
So do we hope to reign in Asia,
If Tamburlaine be placed in Persia.

Cos. The strangest men that ever nature made!
I know not how to take their tyrannies.
My bloodless body waxeth chill and cold,
And with my blood my life slides through my wound;
My soul begins to take her flight to hell,
And summons all my senses to depart. —
The heat and moisture, which did feed each other,
For want of nourishment to feed them both,
Are dry and cold; and now doth ghastly death,
With greedy talons gripe my bleeding heart,
And like a harpy tirès on my life.

Digitized by Google

Theridamas and Tamburlaine, I die:
And fearful vengeance light upon you both!
[COSROE *dies.* — TAMBURLAINE *takes his crown and puts it on.*
Tamb. Not all the curses which the Furies breathe,
Shall make me leave so rich a prize as this.
Theridamas, Techelles, and the rest,
Who think you now is King of Persia?
All. Tamburlaine! Tamburlaine!
Tamb. Though Mars himself, the angry god of arms,
And all the earthly potentates conspire
To dispossess me of this diadem,
Yet will I wear it in despite of them,
As great commander of this eastern world,
If you but say that Tamburlaine shall reign.
All. Long live Tamburlaine and reign in Asia!
Tamb. So now it is more surer on my head,
Than if the gods had held a parliament,
And all pronounced me King of Persia. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

ACT THE THIRD

SCENE I

Enter BAJAZETH, *the* KINGS *of* FEZ, MOROCCO, *and* ARGIER, *with others in great pomp*

Baj. Great Kings of Barbary and my portly bassoes,
We hear the Tartars and the eastern thieves,
Under the conduct of one Tamburlaine,
Presume a bickering with your emperor,
And think to rouse us from our dreadful siege
Of the famous Grecian Constantinople.
You know our army is invincible;
As many circumcisèd Turks we have,
And warlike bands of Christians renied,
As hath the ocean or the Terrene Sea
Small drops of water when the moon begins
To join in one her semicircled horns.
Yet would we not be braved with foreign power,
Nor raise our siege before the Grecians yield,
Or breathless lie before the city walls.

K. of Fez. Renownèd Emperor, and mighty general,
What, if you sent the bassoes of your guard
To charge him to remain in Asia,
Or else to threaten death and deadly arms
As from the mouth of mighty Bajazeth.

Baj. Hie thee, my basso, fast to Persia,
Tell him thy Lord, the Turkish Emperor,
Dread Lord of Afric, Europe, and Asia,
Great King and conqueror of Græcia,
The ocean, Terrene, and the Coal-black Sea,

Digitized by Google

The high and highest monarch of the world
Wills and commands (for say not I entreat),
Not once to set his foot on Africa,
Or spread his colours once in Græcia,
Lest he incur the fury of my wrath.
Tell him I am content to take a truce,
Because I hear he bears a valiant mind:
But if, presuming on his silly power,
He be so mad to manage arms with me,
Then stay thou with him; say, I bid thee so:
And if, before the sun have measured Heaven
With triple circuit, thou regreet us not,
We mean to take his morning's next arise
For messenger he will not be reclaimed,
And mean to fetch thee in despite of him.

Bas. Most great and puissant monarch of the earth,
Your basso will accomplish your behest,
And show your pleasure to the Persian,
As fits the legate of the stately Turk. [*Exit.*

K. of Arg. They say he is the King of Persia;
But, if he dare attempt to stir your siege,
'Twere requisite he should be ten times more,
For all flesh quakes at your magnificence.

Baj. True, Argier; and trembles at my looks.

K. of Mor. The spring is hindered by your smothering host,
For neither rain can fall upon the earth,
Nor sun reflex his virtuous beams thereon,
The ground is mantled with such multitudes.

Baj. All this is true as holy Mahomet;
And all the trees are blasted with our breaths.

K. of Fez. What thinks your greatness best to be achieved
In pursuit of the city's overthrow?

Baj. I will the captive pioners of Argier
Cut off the water that by leaden pipes
Runs to the city from the mountain Carnon.

Digitized by Google

Two thousand horse shall forage up and down,
That no relief or succour come by land:
And all the sea my galleys countermand.
Then shall our footmen lie within the trench,
And with their cannons mouthed like Orcus' gulf,
Batter the walls, and we will enter in;
And thus the Grecians shall be conquerèd. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II

Enter ZENOCRATE, AGYDAS, ANIPPE, *with others*

Agyd. Madam Zenocrate, may I presume
To know the cause of these unquiet fits,
That work such trouble to your wonted rest?
'Tis more than pity such a heavenly face
Should by heart's sorrow wax so wan and pale,
When your offensive rape by Tamburlaine,
(Which of your whole displeasures should be most,)
Hath seemed to be digested long ago.

Zeno. Although it be digested long ago,
As his exceeding favours have deserved,
And might content the Queen of Heaven, as well
As it hath changed my first conceived disdain,
Yet since a farther passion feeds my thoughts
With ceaseless and disconsolate conceits,
Which dyes my looks so lifeless as they are,
And might, if my extremes had full events,
Make me the ghastly counterfeit of death.

Agyd. Eternal Heaven sooner be dissolved,
And all that pierceth Phœbus' silver eye,
Before such hap fall to Zenocrate!

Zeno. Ah, life and soul, still hover in his breast
And leave my body senseless as the earth.
Or else unite you to his life and soul,
That I may live and die with Tamburlaine!

Digitized by Google

Enter, behind, TAMBURLAINE, TECHELLES, *and others*

Agyd. With Tamburlaine! Ah, fair Zenocrate,
Let not a man so vile and barbarous,
That holds you from your father in despite,
And keeps you from the honours of a queen,
(Being supposed his worthless concubine,)
Be honoured with your love but for necessity.
So, now the mighty Soldan hears of you,
Your highness needs not doubt but in short time
He will with Tamburlaine's destruction
Redeem you from this deadly servitude.

Zeno. Agydas leave to wound me with these words,
And speak of Tamburlaine as he deserves.
The entertainment we have had of him
Is far from villainy or servitude,
And might in noble minds be counted princely.

Agyd. How can you fancy one that looks so fierce,
Only disposed to martial stratagems?
Who, when he shall embrace you in his arms,
Will tell you how many thousand men he slew;
And when you look for amorous discourse,
Will rattle forth his facts of war and blood,
Too harsh a subject for your dainty ears.

Zeno. As looks the Sun through Nilus' flowing stream,
Or when the Morning holds him in her arms,
So looks my lordly love, fair Tamburlaine;
His talk much sweeter than the Muses' song
They sung for honour 'gainst Pierides;
Or when Minerva did with Neptune strive:
And higher would I rear my estimate
Than Juno, sister to the highest god,
If I were matched with mighty Tamburlaine.

Agyd. Yet be not so inconstant in your love;
But let the young Arabian[n] live in hope
After your rescue to enjoy his choice.
You see though first the King of Persia,

Digitized by Google

Being a shepherd, seemed to love you much,
Now in his majesty he leaves those looks,
Those words of favour, and those comfortings,
And gives no more than common courtesies.

Zeno. Thence rise the tears that so distain my cheeks
Fearing his love through my unworthiness. —

[TAMBURLAINE *goes to her and takes her away lovingly by the hand, looking wrathfully on* AGYDAS. *Exeunt all but* AGYDAS.

Agyd. Betrayed by fortune and suspicious love,
Threatened with frowning wrath and jealousy,
Surprised with fear of hideous revenge,
I stand aghast; but most astonièd
To see his choler shut in secret thoughts,
And wrapt in silence of his angry soul.
Upon his brows was portrayed ugly death;
And in his eyes the furies of his heart
That shone as comets, menacing revenge,
And cast a pale complexion on his cheeks.
As when the seaman sees the Hyades
Gather an army of Cimmerian clouds,
(Auster and Aquilon with wingèd steeds,
All sweating, tilt about the watery Heavens,
With shivering spears enforcing thunder-claps,
And from their shields strike flames of lightning,)
All-fearful folds his sails and sounds the main,
Lifting his prayers to the Heavens for aid
Against the terror of the winds and waves,
So fares Agydas for the late-felt frowns,
That sent a tempest to my daunted thoughts,
And make my soul divine her overthrow.

Re-enter TECHELLES *with a naked dagger, followed by* USUMCASANE

Tech. See you, Agydas, how the king salutes you?
He bids you prophesy what it imports.

Digitized by Google

Agyd. I prophesied before, and now I prove
The killing frowns of jealousy and love.
He needed not with words confirm my fear,
For words are vain where working tools present
The naked action of my threatened end:
It says, Agydas, thou shalt surely die,
And of extremities elect the least;
More honour and less pain it may procure
To die by this resolvèd hand of thine,
Than stay the torments he and Heaven have sworn.
Then haste, Agydas, and prevent the plagues
Which thy prolongèd fates may draw on thee.
Go, wander, free from fear of tyrant's rage,
Removèd from the torments and the hell,
Wherewith he may excruciate thy soul,
And let Agydas by Agydas die,
And with this stab slumber eternally. [*Stabs himself.*

Tech. Usumcasane, see, how right the man
Hath hit the meaning of my lord, the king.

Usum. 'Faith, and Techelles, it was manly done;
And since he was so wise and honourable,
Let us afford him now the bearing hence,
And crave his triple-worthy burial.

Tech. Agreed, Casane; we will honour him.
[*Exeunt, bearing out the body.*

SCENE III

Enter TAMBURLAINE, TECHELLES, USUMCASANE, THERIDAMAS, *a* Basso, ZENOCRATE, ANIPPE, *with others*

Tamb. Basso, by this thy lord and master knows
I mean to meet him in Bithynia:
See how he comes! tush, Turks are full of brags,
And menace more than they can well perform.
He meet me in the field, and fetch thee hence!

Digitized by Google

Alas! poor Turk! his fortune is too weak
To encounter with the strength of Tamburlaine.
View well my camp, and speak indifferently;
Do not my captains and my soldiers look
As if they meant to conquer Africa?

Bas. Your men are valiant, but their number few,
And cannot terrify his mighty host.
My lord, the great commander of the world,
Besides fifteen contributory kings,
Hath now in arms ten thousand Janizaries,
Mounted on lusty Mauritanian steeds,
Brought to the war by men of Tripoli;
Two hundred thousand footmen that have served
In two set battles fought in Græcia;
And for the expedition of this war,
If he think good, can from his garrisons
Withdraw as many more to follow him.

Tech. The more he brings the greater is the spoil,
For when they perish by our warlike hands,
We mean to set our footmen on their steeds,
And rifle all those stately Janizars.

Tamb. But will those kings accompany your lord?

Bas. Such as his highness please; but some must stay
To rule the provinces he late subdued.

Tamb. [*To his* Officers.] Then fight courageously: their crowns are yours;
This hand shall set them on your conquering heads,
That made me Emperor of Asia.

Usum. Let him bring millions infinite of men,
Unpeopling Western Africa and Greece,
Yet we assure us of the victory.

Ther. Even he that in a trice vanquished two kings,
More mighty than the Turkish emperor,
Shall rouse him out of Europe, and pursue
His scattered army till they yield or die.

Tamb. Well said, Theridamas; speak in that mood;

Digitized by Google

For *will* and *shall* best fitteth Tamburlaine,
Whose smiling stars give him assurèd hope
Of martial triumph ere he meet his foes.
I that am termed the scourge and wrath of God,
The only fear and terror of the world,
Will first subdue the Turk, and then enlarge
Those Christian captives, which you keep as slaves,
Burthening their bodies with your heavy chains,
And feeding them with thin and slender fare;
That naked row about the Terrene Sea,
And when they chance to rest or breathe a space,
Are punished with bastones so grievously,
That they lie panting on the galley's side,
And strive for life at every stroke they give.
These are the cruel pirates of Argier,
That damnèd train, the scum of Africa,
Inhabited with straggling runagates,
That make quick havoc of the Christian blood;
But as I live that town shall curse the time
That Tamburlaine set foot in Africa.

Enter BAJAZETH *with his* Bassoes, *the* KINGS *of* FEZ, MOROCCO, *and* ARGIER, ZABINA *and* EBEA

Baj. Bassoes and Janizaries of my guard,
Attend upon the person of your lord,
The greatest potentate of Africa.
Tamb. Techelles, and the rest, prepare your swords;
I mean to encounter with that Bajazeth.
Baj. Kings of Fez, Moroccus, and Argier,
He calls me Bajazeth, whom you call lord!
Note the presumption of this Scythian slave!
I tell thee, villain, those that lead my horse,
Have to their names titles of dignity,
And dar'st thou bluntly call me Bajazeth?
Tamb. And know, thou Turk, that those which lead my horse,

Digitized by Google

Shall lead thee captive thorough Africa;
And dar'st thou bluntly call me Tamburlaine?
Baj. By Mahomet my kinsman's sepulchre,
And by the holy Alcoran I swear,
He shall be made a chaste and lustless eunuch,
And in my sarell tend my concubines;
And all his captains that thus stoutly stand,
Shall draw the chariot of my emperess,
Whom I have brought to see their overthrow.
Tamb. By this my sword, that conquered Persia,
Thy fall shall make me famous through the world.
I will not tell thee how I'll handle thee,
But every common soldier of my camp
Shall smile to see thy miserable state.
K. of Fez. What means the mighty Turkish emperor,
To talk with one so base as Tamburlaine?
K. of Mor. Ye Moors and valiant men of Barbary,
How can ye suffer these indignities?
K. of Arg. Leave words, and let them feel your lances' points
Which glided through the bowels of the Greeks.
Baj. Well said, my stout contributory kings:
Your threefold army and my hugy host
Shall swallow up these base-born Persians.
Tech. Puissant, renowned, and mighty Tamburlaine,
Why stay we thus prolonging of their lives?
Ther. I long to see those crowns won by our swords,
That we may rule as kings of Africa.
Usum. What coward would not fight for such a prize?
Tamb. Fight all courageously, and be you kings;
I speak it, and my words are oracles.
Baj. Zabina, mother of three braver boys
Than Hercules, that in his infancy
Did push the jaws of serpents venomous;
Whose hands are made to gripe a warlike lance,
Their shoulders broad for complete armour fit,

Digitized by Google

Their limbs more large, and of a bigger size,
Than all the brats y-sprung from Typhon's loins;
Who, when they come unto their father's age,
Will batter turrets with their manly fists —
Sit here upon this royal chair of state,
And on thy head wear my imperial crown,
Until I bring this sturdy Tamburlaine,
And all his captains bound in captive chains.

Zab. Such good success happen to Bajazeth!

Tamb. Zenocrate, the loveliest maid alive,
Fairer than rocks of pearl and precious stone,
The only paragon of Tamburlaine,
Whose eyes are brighter than the lamps of Heaven,
And speech more pleasant than sweet harmony!
That with thy looks canst clear the darkened sky,
And calm the rage of thundering Jupiter,
Sit down by her, adornèd with my crown,
As if thou wert the Empress of the world.
Stir not, Zenocrate, until thou see
Me march victoriously with all my men,
Triumphing over him and these his kings;
Which I will bring as vassals to thy feet;
Till then take thou my crown, vaunt of my worth,
And manage words with her, as we will arms.

Zeno. And may my love, the King of Persia,
Return with victory and free from wound!

Baj. Now shalt thou feel the force of Turkish arms,
Which lately made all Europe quake for fear.
I have of Turks, Arabians, Moors, and Jews,
Enough to cover all Bithynia.
Let thousands die; their slaughtered carcasses
Shall serve for walls and bulwarks to the rest;
And as the heads of Hydra, so my power,
Subdued, shall stand as mighty as before.
If they should yield their necks unto the sword,
Thy soldiers' arms could not endure to strike
So many blows as I have heads for thee.

Digitized by Google

Thou know'st not, foolish, hardy Tamburlaine,
What 'tis to meet me in the open field,
That leave no ground for thee to march upon.
Tamb. Our conquering swords shall marshal us the way
We use to march upon the slaughtered foe,
Trampling their bowels with our horses' hoofs;
Brave horses bred on th' white Tartarian hills;
My camp is like to Julius Cæsar's host,
That never fought but had the victory;
Nor in Pharsalia was there such hot war,
As these, my followers, willingly would have.
Legions of spirits fleeting in the air
Direct our bullets and our weapons' points,
And make your strokes to wound the senseless lure,
And when she sees our bloody colours spread,
Then Victory begins to take her flight,
Resting herself upon my milk-white tent. —
But come, my lords, to weapons let us fall;
The field is ours, the Turk, his wife and all.
[*Exit with his followers.*
Baj. Come, kings and bassoes, let us glut our swords,
That thirst to drink the feeble Persians' blood.
[*Exit with his followers.*
Zab. Base concubine, must thou be placed by me,
That am the empress of the mighty Turk?
Zeno. Disdainful Turkess and unreverend boss!
Call'st thou me concubine, that am betrothed
Unto the great and mighty Tamburlaine?
Zab. To Tamburlaine, the great Tartarian thief!
Zeno. Thou wilt repent these lavish words of thine,
When thy great basso-master and thyself
Must plead for mercy at his kingly feet,
And sue to me to be your advocate.
Zab. And sue to thee! — I tell thee, shameless girl,
Thou shalt be laundress to my waiting-maid!
How lik'st thou her, Ebea? — Will she serve?

Digitized by Google

Ebea. Madam, perhaps she thinks she is too fine,
But I shall turn her into other weeds,
And make her dainty fingers fall to work.
Zeno. Hear'st thou, Anippe, how thy drudge doth talk?
And how my slave, her mistress, menaceth?
Both for their sauciness shall be employed
To dress the common soldiers' meat and drink,
For we will scorn they should come near ourselves.
Anip. Yet sometimes let your highness send for them
To do the work my chambermaid disdains.
[*They sound to the battle within.*
Zeno. Ye gods and powers that govern Persia,
And made my lordly love her worthy king,
Now strengthen him against the Turkish Bajazeth,
And let his foes, like flocks of fearful roes
Pursued by hunters, fly his angry looks,
That I may see him issue conqueror!
Zab. Now, Mahomet, solicit God himself,
And make him rain down murdering shot from Heaven
To dash the Scythians' brains, and strike them dead,
That dare to manage arms with him
That offered jewels to thy sacred shrine,
When first he warred against the Christians!
[*They sound again to the battle within.*
Zeno. By this the Turks lie weltering in their blood,
And Tamburlaine is Lord of Africa.
Zab. Thou art deceived. — I heard the trumpets sound,
As when my emperor overthrew the Greeks,
And led them captive into Africa.
Straight will I use thee as thy pride deserves —
Prepare thyself to live and die my slave.
Zeno. If Mahomet should come from Heaven and swear
My royal lord is slain or conquerèd,
Yet should he not persuade me otherwise
But that he lives and will be conqueror.

Digitized by Google

Re-enter BAJAZETH, *pursued by* TAMBURLAINE; *they fight, and* BAJAZETH *is overcome*

Tamb. Now, King of bassoes, who is conqueror?
Baj. Thou, by the fortune of this damnèd foil.
Tamb. Where are your stout contributory kings?

Re-enter TECHELLES, THERIDAMAS, *and* USUMCASANE

Tech. We have their crowns — their bodies strow the field.
Tamb. Each man a crown! — Why, kingly fought i' faith.
Deliver them into my treasury.
Zeno. Now let me offer to my gracious lord
His royal crown again so highly won.
Tamb. Nay, take the crown from her, Zenocrate,
And crown me Emperor of Africa.
Zab. No, Tamburlaine: though now thou gat the best,
Thou shalt not yet be lord of Africa.
Ther. Give her the crown, Turkess: you were best.
[*He takes it from her.*
Zab. Injurious villains! — thieves! — runagates!
How dare you thus abuse my majesty?
Ther. Here, madam, you are Empress; she is none.
[*Gives it to* ZENOCRATE.
Tamb. Not now, Theridamas; her time is past.
The pillars that have bolstered up those terms,
Are fallen in clusters at my conquering feet.
Zab. Though he be prisoner, he may be ransomed.
Tamb. Not all the world shall ransom Bajazeth.
Baj. Ah, fair Zabina! we have lost the field;
And never had the Turkish emperor
So great a foil by any foreign foe.
Now will the Christian miscreants be glad,
Ringing with joy their superstitious bells,
And making bonfires for my overthrow.
But, ere I die, those foul idolaters

Digitized by Google

Shall make me bonfires with their filthy bones.
For though the glory of this day be lost,
Afric and Greece have garrisons enough
To make me sovereign of the earth again.
Tamb. Those wallèd garrisons will I subdue,
And write myself great lord of Africa.
So from the East unto the furthest West
Shall Tamburlaine extend his puissant arm.
The galleys and those pilling brigandines,
That yearly sail to the Venetian gulf,
And hover in the Straits for Christians' wreck,
Shall lie at anchor in the Isle Asant,
Until the Persian fleet and men-of-war,
Sailing along the oriental sea,
Have fetched about the Indian continent,
Even from Persepolis to Mexico,
And thence unto the straits of Jubaltèr;
Where they shall meet and join their force in one,
Keeping in awe the bay of Portingale,
And all the ocean by the British shore;
And by this means I'll win the world at last.
Baj. Yet set a ransom on me, Tamburlaine.
Tamb. What, think'st thou Tamburlaine esteems thy gold?
I'll make the kings of India, ere I die,
Offer their mines to sue for peace to me,
And dig for treasure to appease my wrath.
Come, bind them both, and one lead in the Turk;
The Turkess let my love's maid lead away.
[*They bind them.*
Baj. Ah, villains! — dare you touch my sacred arms?
O Mahomet! — O sleepy Mahomet!
Zab. O cursèd Mahomet, that makes us thus
The slaves to Scythians rude and barbarous!
Tamb. Come, bring them in; and for this happy conquest,
Triumph and solemnize a martial feast. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

ACT THE FOURTH

SCENE I

Enter the SOLDAN *of* EGYPT, CAPOLIN, Lords, *and* Messenger

Sold. Awake, ye men of Memphis! — hear the clang
Of Scythian trumpets! — hear the basilisks,
That, roaring, shake Damascus' turrets down!
The rogue of Volga holds Zenocrate,
The Soldan's daughter, for his concubine,
And with a troop of thieves and vagabonds,
Hath spread his colours to our high disgrace,
While you, faint-hearted, base Egyptians,
Lie slumbering on the flowery banks of Nile,
As crocodiles that unaffrighted rest,
While thundering cannons rattle on their skins.
Mess. Nay, mighty Soldan, did your greatness see
The frowning looks of fiery Tamburlaine,
That with his terror and imperious eyes,
Commands the hearts of his associates,
It might amaze your royal majesty.
Sold. Villain, I tell thee, were that Tamburlaine
As monstrous as Gorgon prince of hell,
The Soldan would not start a foot from him.
But speak, what power hath he?
Mess. Mighty lord,
Three hundred thousand men in armour clad,
Upon their prancing steeds disdainfully,
With wanton paces tramp ing on the ground:
Five hundred thousand footmen threatening shot,

Digitized by Google

Shaking their swords, their spears, and iron bills,
Environing their standard round, that stood
As bristle-pointed as a thorny wood:
Their warlike engines and munition
Exceed the forces of their martial men.
Sold. Nay, could their numbers countervail the stars,
Or ever-drizzling drops of April showers,
Or withered leaves that Autumn shaketh down,
Yet would the Soldan by his conquering power
So scatter and consume them in his rage,
That not a man should live to rue their fall.
Capol. So might your highness, had you time to sort
Your fighting men, and raise your royal host;
But Tamburlaine, by expedition,
Advantage takes of your unreadiness.
Sold. Let him take all the advantages he can.
Were all the world conspired to fight for him,
Nay, were he devil, as he is no man,
Yet in revenge of fair Zenocrate,
Whom he detaineth in despite of us,
This arm should send him down to Erebus,
To shroud his shame in darkness of the night.
Mess. Pleaseth your mightiness to understand,
His resolution far exceedeth all.
The first day when he pitcheth down his tents,
White is their hue, and on his silver crest,
A snowy feather spangled white he bears,
To signify the mildness of his mind,
That, satiate with spoil, refuseth blood.
But when Aurora mounts the second time
As red as scarlet is his furniture;
Then must his kindled wrath be quenched with blood,
Not sparing any that can manage arms;
But if these threats move not submission,
Black are his colours, black pavilion;
His spear, his shield, his horse, his armour, plumes,
And jetty feathers, menace death and hell!

Digitized by Google

Without respect of sex, degree, or age,
He razeth all his foes with fire and sword.
Sold. Merciless villain! — peasant, ignorant
Of lawful arms or martial discipline!
Pillage and murder are his usual trades.
The slave usurps the glorious name of war.
See, Capolin, the fair Arabian king,
That hath been disappointed by this slave
Of my fair daughter, and his princely love,
May have fresh warning to go war with us,
And be revenged for her disparagement. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II

Enter TAMBURLAINE, TECHELLES, THERIDAMAS, USUMCASANE, ZENOCRATE, ANIPPE, *two* MOORS *drawing* BAJAZETH *in a cage, and* ZABINA *following him*

Tamb. Bring out my footstool.
[BAJAZETH *is taken out of the cage.*
Baj. Ye holy priests of heavenly Mahomet,
That, sacrificing, slice and cut your flesh,
Staining his altars with your purple blood;
Make Heaven to frown and every fixèd star
To suck up poison from the moorish fens,
And pour it in this glorious tyrant's throat!
Tamb. The chiefest God, first mover of that sphere,
Enchased with thousands ever-shining lamps,
Will sooner burn the glorious frame of Heaven,
Than it should so conspire my overthrow.
But, villain! thou that wishest this to me,
Fall prostrate on the low disdainful earth,
And be the footstool of great Tamburlaine,
That I may rise into my royal throne.
Baj. First shalt thou rip my bowels with thy sword,
And sacrifice my soul to death and hell,
Before I yield to such a slavery.

Digitized by Google

Tamb. Base villain, vassal, slave to Tamburlaine!
Unworthy to embrace or touch the ground
That bears the honour of my royal weight;
Stoop, villain, stoop! — Stoop! for so he bids
That may command thee piecemeal to be torn,
Or scattered like the lofty cedar trees
Struck with the voice of thundering Jupiter.
Baj. Then, as I look down to the damnèd fiends,
Fiends look on me! and thou, dread god of hell,
With ebon sceptre strike this hateful earth,
And make it swallow both of us at once!
[TAMBURLAINE *steps upon him to mount his throne.*
Tamb. Now clear the triple region of the air,
And let the majesty of Heaven behold
Their scourge and terror tread on emperors.
Smile stars, that reigned at my nativity
And dim the brightness of your neighbour lamps!
Disdain to borrow light of Cynthia!
For I, the chiefest lamp of all the earth,
First rising in the East with mild aspèct,
But fixèd now in the meridian line,
Will send up fire to your turning spheres,
And cause the sun to borrow light of you.
My sword struck fire from his coat of steel,
Even in Bithynia, when I took this Turk;
As when a fiery exhalation,
Wrapt in the bowels of a freezing cloud
Fighting for passage, makes the welkin crack,
And casts a flash of lightning to the earth:
But ere I march to wealthy Persia,
Or leave Damascus and the Egyptian fields,
As was the fame of Clymene's brainsick son,
That almost brent the axle-tree of Heaven,
So shall our swords, our lances, and our shot
Fill all the air with fiery meteors:
Then when the sky shall wax as red as blood
It shall be said I made it red myself,

Digitized by Google

To make me think of nought but blood and war.
Zab. Unworthy king, that by thy cruelty
Unlawfully usurp'st the Persian seat,
Dar'st thou that never saw an emperor,
Before thou met my husband in the field,
Being thy captive, thus abuse his state,
Keeping his kingly body in a cage,
That roofs of gold and sun-bright palaces
Should have prepared to entertain his grace?
And treading him beneath thy loathsome feet,
Whose feet the kings of Africa have kissed.
Tech. You must devise some torment worse, my lord,
To make these captives rein their lavish tongues.
Tamb. Zenocrate, look better to your slave.
Zeno. She is my handmaid's slave, and she shall look
That these abuses flow not from her tongue:
Chide her, Anippe.
Anip. Let these be warnings for you then, my slave,
How you abuse the person of the king;
Or else I swear to have you whipt, stark-naked.
Baj. Great Tamburlaine, great in my overthrow,
Ambitious pride shall make thee fall as low,
For treading on the back of Bajazeth,
That should be horsèd on four mighty kings.
Tamb. Thy names, and titles, and thy dignities
Are fled from Bajazeth and remain with me,
That will maintain it 'gainst a world of kings.
Put him in again. [*They put him back into the cage.*
Baj. Is this a place for mighty Bajazeth?
Confusion light on him that helps thee thus!
Tamb. There, whiles he lives, shall Bajazeth be kept;
And, where I go, be thus in triumph drawn;
And thou, his wife, shalt feed him with the scraps
My servitors shall bring thee from my board;
For he that gives him other food than this,
Shall sit by him and starve to death himself;
This is my mind and I will have it so.

Digitized by Google

Not all the kings and emperors of the earth,
If they would lay their crowns before my feet,
Shall ransom him, or take him from his cage.
The ages that shall talk of Tamburlaine,
Even from this day to Plato's wondrous year,[n]
Shall talk how I have handled Bajazeth;
These Moors, that drew him from Bithynia,
To fair Damascus, where we now remain,
Shall lead him with us wheresoe'er we go.
Techelles, and my loving followers,
Now may we see Damascus' lofty towers,
Like to the shadows of Pyramides,
That with their beauties grace the Memphian fields:
The golden statue of their feathered bird
That spreads her wings upon the city's walls
Shall not defend it from our battering shot:
The townsmen mask in silk and cloth of gold,
And every house is as a treasury:
The men, the treasure, and the town is ours.

Ther. Your tents of white now pitched before the gates,
And gentle flags of amity displayed,
I doubt not but the governor will yield,
Offering Damascus to your majesty.

Tamb. So shall he have his life and all the rest:
But if he stay until the bloody flag
Be once advanced on my vermilion tent,
He dies, and those that kept us out so long.
And when they see us march in black array,
With mournful streamers hanging down their heads,
Were in that city all the world contained,
Not one should 'scape, but perish by our swords.

Zeno. Yet would you have some pity for my sake,
Because it is my country, and my father's.

Tamb. Not for the world, Zenocrate; I've sworn.
Come; bring in the Turk. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE III

Enter the SOLDAN, *the* KING *of* ARABIA, CAPOLIN, *and* Soldiers *with colours flying*

Sold. Methinks we march as Meleager did,
Environèd with brave Argolian knights,
To chase the savage Calydonian boar,
Or Cephalus with lusty Theban youths
Against the wolf that angry Themis sent
To waste and spoil the sweet Aonian fields,
A monster of five hundred thousand heads,
Compact of rapine, piracy, and spoil.
The scum of men, the hate and scourge of God,
Raves in Ægyptia and annoyeth us.
My lord, it is the bloody Tamburlaine,
A sturdy felon and a base-bred thief,
By murder raisèd to the Persian crown,
That dares control us in our territories.
To tame the pride of this presumptuous beast,
Join your Arabians with the Soldan's power,
Let us unite our royal bands in one,
And hasten to remove Damascus' siege.
It is a blemish to the majesty
And high estate of mighty emperors,
That such a base usurping vagabond
Should brave a king, or wear a princely crown.

K. of Arab. Renownèd Soldan, have you lately heard
The overthrow of mighty Bajazeth
About the confines of Bithynia?
The slavery wherewith he persecutes
The noble Turk and his great emperess?

Sold. I have, and sorrow for his bad success;
But noble lord of great Arabia,
Be so persuaded that the Soldan is
No more dismayed with tidings of his fall,
Than in the haven when the pilot stands,

Digitized by Google

And views a stranger's ship rent in the winds,
And shiverèd against a craggy rock;
Yet in compassion to his wretched state,
A sacred vow to Heaven and him I make,
Confirming it with Ibis' holy name,
That Tamburlaine shall rue the day, the hour,
Wherein he wrought such ignominious wrong
Unto the hallowed person of a prince,
Or kept the fair Zenocrate so long
As concubine, I fear, to feed his lust.
K. of Arab. Let grief and fury hasten on revenge;
Let Tamburlaine for his offences feel
Such plagues as we and Heaven can pour on him.
I long to break my spear upon his crest,
And prove the weight of his victorious arm;
For Fame, I fear, hath been too prodigal
In sounding through the world his partial praise.
Sold. Capolin, hast thou surveyed our powers?
Capol. Great Emperors of Egypt and Arabia,
The number of your hosts united is
A hundred and fifty thousand horse;
Two hundred thousand foot, brave men-at-arms,
Courageous, and full of hardiness,
As frolic as the hunters in the chase
Of savage beasts amid the desert woods.
K. of Arab. My mind presageth fortunate success;
And Tamburlaine, my spirit doth foresee
The utter ruin of thy men and thee.
Sold. Then rear your standards; let your sounding drums
Direct our soldiers to Damascus' walls.
Now, Tamburlaine, the mighty Soldan comes,
And leads with him the great Arabian king,
To dim thy baseness and obscurity,
Famous for nothing but for theft and spoil;
To raze and scatter thy inglorious crew
Of Scythians and slavish Persians. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE IV

A Banquet set out; to it come TAMBURLAINE, *all in scarlet*, ZENOCRATE, THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, USUMCASANE. BAJAZETH *in his cage*, ZABINA, *and others*

Tamb. Now hang our bloody colours by Damascus,
Reflexing hues of blood upon their heads,
While they walk quivering on their city walls,
Half dead for fear before they feel my wrath,
Then let us freely banquet and carouse
Full bowls of wine unto the god of war
That means to fill your helmets full of gold,
And make Damascus spoils as rich to you,
As was to Jason Colchos' golden fleece. —
And now, Bajazeth, hast thou any stomach?

Baj. Ay, such a stomach, cruel Tamburlaine, as I could willingly feed upon thy blood-raw heart.

Tamb. Nay thine own is easier to come by; pluck out that: and 'twill serve thee and thy wife: Well, Zenocrate, Techelles, and the rest, fall to your victuals.

Baj. Fall to, and never may your meat digest!
Ye Furies, that can mask invisible,
Dive to the bottom of Avernus' pool,
And in your hands bring hellish poison up
And squeeze it in the cup of Tamburlaine!
Or, wingèd snakes of Lerna, cast your stings,
And leave your venoms in this tyrant's dish!

Zab. And may this banquet prove as ominous
As Progne's to the adulterous Thracian king,
That fed upon the substance of his child.

Zeno. My lord, how can you tamely suffer these
Outrageous curses by these slaves of yours?

Tamb. To let them see, divine Zenocrate,
I glory in the curses of my foes,
Having the power from the imperial Heaven
To turn them all upon their proper heads.

Digitized by Google

Tech. I pray you give them leave, madam; this speech is a goodly refreshing to them.

Ther. But if his highness would let them be fed, it would do them more good.

Tamb. Sirrah, why fall you not to? — are you so daintily brought up, you cannot eat your own flesh?

Baj. First, legions of devils shall tear thee in pieces.

Usum. Villain, know'st thou to whom thou speakest?

Tamb. Oh, let him alone. Here; eat, sir; take it from my sword's point, or I'll thrust it to thy heart.

[BAJAZETH *takes it and stamps upon it.*

Ther. He stamps it under his feet, my lord.

Tamb. Take it up, villain, and eat it; or I will make thee slice the brawns of thy arms into carbonadoes and eat them.

Usum. Nay, 'twere better he killed his wife, and then she shall be sure not to be starved, and he be provided for a month's victual beforehand.

Tamb. Here is my dagger: despatch her while she is fat, for if she live but a while longer, she will fall into a consumption with fretting, and then she will not be worth the eating.

Ther. Dost thou think that Mahomet will suffer this?

Tech. 'Tis like he will when he cannot let it.

Tamb. Go to; fall to your meat. — What, not a bit! Belike he hath not been watered to-day; give him some drink.

[*They give* BAJAZETH *water to drink, and he flings it upon the ground.*

Tamb. Fast, and welcome, sir, while hunger make you eat. How now, Zenocrate, do not the Turk and his wife make a goodly show at a banquet?

Zeno. Yes, my lord.

Ther. Methinks, 'tis a great deal better than a consort of music.

Tamb. Yet music would do well to cheer up Zenocrate. Pray thee, tell, why thou art so sad? — If thou

Digitized by Google

wilt have a song, the Turk shall strain his voice. But why is it ?

Zeno. My lord, to see my father's town besieged,
The country wasted where myself was born,
How can it but afflict my very soul ?
If any love remain in you, my lord,
Or if my love unto your majesty
May merit favour at your highness' hands,
Then raise your siege from fair Damascus' walls,
And with my father take a friendly truce.

Tamb. Zenocrate, were Egypt Jove's own land,
Yet would I with my sword make Jove to stoop.
I will confute those blind geographers
That make a triple region in the world,
Excluding regions which I mean to trace,
And with this pen[n] reduce them to a map,
Calling the provinces cities and towns,
After my name and thine, Zenocrate.
Here at Damascus will I make the point
That shall begin the perpendicular ;
And would'st thou have me buy thy father's love
With such a loss ? — Tell me, Zenocrate.

Zeno. Honour still wait on happy Tamburlaine ;
Yet give me leave to plead for him my lord.

Tamb. Content thyself: his person shall be safe
And all the friends of fair Zenocrate,
If with their lives they may be pleased to yield,
Or may be forced to make me emperor ;
For Egypt and Arabia must be mine. —
Feed, you slave ; thou may'st think thyself happy to be fed from my trencher.

Baj. My empty stomach, full of idle heat,
Draws bloody humours from my feeble parts,
Preserving life by hastening cruel death.
My veins are pale ; my sinews hard and dry ;
My joints benumbed ; unless I eat, I die.

Zab. Eat, Bajazeth : and let us live

Digitized by Google

In spite of them — looking some happy power
Will pity and enlarge us.

Tamb. Here, Turk; wilt thou have a clean trencher?

Baj. Ay, tyrant, and more meat.

Tamb. Soft, sir; you must be dieted; too much eating will make you surfeit.

Ther. So it would, my lord, 'specially having so small a walk and so little exercise.

[*A second course of crowns is brought in.*

Tamb. Theridamas, Techelles, and Casane, here are the cates you desire to finger, are they not?

Ther. Ay, my lord: but none save kings must feed with these.

Tech. 'Tis enough for us to see them, and for Tamburlaine only to enjoy them.

Tamb. Well; here is now to the Soldan of Egypt, the King of Arabia, and the Governor of Damascus. Now take these three crowns, and pledge me, my contributory kings. — I crown you here, Theridamas, King of Argier; Techelles, King of Fez; and Usumcasane, King of Moroccus. How say you to this, Turk? These are not your contributory kings.

Baj. Nor shall they long be thine, I warrant them.

Tamb. Kings of Argier, Moroccus, and of Fez,
You that have marched with happy Tamburlaine
As far as from the frozen plage of Heaven,
Unto the watery morning's ruddy bower,
And thence by land unto the torrid zone,
Deserve these titles I endow you with,
By valour and by magnanimity.
Your births shall be no blemish to your fame,
For virtue is the fount whence honour springs,
And they are worthy she investeth kings.

Ther. And since your highness hath so well vouchsafed;
If we deserve them not with higher meeds
Than erst our states and actions have retained
Take them away again and make us slaves.

Digitized by Google

Tamb. Well said, Theridamas; when holy fates
Shall 'stablish me in strong Ægyptia,
We mean to travel to the antarctic pole,
Conquering the people underneath our feet,
And be renowned as never emperors were.
Zenocrate, I will not crown thee yet,
Until with greater honours I be graced. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

ACT THE FIFTH

SCENE I

Enter the GOVERNOR *of* DAMASCUS, *with several* Citizens, *and four* Virgins, *having branches of laurel in their hands*

Gov. Still doth this man, or rather god of war,
Batter our walls and beat our turrets down;
And to resist with longer stubbornness
Or hope of rescue from the Soldan's power,
Were but to bring our wilful overthrow,
And make us desperate of our threatened lives.
We see his tents have now been altered
With terrors to the last and cruellest hue.
His coal-black colours everywhere advanced,
Threaten our city with a general spoil;
And if we should with common rites of arms
Offer our safeties to his clemency,
I fear the custom, proper to his sword,
Which he observes as parcel of his fame,
Intending so to terrify the world,
By any innovation or remorse
Will never be dispensed with till our deaths;
Therefore, for these our harmless virgins' sakes,
Whose honours and whose lives rely on him,
Let us have hope that their unspotted prayers,
Their blubbered cheeks, and hearty, humble moans,
Will melt his fury into some remorse,
And use us like a loving conqueror.

1st Virg. If humble suits or imprecations,

Digitized by Google

(Uttered with tears of wretchedness and blood
Shed from the heads and hearts of all our sex,
Some made your wives and some your children)
Might have entreated your obdurate breasts
To entertain some care of our securities
Whiles only danger beat upon our walls,
These more than dangerous warrants of our death
Had never been erected as they be,
Nor you depend on such weak helps as we.

Gov. Well, lovely virgins, think our country's care,
Our love of honour, loath to be enthralled
To foreign powers and rough imperious yokes,
Would not with too much cowardice or fear,
(Before all hope of rescue were denied)
Submit yourselves and us to servitude.
Therefore in that your safeties and our own,
Your honours, liberties, and lives were weighed
In equal care and balance with our own,
Endure as we the malice of our stars,
The wrath of Tamburlaine and power of wars;
Or be the means the overweighing heavens
Have kept to qualify these hot extremes,
And bring us pardon in your cheerful looks.

2nd Virg. Then here before the majesty of Heaven
And holy patrons of Ægyptia,
With knees and hearts submissive we entreat
Grace to our words and pity to our looks
That this device may prove propitious,
And through the eyes and ears of Tamburlaine
Convey events of mercy to his heart;
Grant that these signs of victory we yield
May bind the temples of his conquering head,
To hide the folded furrows of his brows,
And shadow his displeasèd countenance
With happy looks of ruth and lenity.
Leave us, my lord, and loving countrymen;
What simple virgins may persuade, we will.

Digitized by Google

Gov. Farewell, sweet virgins, on whose safe return
Depends our city, liberty, and lives.
[*Exeunt* GOVERNOR *and* Citizens; *the* Virgins *remain.*

SCENE II

Enter TAMBURLAINE, *all in black and very melancholy,* TECHELLES, THERIDAMAS, USUMCASANE, *with others*

Tamb. What, are the turtles frayed out of their nests?
Alas, poor fools! must you be first shall feel
The sworn destruction of Damascus?
They knew my custom; could they not as well
Have sent ye out, when first my milk-white flags,[n]
Through which sweet Mercy threw her gentle beams,
Reflexing them on your disdainful eyes,
As now, when fury and incensèd hate
Flings slaughtering terror from my coal-black tents,
And tells for truth submission comes too late?
1st Virg. Most happy King and Emperor of the earth,
Image of honour and nobility,
For whom the powers divine have made the world,
And on whose throne the holy Graces sit;
In whose sweet person is comprised the sum
Of Nature's skill and heavenly majesty;
Pity our plights! Oh, pity poor Damascus!
Pity old age, within whose silver hairs
Honour and reverence evermore have reigned!
Pity the marriage-bed, where many a lord,
In prime and glory of his loving joy,
Embraceth now with tears of ruth and blood
The jealous body of his fearful wife,
Whose cheeks and hearts so punished with conceit,
To think thy puissant, never-stayèd arm,
Will part their bodies, and prevent their souls
From heavens of comfort yet their age might bear,

Digitized by Google

Now wax all pale and withered to the death,
As well for grief our ruthless governor
Hath thus refused the mercy of thy hand,
(Whose sceptre angels kiss and furies dread,)
As for their liberties, their loves, or lives!
Oh, then, for these, and such as we ourselves,
For us, our infants, and for all our bloods,
That never nourished thought against thy rule,
Pity, oh, pity, sacred Emperor,
The prostrate service of this wretched town,
And take in sign thereof this gilded wreath;
Whereto each man of rule hath given his hand,
And wished, as worthy subjects, happy means
To be investers of thy royal brows
Even with the true Egyptian diadem!

Tamb. Virgins, in vain you labour to prevent
That which mine honour swears shall be performed.
Behold my sword! what see you at the point?

1st Virg. Nothing but fear, and fatal steel, my lord.

Tamb. Your fearful minds are thick and misty then;
For there sits Death; there sits imperious Death
Keeping his circuit by the slicing edge.
But I am pleased you shall not see him there;
He now is seated on my horsemen's spears,
And on their points his fleshless body feeds.
Techelles, straight go charge a few of them
To charge these dames, and show my servant, Death,
Sitting in scarlet on their armèd spears.

Virgins. Oh, pity us!

Tamb. Away with them, I say, and show them Death.
[*The* Virgins *are taken out.*
I will not spare these proud Egyptians,
Nor change my martial observations
For all the wealth of Gihon's golden waves,
Or for the love of Venus, would she leave
The angry god of arms and lie with me.
They have refused the offer of their lives,

Digitized by Google

And know my customs are as peremptory
As wrathful planets, death, or destiny.

Re-enter TECHELLES

What, have your horsemen shown the virgins Death?
Tech. They have, my lord, and on Damascus' walls
Have hoisted up their slaughtered carcasses.
Tamb. A sight as baneful to their souls, I think,
As are Thessalian drugs or mithridate:
But go, my lords, put the rest to the sword.
[*Exeunt all except* TAMBURLAINE.
Ah, fair Zenocrate! — divine Zenocrate! —
Fair is too foul an epithet for thee,
That in thy passion for thy country's love,
And fear to see thy kingly father's harm,
With hair dishevelled wip'st thy watery cheeks;
And, like to Flora in her morning pride,
Shaking her silver tresses in the air,
Rain'st on the earth resolvèd pearl in showers,
And sprinklest sapphires on thy shining face,
Where Beauty, mother to the Muses, sits
And comments volumes with her ivory pen,
Taking instructions from thy flowing eyes;
Eyes that, when Ebena steps to Heaven,
In silence of thy solemn evening's walk,
Make, in the mantle of the richest night,
The moon, the planets, and the meteors, light;
There angels in their crystal armours fight
A doubtful battle with my tempted thoughts
For Egypt's freedom, and the Soldan's life;
His life that so consumes Zenocrate,
Whose sorrows lay more siege unto my soul,
Than all my army to Damascus' walls:
And neither Persia's sovereign, nor the Turk
Troubled my senses with conceit of foil[n]
So much by much as doth Zenocrate.
What is beauty, saith my sufferings, then?

Digitized by Google

If all the pens that ever poets held
Had fed the feeling of their masters' thoughts,
And every sweetness that inspired their hearts,
Their minds, and muses on admirèd themes;
If all the heavenly quintessence they still
From their immortal flowers of poesy,
Wherein, as in a mirror, we perceive
The highest reaches of a human wit;
If these had made one poem's period,
And all combined in beauty's worthiness,
Yet should there hover in their restless heads
One thought, one grace, one wonder, at the least,
Which into words no virtue can digest.
But how unseemly is it for my sex,
My discipline of arms and chivalry,
My nature, and the terror of my name,
To harbour thoughts effeminate and faint!
Save only that in beauty's just applause,
With whose instinct the soul of man is touched;
And every warrior that is wrapt with love
Of fame, of valour, and of victory,
Must needs have beauty beat on his conceits:
I thus conceiving and subduing both
That which hath stooped the chiefest of the gods,
Even from the fiery-spangled veil of Heaven,
To feel the lowly warmth of shepherds' flames,
And mask in cottages of strowèd reeds,
Shall give the world to note for all my birth,
That virtue solely is the sum of glory,
And fashions men with true nobility." —
Who's within there?

Enter Attendants

Hath Bajazeth been fed to-day?

Atten. Ay, my lord.

Tamb. Bring him forth; and let us know if the town be ransacked. [*Exeunt* Attendants.

Digitized by Google

Enter TECHELLES, THERIDAMAS, USUMCASANE, *and others*

Tech. The town is ours, my lord, and fresh supply
Of conquest and of spoil is offered us.
Tamb. That's well, Techelles; what's the news?
Tech. The Soldan and the Arabian king together,
March on us with such eager violence,
As if there were no way but one with us.[n]
Tamb. No more there is not, I warrant thee, Techelles.

Attendants *bring in* BAJAZETH *in his cage, followed by* ZABINA; *then exeunt*

Ther. We know the victory is ours, my lord;
But let us save the reverend Soldan's life,
For fair Zenocrate that so laments his state.
Tamb. That will we chiefly see unto, Theridamas,
For sweet Zenocrate, whose worthiness
Deserves a conquest over every heart.
And now, my footstool, if I lose the field,
You hope of liberty and restitution?
Here let him stay, my masters, from the tents,
Till we have made us ready for the field.
Pray for us, Bajazeth; we are going.

[*Exeunt* TAMBURLAINE, TECHELLES, USUMCASANE, *and* Persians.

Baj. Go, never to return with victory.
Millions of men encompass thee about,
And gore thy body with as many wounds!
Sharp, forkèd arrows light upon thy horse!
Furies from the black Cocytus lake,
Break up the earth, and with their fire-brands
Enforce thee run upon the baneful pikes!
Volleys of shot pierce through thy charmèd skin,
And every bullet dipt in poisoned drugs!
Or, roaring cannons sever all thy joints,
Making thee mount as high as eagles soar!

Digitized by Google

Zab. Let all the swords and lances in the field
Stick in his breast as in their proper rooms!
At every pore let blood come dropping forth,
That lingering pains may massacre his heart,
And madness send his damnèd soul to hell!

Baj. Ah, fair Zabina! we may curse his power;
The heavens may frown, the earth for anger quake:
But such a star hath influence on his sword,
As rules the skies and countermands the gods
More than Cimmerian Styx or Destiny;
And then shall we in this detested guise,
With shâme, with hunger, and with horror stay,
Griping our bowels with retorquèd thoughts,
And have no hope to end our ecstasies.

Zab. Then is there left no Mahomet, no God,
No fiend, no fortune, nor no hope of end
To our infâmous monstrous slaveries.
Gape earth, and let the fiends infernal view
A hell as hopeless and as full of fear
As are the blasted banks of Erebus,
Where shaking ghosts with ever-howling groans
Hover about the ugly ferryman,
To get a passage to Elysium!
Why should we live? Oh, wretches, beggars, slaves!
Why live we, Bajazeth, and build up nests
So high within the region of the air
By living long in this oppression,
That all the world will see and laugh to scorn
The former triumphs of our mightiness
In this obscure infernal servitude?

Baj. O life, more loathsome to my vexèd thoughts
Than noisome parbreak of the Stygian snakes,
Which fills the nooks of hell with standing air,
Infecting all the ghosts with cureless griefs!
O dreary engines of my loathèd sight,
That see my crown, my honour, and my name
Thrust under yoke and thraldom of a thief,

Digitized by Google

Why feed ye still on day's accursèd beams
And sink not quite into my tortured soul?
You see my wife, my queen, and emperess,
Brought up and proppèd by the hand of fame,
Queen of fifteen contributory queens,
Now thrown to rooms of black abjection,
Smeared with blots of basest drudgery,
And villainess to shame, disdain, and misery.
Accursèd Bajazeth, whose words of ruth,
(That would with pity cheer Zabina's heart,
And make our souls resolve in ceaseless tears;)
Sharp hunger bites upon, and gripes the root,
From whence the issues of my thoughts do break;
O poor Zabina! O my queen! my queen!
Fetch me some water for my burning breast,
To cool and comfort me with longer date,
That in the shortened sequel of my life
I may pour forth my soul into thine arms
With words of love, whose moaning intercourse
Hath hitherto been stayed with wrath and hate
Of our expressless banned inflictions.
Zab. Sweet Bajazeth, I will prolong thy life,
As long as any blood or spark of breath
Can quench or cool the torments of my grief. [*Exit.*
Baj. Now, Bajazeth, abridge thy baneful days,
And beat thy brains out of thy conquered head,
Since other means are all forbidden me,
That may be ministers of my decay.
O highest lamp of ever-living Jove,
Accursèd day! infected with my griefs,
Hide now thy stainèd face in endless night,
And shut the windows of the lightsome Heavens!
Let ugly Darkness with her rusty coach,
Engirt with tempests, wrapt in pitchy clouds,
Smother the earth with never-fading mists!
And let her horses from their nostrils breathe
Rebellious winds and dreadful thunder-claps!

Digitized by Google

That in this terror Tamburlaine may live,
And my pined soul, resolved in liquid air,
May still excruciate his tormented thoughts!
Then let the stony dart of senseless cold
Pierce through the centre of my withered heart,
And make a passage for my loathèd life!

[*He brains himself against the cage.*

Re-enter ZABINA

Zab. What do mine eyes behold? my husband dead!
His skull all riven in twain! his brains dashed out —
The brains of Bajazeth, my lord and sovereign:
O Bajazeth, my husband and my lord!
O Bajazeth! O Turk! O Emperor!
Give him his liquor? Not I. Bring milk and fire, and my blood I bring him again. — Tear me in pieces — give me the sword with a ball of wildfire upon it. — Down with him! Down with him! — Go to my child! Away! Away! Away! — Ah, save that infant! save him, save him! — I, even I, speak to her. — The sun was down — streamers white, red, black — here, here, here! — Fling the meat in his face — Tamburlaine. — Tamburlaine! — Let the soldiers be buried. — Hell! Death, Tamburlaine, Hell! Make ready my coach,[n] my chair, my jewels. — I come! I come! I come!

[*She runs against the cage and brains herself.*

Enter ZENOCRATE *with* ANIPPE

Zeno. Wretched Zenocrate! that liv'st to see
Damascus' walls dyed with Egyptians' blood,
Thy father's subjects and thy countrymen;
The streets strowed with dissevered joints of men
And wounded bodies gasping yet for life:
But most accurst, to see the sun-bright troop
Of heavenly virgins and unspotted maids,

Digitized by Google

(Whose looks might make the angry god of arms
To break his sword and mildly treat of love)
On horsemen's lances to be hoisted up
And guiltlessly endure a cruel death:
For every fell and stout Tartarian steed,
That stampt on others with their thundering hoofs,
When all their riders charged their quivering spears,
Began to check the ground and rein themselves,
Gazing upon the beauty of their looks. —
Ah Tamburlaine! wert thou the cause of this
That term'st Zenocrate thy dearest love?
Whose lives were dearer to Zenocrate
Than her own life, or aught save thine own love.
But see another bloody spectacle!
Ah, wretched eyes, the enemies of my heart,
How are ye glutted with these grievous objects,
And tell my soul more tales of bleeding ruth!
See, see, Anippe, if they breath or no.

Anip. No breath, nor sense, nor motion in them both;
Ah, madam! this their slavery hath enforced,
And ruthless cruelty of Tamburlaine.

Zeno. Earth, cast up fountains from thy entrails,
And wet thy cheeks for their untimely deaths!
Shake with their weight in sign of fear and grief!
Blush, Heaven, that gave them honour at their birth
And let them die a death so barbarous!
Those that are proud of fickle empery
And place their chiefest good in earthly pomp,
Behold the Turk and his great Emperess!
Ah, Tamburlaine! my love! sweet Tamburlaine!
That fight'st for sceptres and for slippery crowns,
Behold the Turk and his great Emperess!
Thou, that in conduct of thy happy stars
Sleep'st every night with conquests on thy brows,
And yet would'st shun the wavering turns of war,
In fear and feeling of the like distress

Digitized by Google

Behold the Turk and his great Emperess!
Ah, mighty Jove and holy Mahomet,
Pardon my love! — Oh, pardon his contempt
Of earthly fortune and respect of pity,
And let not conquest, ruthlessly pursued,
Be equally against his life incensed
In this great Turk and hapless Emperess!
And pardon me that was not moved with ruth
To see them live so long in misery!
Ah, what may chance to thee, Zenocrate?

Anip. Madam, content yourself, and be resolved
Your love hath Fortune so at his command,
That she shall stay and turn her wheel no more,
As long as life maintains his mighty arm
That fights for honour to adorn your head.

Enter PHILEMUS, *a* Messenger

Zeno. What other heavy news now brings Philemus?

Phil. Madam, your father, and the Arabian king,
The first affecter of your excellence,
Comes now, as Turnus 'gainst Æneas did,
Armèd with lance into the Egyptian fields,
Ready for battle 'gainst my lord, the king.

Zeno. Now shame and duty, love and fear present
A thousand sorrows to my martyred soul.
Whom should I wish the fatal victory
When my poor pleasures are divided thus
And racked by duty from my cursèd heart?
My father and my first-betrothèd love
Must fight against my life and present love;
Wherein the change I use condemns my faith,
And makes my deeds infàmous through the world:
But as the gods, to end the Trojans' toil
Prevented Turnus of Lavinia
And fatally enriched Æneas' love,
So for a final issue to my griefs,

Digitized by Google

To pacify my country and my love
Must Tamburlaine by their resistless pow'rs
With virtue of a gentle victory
Conclude a league of honour to my hope;
Then, as the Powers divine have pre-ordained,
With happy safety of my father's life
Send like defence of fair Arabia.

[*Trumpets sound to the battle within: afterwards, the* KING *of* ARABIA *enters wounded.*

K. of Arab. What cursèd power guides the murdering hands
Of this infâmous tyrant's soldiers,
That no escape may save their enemies,
Nor fortune keep themselves from victory?
Lie down, Arabia, wounded to the death,
And let Zenocrate's fair eyes behold
That, as for her thou bear'st these wretched arms,
Even so for her thou diest in these arms,
Leaving thy blood for witness of thy love.

Zeno. Too dear a witness for such love, my lord,
Behold Zenocrate! the cursèd object,
Whose fortunes never masterèd her griefs;
Behold her wounded, in conceit, for thee,
As much as thy fair body is for me.

K. of Arab. Then shall I die with full, contented heart,
Having beheld divine Zenocrate,
Whose sight with joy would take away my life
As now it bringeth sweetness to my wound,
If I had not been wounded as I am.
Ah! that the deadly pangs I suffer now,
Would lend an hour's licence to my tongue,
To make discourse of some sweet accidents
Have chanced thy merits in this worthless bondage;
And that I might be privy to the state
Of thy deserved contentment, and thy love;
But, making now a virtue of thy sight,

Digitized by Google

To drive all sorrow from my fainting soul,
Since death denies me farther cause of joy,
Deprived of care, my heart with comfort dies,
Since thy desirèd hand shall close mine eyes. [*He dies.*

Re-enter TAMBURLAINE, *leading the* SOLDAN, TECHELLES, THERIDAMAS, USUMCASANE, *with others*

Tamb. Come, happy father of Zenocrate,
A title higher than thy Soldan's name.
Though my right hand have thus enthrallèd thee,
Thy princely daughter here shall set thee free;
She that hath calmed the fury of my sword,
Which had ere this been bathed in streams of blood
As vast and deep as Euphrates or Nile.
Zeno. O sight thrice welcome to my joyful soul,
To see the king, my father, issue safe
From dangerous battle of my conquering love!
Sold. Well met, my only dear Zenocrate,
Though with the loss of Egypt and my crown.
Tamb. 'Twas I, my lord, that got the victory,
And therefore grieve not at your overthrow,
Since I shall render all into your hands,
And add more strength to your dominions
Than ever yet confirmed the Egyptian crown.
The god of war resigns his room to me,
Meaning to make me general of the world:
Jove, viewing me in arms, looks pale and wan,
Fearing my power should pull him from his throne.
Where'er I come the Fatal Sisters sweat,
And grisly Death, by running to and fro,
To do their ceaseless homage to my sword;
And here in Afric, where it seldom rains,
Since I arrived with my triumphant host,
Have swelling clouds, drawn from wide-gasping wounds,
Been oft resolved in bloody purple showers,
A meteor that might terrify the earth,

Digitized by Google

And make it quake at very drop it drinks.
Millions of souls sit on the banks of Styx
Waiting the back return of Charon's boat;
Hell and Elysium swarm with ghosts of men,
That I have sent from sundry foughten fields,
To spread my fame through hell and up to Heaven.
And see, my lord, a sight of strange import,
Emperors and kings lie breathless at my feet:
The Turk and his great Empress, as it seems,
Left to themselves while we were at the fight,
Have desperately dispatched their slavish lives:
With them Arabia, too, hath left his life:
All sights of power to grace my victory;
And such are objects fit for Tamburlaine;
Wherein, as in a mirror, may be seen
His honour, that consists in shedding blood,
When men presume to manage arms with him.

Sold. Mighty hath God and Mahomet made thy hand,
Renownèd Tamburlaine! to whom all kings
Of force must yield their crowns and emperies;
And I am pleased with this my overthrow,
If, as beseems a person of thy state,
Thou hast with honour used Zenocrate.

Tamb. Her state and person want no pomp, you see;
And for all blot of foul inchastity
I record Heaven her heavenly self is clear:
Then let me find no farther time to grace
Her princely temples with the Persian crown.
But here these kings that on my fortunes wait,
And have been crowned for provèd worthiness,
Even by this hand that shall establish them,
Shall now, adjoining all their hands with mine,
Invest her here the Queen of Persia.
What saith the noble Soldan and Zenocrate?

Sold. I yield with thanks and protestations
Of endless honour to thee for her love.

Tamb. Then doubt I not but fair Zenocrate

Digitized by Google

Will soon consent to satisfy us both.
Zeno. Else should I much forget myself, my lord.
Ther. Then let us set the crown upon her head,
That long hath lingered for so high a seat.
Tech. My hand is ready to perform the deed;
For now her marriage-time shall work us rest.
Usum. And here's the crown, my lord; help set it on.
Tamb. Then sit thou down, divine Zenocrate;
And here we crown thee Queen of Persia,
And all the kingdoms and dominions
That late the power of Tamburlaine subdued.
As Juno, when the giants were suppressed,
That darted mountains at her brother Jove,
So looks my love, shadowing in her brows
Triumphs and trophies for my victories;
Or, as Latona's daughters, bent to arms,
Adding more courage to my conquering mind.
To gratify the sweet Zenocrate,
Egyptians, Moors, and men of Asia,
From Barbary unto the western India,
Shall pay a yearly tribute to thy sire:
And from the bounds of Afric to the banks
Of Ganges shall his mighty arm extend.
And now, my lords and loving followers,
That purchased kingdoms by your martial deeds,
Cast off your armour, put on scarlet robes,
Mount up your royal places of estate,
Environèd with troops of noblemen,
And there make laws to rule your provinces.
Hang up your weapons on Alcides' post,
For Tamburlaine takes truce with all the world.
Thy first-betrothèd love, Arabia,
Shall we with honour, as beseems, entomb
With this great Turk and his fair Emperess.
Then, after all these solemn exequies,
We will our rites of marriage solemnize.

Digitized by Google

TAMBURLAINE THE GREAT

Part the Second

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

TAMBURLAINE THE GREAT

Part the Second

THE PROLOGUE

The general welcomes Tamburlaine received,
When he arrivèd last upon the stage,
Hath made our poet pen his Second Part,
Where death cuts off the progress of his pomp,
And murderous fates throw all his triumphs down
But what became of fair Zenocrate,
And with how many cities' sacrifice
He celebrated her sad funeral,
Himself in presence shall unfold at large.

Digitized by Google

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ

TAMBURLAINE, King of Persia.
CALYPHAS, AMYRAS, CELEBINUS, } His sons.
TECHELLES, King of Fez.
THERIDAMAS, King of Argier.
USUMCASANE, King of Morocco.
ORCANES, King of Natolia.
KING OF JERUSALEM.
KING OF TREBIZOND.
KING OF SORIA.[a]
KING OF AMASIA.
GAZELLUS, Viceroy of Byron.
URIBASSA.
SIGISMUND, King of Hungary.
FREDERICK, BALDWIN, } Lords of Buda and Bohemia.
CALLAPINE, Son of BAJAZETH.
ALMEDA, his Keeper.
PERDICAS, Servant to CALYPHAS.
GOVERNOR OF BABYLON.
MAXIMUS.
CAPTAIN OF BALSERA.
His Son.
Physicians.
Another Captain.
Lords, Citizens, Soldiers, &c.

ZENOCRATE, Wife of TAMBURLAINE.
OLYMPIA, Wife of the Captain of Balsera.
Turkish Concubines.

Digitized by Google

ACT THE FIRST

SCENE I

Enter ORCANES, *King of Natolia*, GAZELLUS, *Viceroy of Byron*, URIBASSA, *and their* Train, *with drums and trumpets*

Orc. Egregious viceroys of these eastern parts,
Placed by the issue of great Bajazeth,
And sacred lord, the mighty Callapine,
Who lives in Egypt, prisoner to that slave
Which kept his father in an iron cage;
Now have we marched from fair Natolia
Two hundred leagues, and on Danubius' banks
Our warlike host, in complete armour, rest,
Where Sigismund, the king of Hungary,
Should meet our person to conclude a truce.
What! Shall we parley with the Christian?
Or cross the stream, and meet him in the field?
Gaz. King of Natolia, let us treat of peace;
We are all glutted with the Christians' blood,
And have a greater foe to fight against —
Proud Tamburlaine, that, now in Asia,
Near Guyron's head doth set his conq'ring feet,
And means to fire Turkey as he goes.
'Gainst him, my lord, you must address your power.
Uri. Besides, King Sigismund hath brought from Christendom,
More than his camp of stout Hungarians,
Sclavonians, Almain rutters, Muffes, and Danes,
That with the halberd, lance, and murdering ax,
Will hazard that we might with surety hold.

Digitized by Google

Orc. Though from the shortest northern parallel,
Vast Grantland, compassed with the Frozen Sea,
(Inhabited with tall and sturdy men,
Giants as big[n] as hugy Polypheme,)
Millions of soldiers cut the arctic line,
Bringing the strength of Europe to these arms,
Our Turkey blades shall glide through all their throats,
And make this champion mead a bloody fen.
Danubius' stream, that runs to Trebizon,
Shall carry, wrapt within his scarlet waves,
As martial presents to our friends at home,
The slaughtered bodies of these Christians.
The Terrene Main, wherein Danubius falls,[n]
Shall, by this battle, be the Bloody Sea.
The wandering sailors of proud Italy
Shall meet those Christians, fleeting with the tide,
Beating in heaps against their argosies,
And make fair Europe, mounted on her bull,
Trapped with the wealth and riches of the world,
Alight, and wear a woeful mourning weed.

Gaz. Yet, stout Orcanes, prorex of the world,
Since Tamburlaine hath mustered all his men,
Marching from Cairo northward with his camp,
To Alexandria, and the frontier towns,
Meaning to make a conquest of our land,
'Tis requisite to parley for a peace
With Sigismund the king of Hungary,
And save our forces for the hot assaults
Proud Tamburlaine intends Natolia.

Orc. Viceroy of Byron, wisely hast thou said.
My realm, the centre of our empery,
Once lost, all Turkey would be overthrown,
And for that cause the Christians shall have peace.
Sclavonians, Almain rutters, Muffes, and Danes,
Fear not Orcanes, but great Tamburlaine;
Nor he, but fortune, that hath made him great.
We have revolted Grecians, Albanese,

Digitized by Google

Sicilians, Jews, Arabians, Turks, and Moors,
Natolians, Syrians, black Egyptians,
Illyrians, Thracians, and Bithynians,
Enough to swallow forceless Sigismund,
Yet scarce enough to encounter Tamburlaine.
He brings a world of people to the field,
From Scythia to the oriental plage
Of India, where raging Lantchidol
Beats on the regions with his boisterous blows,
That never seaman yet discoverèd.
All Asia is in arms with Tamburlaine,
Even from the midst of fiery Cancer's tropic,
To Amazonia under Capricorn;
And thence as far as Archipelago,
All Afric is in arms with Tamburlaine;
Therefore, viceroy, the Christians must have peace.

Enter SIGISMUND, FREDERICK, BALDWIN, *and their* Train, *with drums and trumpets*

Sig. Orcanes (as our legates promised thee),
We, with our peers, have crossed Danubius' stream,
To treat of friendly peace or deadly war.
Take which thou wilt, for as the Romans used,
I here present thee with a naked sword;
Wilt thou have war, then shake this blade at me;
If peace, restore it to my hands again,
And I will sheathe it, to confirm the same.

Orc. Stay, Sigismund! forget'st thou I am he
That with the cannon shook Vienna walls,
And made it dance upon the continent,
As when the massy substance of the earth
Quiver[s] about the axle-tree of Heaven?
Forget'st thou that I sent a shower of darts,
Mingled with powdered shot and feathered steel,
So thick upon the blink-eyed burghers' heads,
That thou thyself, then County Palatine,
The King of Boheme, and the Austric Duke,

Digitized by Google

Sent heralds out, which basely on their knees
In all your names desired a truce of me?
Forget'st thou, that to have me raise my siege,
Wagons of gold were set before my tents,
Stampt with the princely fowl, that in her wings,
Carries the fearful thunderbolts of Jove?
How canst thou think of this, and offer war?
Sig. Vienna was besieged, and I was there,
Then County Palatine, but now a king,
And what we did was in extremity.
But now, Orcanes, view my royal host,
That hides these plains, and seems as vast and wide,
As doth the desert of Arabia
To those that stand on Bagdeth's lofty tower;
Or as the ocean, to the traveller
That rests upon the snowy Apennines;
And tell me whether I should stoop so low,
Or treat of peace with the Natolian king.
Gaz. Kings of Natolia and of Hungary,
We came from Turkey to confirm a league,
And not to dare each other to the field.
A friendly parley might become you both.
Fred. And we from Europe, to the same intent,
Which if your general refuse or scorn,
Our tents are pitched, our men stand in array,
Ready to charge you ere you stir your feet.
Orc. So prest are we; but yet, if Sigismund
Speak as a friend, and stand not upon terms,
Here is his sword — let peace be ratified
On these conditions, specified before,
Drawn with advice of our ambassadors.
Sig. Then here I sheathe it, and give thee my hand,
Never to draw it out, or manage arms
Against thyself or thy confederates,
But whilst I live will be at truce with thee.
Orc. But, Sigismund, confirm it with an oath,
And swear in sight of Heaven and by thy Christ.

Digitized by Google

Sig. By him that made the world and saved my soul,
The Son of God and issue of a Maid,
Sweet Jesus Christ, I solemnly protest
And vow to keep this peace inviolable.
Orc. By sacred Mahomet, the friend of God,
Whose holy Alcoran remains with us,
Whose glorious body, when he left the world,
Closed in a coffin mounted up the air,
And hung on stately Mecca's temple roof,
I swear to keep this truce inviolable;
Of whose conditions and our solemn oaths,
Signed with our hands, each shall retain a scroll
As memorable witness of our league.
Now, Sigismund, if any Christian king
Encroach upon the confines of thy realm,
Send word, Orcanes of Natolia
Confirmed this league beyond Danubius' stream,
And they will, trembling, sound a quick retreat;
So am I feared among all nations.
Sig. If any heathen potentate or king
Invade Natolia, Sigismund will send
A hundred thousand horse trained to the war,
And backed by stout lanciers of Germany,
The strength and sinews of the Imperial seat.
Orc. I thank thee, Sigismund; but, when I war,
All Asia Minor, Africa, and Greece,
Follow my standard and my thundering drums.
Come, let us go and banquet in our tents;
I will dispatch chief of my army hence
To fair Natolia and to Trebizon,
To stay my coming 'gainst proud Tamburlaine.
Friend Sigismund, and peers of Hungary,
Come, banquet and carouse with us a while,
And then depart we to our territories. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE II

Enter CALLAPINE *with* ALMEDA, *his Keeper*

Call. Sweet Almeda, pity the ruthful plight
Of Callapine, the son of Bajazeth,
Born to be monarch of the western world,
Yet here detained by cruel Tamburlaine.
Alm. My lord, I pity it, and with all my heart
Wish you release; but he whose wrath is death,
My sovereign lord, renownèd Tamburlaine,
Forbids you farther liberty than this.
Call. Ah, were I now but half so eloquent
To paint in words what I'll perform in deeds,
I know thou would'st depart from hence with me.
Alm. Not for all Afric: therefore move me not.
Call. Yet hear me speak, my gentle Almeda.
Alm. No speech to that end, by your favour, sir.
Call. By Cairo runs ——
Alm. No talk of running, I tell you, sir.
Call. A little farther, gentle Almeda.
Alm. Well, sir, what of this?
Call. By Cairo runs to Alexandria bay
Darote's streams, wherein at anchor lies
A Turkish galley of my royal fleet,
Waiting my coming to the river side,
Hoping by some means I shall be released,
Which, when I come aboard, will hoist up sail,
And soon put forth into the Terrene Sea,
Where, 'twixt the isles of Cyprus and of Crete,
We quickly may in Turkish seas arrive.
Then shalt thou see a hundred kings and more.
Upon their knees, all bid me welcome home,
Amongst so many crowns of burnished gold,
Choose which thou wilt, all are at thy command;
A thousand galleys, manned with Christian slaves,

Digitized by Google

I freely give thee, which shall cut the Straits,
And bring armados from the coasts of Spain
Fraughted with gold of rich America;
The Grecian virgins shall attend on thee,
Skilful in music and in amorous lays,
As fair as was Pygmalion's ivory girl
Or lovely Iö metamorphosèd.
With naked negroes shall thy coach be drawn,
And as thou rid'st in triumph through the streets
The pavement underneath thy chariot wheels
With Turkey carpets shall be coverèd,
And cloth of Arras hung about the walls,
Fit objects for thy princely eye to pierce.
A hundred bassoes, clothed in crimson silk,
Shall ride before thee on Barbarian steeds;
And when thou goest, a golden canopy
Enchasèd with precious stones, which shine as bright
As that fair veil that covers all the world,
When Phœbus, leaping from the hemisphere,
Descendeth downward to the Antipodes,
And more than this — for all I cannot tell.

Alm. How far hence lies the galley, say you?

Call. Sweet Almeda, scarce half a league from hence.

Alm. But need we not be spied going aboard?

Call. Betwixt the hollow hanging of a hill,
And crookèd bending of a craggy rock,
The sails wrapt up, the mast and tacklings down,
She lies so close that none can find her out.

Alm. I like that well: but tell me, my lord, if I should let you go, would you be as good as your word? shall I be made a king for my labour?

Call. As I am Callapine the emperor,
And by the hand of Mahomet I swear
Thou shalt be crowned a king, and be my mate.

Alm. Then here I swear, as I am Almeda
Your keeper under Tamburlaine the Great,
(For that's the style and title I have yet,)

Digitized by Google

Although he sent a thousand armèd men
To intercept this haughty enterprise,
Yet would I venture to conduct your grace,
And die before I brought you back again.
Call. Thanks, gentle Almeda; then let us haste,
Lest time be past, and lingering let us both.
Alm. When you will, my lord; I am ready.
Call. Even straight; and farewell, cursèd Tamburlaine.
Now go I to revenge my father's death [*Exeunt.*

SCENE III

Enter TAMBURLAINE, ZENOCRATE, *and their three* Sons, CALYPHAS, AMYRAS, *and* CELEBINUS, *with drums and trumpets*

Tamb. Now, bright Zenocrate, the world's fair eye,
Whose beams illuminate the lamps of Heaven,
Whose cheerful looks do clear the cloudy air,
And clothe it in a crystal livery;
Now rest thee here on fair Larissa plains,
Where Egypt and the Turkish empire part
Between thy sons, that shall be emperors,
And every one commander of a world.
Zeno. Sweet Tamburlaine, when wilt thou leave these arms,
And save thy sacred person free from scathe,
And dangerous chances of the wrathful war?
Tamb. When Heaven shall cease to move on both the poles,
And when the ground, whereon my soldiers march,
Shall rise aloft and touch the hornèd moon,
And not before, my sweet Zenocrate.
Sit up, and rest thee like a lovely queen;
So, now she sits in pomp and majesty,
When these, my sons, more precious in mine eyes,

Digitized by Google

Than all the wealthy kingdoms I subdued,
Placed by her side, look on their mother's face:
But yet methinks their looks are amorous,
Not martial as the sons of Tamburlaine:
Water and air, being symbolized in one,
Argue their want of courage and of wit;
Their hair as white as milk and soft as down,
(Which should be like the quills of porcupines
As black as jet and hard as iron or steel)
Bewrays they are too dainty for the wars;
Their fingers made to quaver on a lute,
Their arms to hang about a lady's neck,
Their legs to dance and caper in the air,[n]
Would make me think them bastards not my sons,
But that I know they issued from thy womb
That never looked on man but Tamburlaine.

Zeno. My gracious lord, they have their mother's looks,
But when they list their conquering father's heart.
This lovely boy, the youngest of the three,
Not long ago bestrid a Scythian steed,
Trotting the ring, and tilting at a glove,
Which when he tainted with his slender rod,
He reined him straight and made him so curvet,
As I cried out for fear he should have fallen.

Tamb. Well done, my boy, thou shalt have shield and lance,
Armour of proof, horse, helm, and curtal-ax,
And I will teach thee how to charge thy foe,
And harmless run among the deadly pikes.
If thou wilt love the wars and follow me,
Thou shalt be made a king and reign with me,
Keeping in iron cages emperors.
If thou exceed thy elder brothers' worth
And shine in complete virtue more than they,
Thou shalt be king before them, and thy seed
Shall issue crownèd from their mother's womb.

Digitized by Google

Cel. Yes, father: you shall see me, if I live,
Have under me as many kings as you,
And march with such a multitude of men,
As all the world shall tremble at their view.
Tamb. These words assure me, boy, thou art my son.
When I am old and cannot manage arms,
Be thou the scourge and terror of the world.
Amy. Why may not I, my lord, as well as he,
Be termed the scourge and terror of the world?
Tamb. Be all a scourge and terror to the world,
Or else you are not sons of Tamburlaine.
Cal. But while my brothers follow arms, my lord,
Let me accompany my gracious mother;
They are enough to conquer all the world,
And you have won enough for me to keep.
Tamb. Bastardly boy, sprung from some coward's loins,
And not the issue of great Tamburlaine;
Of all the provinces I have subdued,
Thou shalt not have a foot unless thou bear
A mind courageous and invincible:
For he shall wear the crown of Persia
Whose head hath deepest scars, whose breast most wounds,
Which being wroth sends lightning from his eyes,
And in the furrows of his frowning brows
Harbours revenge, war, death, and cruelty;
For in a field, whose superficies
Is covered with a liquid purple veil
And sprinkled with the brains of slaughtered men,
My royal chair of state shall be advanced;
And he that means to place himself therein,
Must armèd wade up to the chin in blood.
Zeno. My lord, such speeches to our princely sons
Dismay their minds before they come to prove
The wounding troubles angry war affords.
Cel. No, madam, these are speeches fit for us,

Digitized by Google

For if his chair were in a sea of blood
I would prepare a ship and sail to it,
Ere I would lose the title of a king.
Amy. And I would strive to swim through pools of blood,
Or make a bridge of murdered carcasses,
Whose arches should be framed with bones of Turks,
Ere I would lose the title of a king.
Tamb. Well, lovely boys, ye shall be emperors both,
Stretching your conquering arms from East to West;
And, sirrah, if you mean to wear a crown,
When we shall meet the Turkish deputy
And all his viceroys, snatch it from his head,
And cleave his pericranium with thy sword.
Cal. If any man will hold him, I will strike
And cleave him to the channel with my sword.
Tamb. Hold him, and cleave him too, or I'll cleave thee,
For we will march against them presently.
Theridamas, Techelles, and Casane
Promised to meet me on Larissa plains
With hosts apiece against this Turkish crew;
For I have sworn by sacred Mahomet
To make it parcel of my empery;
The trumpets sound, Zenocrate; they come.

Enter THERIDAMAS *and his* Train, *with drums and trumpets*

Tamb. Welcome, Theridamas, King of Argier.
Ther. My lord, the great and mighty Tamburlaine,
Arch-monarch of the world, I offer here
My crown, myself, and all the power I have,
In all affection at thy kingly feet.
Tamb. Thanks, good Theridamas.
Ther. Under my colours march ten thousand Greeks;
And of Argier's and Afric's frontier towns

Digitized by Google

Twice twenty thousand valiant men-at-arms,
All which have sworn to sack Natolia.
Five hundred brigandines are under sail,
Meet for your service on the sea, my lord,
That launching from Argier to Tripoli,
Will quickly ride before Natolia,
And batter down the castles on the shore.

Tamb. Well said, Argier; receive thy crown again.

Enter TECHELLES *and* USUMCASANE *together*

Tamb. Kings of Moroccus and of Fez, welcome.

Usum. Magnificent and peerless Tamburlaine!
I and my neighbour King of Fez have brought
To aid thee in this Turkish expedition,
A hundred thousand expert soldiers:
From Azamor to Tunis near the sea
Is Barbary unpeopled for thy sake,
And all the men in armour under me,
Which with my crown I gladly offer thee.

Tamb. Thanks, King of Moroccus, take your crown again.

Tech. And, mighty Tamburlaine, our earthly god,
Whose looks make this inferior world to quake,
I here present thee with the crown of Fez,
And with an host of Moors trained to the war,
Whose coal-black faces make their foes retire,
And quake for fear, as if infernal Jove
Meaning to aid thee in these Turkish arms,
Should pierce the black circumference of hell
With ugly Furies bearing fiery flags,
And millions of his strong tormenting spirits.
From strong Tesella unto Biledull
All Barbary is unpeopled for thy sake.

Tamb. Thanks, King of Fez; take here thy crown again.
Your presence, loving friends, and fellow kings,
Makes me to surfeit in conceiving joy.

Digitized by Google

If all the crystal gates of Jove's high court
Were opened wide, and I might enter in
To see the state and majesty of Heaven,
It could not more delight me than your sight.
Now will we banquet on these plains awhile,
And after march to Turkey with our camp,
In number more than are the drops that fall,
When Boreas rents a thousand swelling clouds;
And proud Orcanes of Natolia
With all his viceroys shall be so afraid,
That though the stones, as at Deucalion's flood,
Were turned to men, he should be overcome.
Such lavish will I make of Turkish blood,
That Jove shall send his wingèd messenger
To bid me sheathe my sword and leave the field;
The sun unable to sustain the sight,
Shall hide his head in Thetis' watery lap,
And leave his steeds to fair Boötes' charge;
For half the world shall perish in this fight.
But now, my friends, let me examine ye;
How have ye spent your absent time from me?

Usum. My lord, our men of Barbary have marched
Four hundred miles with armour on their backs,
And lain in leaguer fifteen months and more;
For, since we left you at the Soldan's court,
We have subdued the southern Guallatia,
And all the land unto the coast of Spain;
We kept the narrow Strait of Jubaltèr,
And made Canaria call us kings and lords;
Yet never did they recreate themselves,
Or cease one day from war and hot alarms,
And therefore let them rest awhile, my lord.

Tamb. They shall, Casane, and 'tis time i' faith.

Tech. And I have marched along the river Nile
To Machda, where the mighty Christian priest,
Called John the Great, sits in a milk-white robe,
Whose triple mitre I did take by force,

Digitized by Google

And made him swear obedience to my crown,
From thence unto Cazates did I march,
Where Amazonians met me in the field,
With whom, being women, I vouchsafed a league,
And with my power did march to Zanzibar,
The eastern part of Afric, where I viewed
The Ethiopian sea, rivers, and lakes,
But neither man nor child in all the land;
Therefore I took my course to Manico,
Where unresisted, I removed my camp;
And by the coast of Byather, at last
I came to Cubar, where the negroes dwell,
And conquering that, made haste to Nubia.
There, having sacked Borno the kingly seat,
I took the king and led him bound in chains
Unto Damasco, where I stayed before.

Tamb. Well done, Techelles. What saith Theridamas?

Ther. I left the confines and the bounds of Afric,
And [thence I] made a voyage into Europe,[n]
Where by the River Tyras I subdued
Stoka, Podolia, and Codemia;
Thence crossed the sea and came to Oblia
And Nigra Sylva, where the devils dance,
Which in despite of them, I set on fire.
From thence I crossed the gulf called by the name
Mare Majore of the inhabitants.
Yet shall my soldiers make no period,
Until Natolia kneel before your feet.

Tamb. Then will we triumph, banquet and carouse;
Cooks shall have pensions to provide us cates,
And glut us with the dainties of the world;
Lachryma Christi and Calabrian wines
Shall common soldiers drink in quaffing bowls,
Ay, liquid gold (when we have conquered him)
Mingled with coral and with orient pearl.
Come, let us banquet and carouse the whiles. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

ACT THE SECOND

SCENE I

Enter SIGISMUND, FREDERICK, BALDWIN, *and their* Train

Sig. Now say, my lords of Buda and Bohemia,
What motion is it that inflames your thoughts,
And stirs your valours to such sudden arms?
Fred. Your majesty remembers, I am sure,
What cruel slaughter of our Christian bloods
These heathenish Turks and Pagans lately made,
Betwixt the city Zula and Danubius;
How through the midst of Varna and Bulgaria,
And almost to the very walls of Rome,
They have, not long since, massacred our camp.
It resteth now, then, that your majesty
Take all advantages of time and power,
And work revenge upon these infidels.
Your highness knows, for Tamburlaine's repair,
That strikes a terror to all Turkish hearts,
Natolia hath dismissed the greatest part
Of all his army, pitched against our power,
Betwixt Cutheia and Orminius' Mount,
And sent them marching up to Belgasar,
Acantha, Antioch, and Cæsarea,
To aid the Kings of Soria, and Jerusalem.
Now then, my lord, advantage take thereof,
And issue suddenly upon the rest;
That in the fortune of their overthrow,
We may discourage all the pagan troop,
That dare attempt to war with Christians.

Digitized by Google

Sig. But calls not then your grace to memory
The league we lately made with King Orcanes,
Confirmed by oath and articles of peace,
And calling Christ for record of our truths?
This should be treachery and violence
Against the grace of our profession.
Bald. No whit, my lord, for with such infidels,
In whom no faith nor true religion rests,
We are not bound to those accomplishments
The holy laws of Christendom enjoin;
But as the faith, which they profanely plight,
Is not by necessary policy
To be esteemed assurance for ourselves,
So that we vow to them should not infringe
Our liberty of arms or victory.
Sig. Though I confess the oaths they undertake
Breed little strength to our security,
Yet those infirmities that thus defame
Their faiths, their honours, and their religion,
Should not give us presumption to the like.
Our faiths are sound, and must be consummate,
Religious, righteous, and inviolate.
Fred. Assure your grace 'tis superstition
To stand so strictly on dispensive faith;
And should we lose the opportunity
That God hath given to venge our Christians' death,
And scourge their foul blasphèmous Paganism,
As fell to Saul, to Balaam, and the rest,
That would not kill and curse at God's command,
So surely will the vengeance of the Highest,
And jealous anger of His fearful arm,
Be poured with rigour on our sinful heads,
If we neglect this offered victory.
Sig. Then arm, my lords, and issue suddenly,
Giving commandment to our general host,
With expedition to assail the Pagan,
And take the victory our God hath given. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE II

Enter ORCANES, GAZELLUS, *and* URIBASSA, *with their* Trains

Orc. Gazellus, Uribassa, and the rest,
Now will we march from proud Orminius' Mount,
To fair Natolia, where our neighbour kings
Expect our power and our royal presence,
To encounter with the cruel Tamburlaine,
That nigh Larissa sways a mighty host,
And with the thunder of his martial tools
Makes earthquakes in the hearts of men and Heaven.
Gaz. And now come we to make his sinews shake,
With greater power than erst his pride hath felt.
An hundred kings, by scores, will bid him arms,
And hundred thousands subjects to each score,
Which, if a shower of wounding thunderbolts
Should break out of the bowels of the clouds,
And fall as thick as hail upon our heads,
In partial aid of that proud Scythian,
Yet should our courages and steelèd crests,
And numbers, more than infinite, of men,
Be able to withstand and conquer him.
Uri. Methinks I see how glad the Christian king
Is made, for joy of your admitted truce,
That could not but before be terrified
With unacquainted power of our host.

Enter a Messenger

Mess. Arm, dread sovereign, and my noble lords!
The treacherous army of the Christians,
Taking advantage of your slender power,
Comes marching on us, and determines straight
To bid us battle for our dearest lives

Digitized by Google

Orc. Traitors! villains! damnèd Christians!
Have I not here the articles of peace,
And solemn covenants we have both confirmed,
He by his Christ, and I by Mahomet?
Gaz. Hell and confusion light upon their heads,
That with such treason seek our overthrow,
And care so little for their prophet, Christ!
Orc. Can there be such deceit in Christians,
Or treason in the fleshly heart of man,
Whose shape is figure of the highest God!
Then, if there be a Christ, as Christians say,
But in their deeds deny him for their Christ,
If he be son to ever-living Jove,
And hath the power of his outstretchèd arm;
If he be jealous of his name and honour,
As is our holy prophet, Mahomet —
Take here these papers as our sacrifice
And witness of thy servant's perjury.
[*He tears to pieces the articles of peace.*
Open, thou shining veil of Cynthia,
And make a passage from the empyreal Heaven,
That he that sits on high and never sleeps,
Nor in one place is circumscriptible,
But everywhere fills every continent
With strange infusion of his sacred vigour,
May in his endless power and purity,
Behold and venge this traitor's perjury!
Thou Christ, that art esteemed omnipotent,
If thou wilt prove thyself a perfect God,
Worthy the worship of all faithful hearts,
Be now revenged upon this traitor's soul,
And make the power I have left behind,
(Too little to defend our guiltless lives,)
Sufficient to discomfort and confound
The trustless force of those false Christians.
To arms, my lords! On Christ still let us cry!
If there be Christ, we shall have victory.

Digitized by Google

SCENE III

Alarms of battle within. — Enter SIGISMUND, *wounded*

Sig. Discomfited is all the Christian host,
And God hath thundered vengeance from on high,
For my accursed and hateful perjury.
O just and dreadful punisher of sin,
Let the dishonour of the pains I feel,
In this my mortal well-deservèd wound,
End all my penance in my sudden death!
And let this death, wherein to sin I die,
Conceive a second life in endless mercy! [*He dies.*

Enter ORCANES, GAZELLUS, URIBASSA, *and others*

Orc. Now lie the Christians bathing in their bloods,
And Christ or Mahomet hath been my friend.
Gaz. See here the perjured traitor Hungary,
Bloody and breathless for his villainy.
Orc. Now shall his barbarous body be a prey
To beasts and fowls, and all the winds shall breathe
Through shady leaves of every senseless tree
Murmurs and hisses for his heinous sin.
Now scalds his soul in the Tartarian streams,
And feeds upon the baneful tree of hell,
That Zoacum, that fruit of bitterness,
That in the midst of fire is ingraffed,
Yet flourishes as Flora in her pride,
With apples like the heads of damnèd fiends.
The devils there, in chains of quenchless flame,
Shall lead his soul through Orcus' burning gulf,
From pain to pain, whose change shall never end.
What say'st thou yet, Gazellus, to his foil
Which we referred to justice of his Christ,
And to his power, which here appears as full

Digitized by Google

As rays of Cynthia to the clearest sight?
Gaz. 'Tis but the fortune of the wars, my lord,
Whose power is often proved a miracle.
Orc. Yet in my thoughts shall Christ be honourèd,
Not doing Mahomet an injury,
Whose power had share in this our victory;
And since this miscreant hath disgraced his faith,
And died a traitor both to Heaven and earth,
We will both watch and ward shall keep his trunk
Amidst these plains for fowls to prey upon.
Go, Uribassa, give it straight in charge.
Uri. I will, my lord. [*Exit.*
Orc. And now, Gazellus, let us haste and meet
Our army, and our brother[s] of Jerusalem,
Of Soria, Trebizond, and Amasia,
And happily, with full Natolian bowls
Or Greekish wine, now let us celebrate
Our happy conquest and his angry fate. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV

ZENOCRATE *is discovered lying in her bed of state, with* TAMBURLAINE *sitting by her. About her bed are three* PHYSICIANS *tempering potions. Around are* THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, USUMCASANE, *and her three* Sons

Tamb. Black is the beauty of the brightest day;
The golden ball of Heaven's eternal fire,
That danced with glory on the silver waves,
Now wants the fuel that inflamed his beams;
And all with faintness, and for foul disgrace,
He binds his temples with a frowning cloud,
Ready to darken earth with endless night.
Zenocrate, that gave him light and life,
Whose eyes shot fire from their ivory bowers,
And tempered every soul with lively heat,

Digitized by Google

Now by the malice of the angry skies,
Whose jealousy admits no second mate,
Draws in the comfort of her latest breath,
All dazzled with the hellish mists of death.
Now walk the angels on the walls of Heaven,
As sentinels to warn the immortal souls
To entertain divine Zenocrate.
Apollo, Cynthia, and the ceaseless lamps
That gently looked upon this loathsome earth,
Shine downward now no more, but deck the Heavens,
To entertain divine Zenocrate.
The crystal springs, whose taste illuminates
Refinèd eyes with an eternal sight,
Like trièd silver, run through Paradise,
To entertain divine Zenocrate.
The cherubins and holy seraphins,
That sing and play before the King of kings,
Use all their voices and their instruments
To entertain divine Zenocrate.
And in this sweet and curious harmony,
The God that tunes this music to our souls,
Holds out his hand in highest majesty
To entertain divine Zenocrate.
Then let some holy trance convey my thoughts
Up to the palace of th' empyreal Heaven,
That this my life may be as short to me
As are the days of sweet Zenocrate. —
Physicians, will no physic do her good?

Phys. My lord, your majesty shall soon perceive:
And if [n] she pass this fit, the worst is past.

Tamb. Tell me, how fares my fair Zenocrate?

Zeno. I fare, my lord, as other empresses,
That, when this frail and transitory flesh
Hath sucked the measure of that vital air
That feeds the body with his dated health,
Wane with enforced and necessary change.

Tamb. May never such a change transform my love,

Digitized by Google

In whose sweet being I repose my life,
Whose heavenly presence, beautified with health,
Gives light to Phœbus and the fixèd stars!
Whose absence makes the sun and moon as dark
As when, opposed in one diameter,
Their spheres are mounted on the serpent's head,
Or else descended to his winding train.
Live still, my love, and so conserve my life,
Or, dying, be the author of my death!

Zeno. Live still, my lord! Oh, let my sovereign live
And sooner let the fiery element
Dissolve and make your kingdom in the sky,
Than this base earth should shroud your majesty:
For should I but suspect your death by mine,
The comfort of my future happiness,
And hope to meet your highness in the Heavens,
Turned to despair, would break my wretched breast,
And fury would confound my present rest.
But let me die, my love; yet let me die;
With love and patience let your true love die!
Your grief and fury hurts my second life. —
Yet let me kiss my lord before I die,
And let me die with kissing of my lord.
But since my life is lengthened yet a while,
Let me take leave of these my loving sons,
And of my lords, whose true nobility
Have merited my latest memory.
Sweet sons, farewell! In death resemble me,
And in your lives your father's excellence.
Some music, and my fit will cease, my lord.

[*They call for music.*

Tamb. Proud fury, and intolerable fit,
That dares torment the body of my love,
And scourge the scourge of the immortal God:
Now are those spheres, where Cupid used to sit,
Wounding the world with wonder and with love,
Sadly supplied with pale and ghastly death,

Digitized by Google

Whose darts do pierce the centre of my soul.
Her sacred beauty hath enchanted Heaven;
And had she lived before the siege of Troy,
Helen (whose beauty summoned Greece to arms,
And drew a thousand ships to Tenedos)[n]
Had not been named in Homer's Iliads;
Her name had been in every line he wrote.
Or had those wanton poets, for whose birth
Old Rome was proud, but gazed a while on her,
Nor Lesbia nor Corinna had been named;
Zenocrate had been the argument
Of every epigram or elegy.

[*The music sounds.* — ZENOCRATE *dies.*

What! is she dead? Techelles, draw thy sword
And wound the earth, that it may cleave in twain,
And we descend into the infernal vaults,
To hale the Fatal Sisters by the hair,
And throw them in the triple moat of hell,
For taking hence my fair Zenocrate.
Casane and Theridamas, to arms!
Raise cavalieros higher than the clouds,
And with the cannon break the frame of Heaven;
Batter the shining palace of the sun,
And shiver all the starry firmament,
For amorous Jove hath snatched my love from hence,
Meaning to make her stately queen of Heaven.
What God soever holds thee in his arms,
Giving thee nectar and ambrosia,
Behold me here, divine Zenocrate,
Raving, impatient, desperate, and mad,
Breaking my steelèd lance, with which I burst
The rusty beams of Janus' temple doors,
Letting out Death and tyrannizing War,
To march with me under this bloody flag!
And if thou pitiest Tamburlaine the Great,
Come down from Heaven, and live with me again!

Ther. Ah, good my lord, be patient; she is dead,

Digitized by Google

And all this raging cannot make her live.
If words might serve, our voice hath rent the air;
If tears, our eyes have watered all the earth;
If grief, our murdered hearts have strained forth blood;
Nothing prevails, for she is dead, my lord.

Tamb. "For she is dead!" Thy words do pierce my soul!
Ah, sweet Theridamas! say so no more;
Though she be dead, yet let me think she lives,
And feed my mind that dies for want of her.
Where'er her soul be, thou [*To the body*] shalt stay with me,
Embalmed with cassia, ambergris, and myrrh,
Not lapt in lead, but in a sheet of gold,
And till I die thou shalt not be interred.
Then in as rich a tomb as Mausolus'
We both will rest and have one epitaph
Writ in as many several languages
As I have conquered kingdoms with my sword.
This cursèd town will I consume with fire,
Because this place bereaved me of my love:
The houses, burnt, will look as if they mourned;
And here will I set up her statua,
And march about it with my mourning camp
Drooping and pining for Zenocrate.

[*The scene closes.*

Digitized by Google

ACT THE THIRD

SCENE I

Enter the KINGS *of* TREBIZOND *and* SORIA, *one bearing a sword and the other a sceptre; next* ORCANES *King of Natolia and the* KING *of* JERUSALEM *with the imperial crown; after them enters* CALLAPINE, *and after him other* LORDS *and* ALMEDA. ORCANES *and the* KING *of* JERUSALEM *crown* CALLAPINE, *and the others give him the sceptre*

Orc. Callapinus Cyricelibes, otherwise Cybelius, son and successive heir to the late mighty emperor, Bajazeth, by the aid of God and his friend Mahomet, Emperor of Natolia, Jerusalem, Trebizond, Soria, Amasia, Thracia, Illyria, Carmania, and all the hundred and thirty kingdoms late contributory to his mighty father. Long live Callapinus, Emperor of Turkey!

Call. Thrice worthy kings of Natolia, and the rest,
I will requite your royal gratitudes
With all the benefits my empire yields;
And were the sinews of the imperial seat
So knit and strengthened as when Bajazeth
My royal lord and father filled the throne,
Whose cursèd fate hath so dismembered it,
Then should you see this thief of Scythia,
This proud, usurping King of Persia,
Do us such honour and supremacy,
Bearing the vengeance of our father's wrongs,
As all the world should blot his dignities
Out of the book of base-born infamies.
And now I doubt not but your royal cares

Digitized by Google

Have so provided for this cursèd foe,
That, since the heir of mighty Bajazeth,
(An emperor so honoured for his virtues,)
Revives the spirits of all true Turkish hearts,
In grievous memory of his father's shame,
We shall not need to nourish any doubt,
But that proud fortune, who hath followed long
The martial sword of mighty Tamburlaine,
Will now retain her old inconstancy,
And raise our honours to as high a pitch,
In this our strong and fortunate encounter;
For so hath heaven provided my escape,
From all the cruelty my soul sustained,
By this my friendly keeper's happy means,
That Jove, surcharged with pity of our wrongs,
Will pour it down in showers on our heads,
Scourging the pride of cursèd Tamburlaine.

Orc. I have a hundred thousand men in arms;
Some, that in conquest of the perjured Christian,
Being a handful to a mighty host,
Think them in number yet sufficient
To drink the river Nile or Euphrates,
And for their power enow to win the world.

K. of Jer. And I as many from Jerusalem,
Judæa, Gaza, and Scalonia's bounds,
That on Mount Sinai with their ensigns spread,
Look like the parti-coloured clouds of Heaven
That show fair weather to the neighbour morn.

K. of Treb. And I as many bring from Trebizond,
Chio, Famastro, and Amasia,
All bordering on the Mare Major sea,
Riso, Sancina, and the bordering towns
That touch the end of famous Euphrates,
Whose courages are kindled with the flames,
The cursed Scythian sets on all their towns,
And vow to burn the villain's cruel heart.

K. of Sor. From Soria with seventy thousand strong

Digitized by Google

Ta'en from Aleppo, Soldino, Tripoli,
And so on to my city of Damasco,
I march to meet and aid my neighbour kings;
All which will join against this Tamburlaine,
And bring him captive to your highness' feet.
Orc. Our battle then in martial manner pitched,
According to our ancient use, shall bear
The figure of the semicircled moon,
Whose horns shall sprinkle through the tainted air
The poisoned brains of this proud Scythian.
Call. Well then, my noble lords, for this my friend
That freed me from the bondage of my foe,
I think it requisite and honourable,
To keep my promise and to make him king,
That is a gentleman, I know, at least.
Alm. That's no matter, sir, for being a king; for Tamburlaine came up of nothing.
K. of Jer. Your majesty may choose some 'pointed time,
Performing all your promise to the full;
'Tis nought for your majesty to give a kingdom.
Call. Then will I shortly keep my promise, Almeda.
Alm. Why, I thank your majesty. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II

Enter TAMBURLAINE, *with his three* Sons *and* USUMCASANE; *four* Attendants *bearing the hearse of* ZENOCRATE; *the drums sounding a doleful march; the town burning*

Tamb. So burn the turrets of this cursèd town,
Flame to the highest region of the air,
And kindle heaps of exhalations,
That being fiery meteors may presage
Death and destruction to the inhabitants!
Over my zenith hang a blazing star,

Digitized by Google

That may endure till Heaven be dissolved,
Fed with the fresh supply of earthly dregs,
Threatening a dearth and famine to this land!
Flying dragons, lightning, fearful thunder-claps,
Singe these fair plains and make them seem as black
As is the island where the Furies mask,
Compassed with Lethe, Styx, and Phlegethon,
Because my dear'st Zenocrate is dead.

Cal. This pillar, placed in memory of her,
Where in Arabian, Hebrew, Greek, is writ —
This town, being burnt by Tamburlaine the Great,
Forbids the world to build it up again.

Amy. And here this mournful streamer shall be placed,
Wrought with the Persian and th' Egyptian arms,
To signify she was a princess born,
And wife unto the monarch of the East.

Cel. And here this table as a register
Of all her virtues and perfections.

Tamb. And here the picture of Zenocrate,
To show her beauty which the world admired;
Sweet picture of divine Zenocrate,
That, hanging here, will draw the gods from Heaven,
And cause the stars fixed in the southern arc,
(Whose lovely faces never any viewed
That have not passed the centre's latitude,)
As pilgrims, travel to our hemisphere,
Only to gaze upon Zenocrate.
Thou shalt not beautify Larissa plains,
But keep within the circle of mine arms.
At every town and castle I besiege,
Thou shalt be set upon my royal tent;
And when I meet an army in the field,
Those looks will shed such influence in my camp
As if Bellona, goddess of the war,
Threw naked swords and sulphur-balls of fire
Upon the heads of all our enemies.
And now, my lords, advance your spears again:

Digitized by Google

Sorrow no more, my sweet Casane, now;
Boys, leave to mourn! this town shall ever mourn,
Being burnt to cinders for your mother's death.
Cal. If I had wept a sea of tears for her,
It would not ease the sorrows I sustain.
Amy. As is that town, so is my heart consumed
With grief and sorrow for my mother's death.
Cel. My mother's death hath mortified my mind,
And sorrow stops the passage of my speech.
Tamb. But now, my boys, leave off and list to me,
That mean to teach you rudiments of war;
I'll have you learn to sleep upon the ground,
March in your armour thorough watery fens,
Sustain the scorching heat and freezing cold,
Hunger and thirst, right adjuncts of the war,
And after this to scale a castle wall,
Besiege a fort, to undermine a town,
And make whole cities caper in the air.
Then next the way to fortify your men;
In champion grounds, what figure serves you best,
For which the quinque-angle form is meet,
Because the corners there may fall more flat
Whereas the fort may fittest be assailed,
And sharpest where the assault is desperate.
The ditches must be deep; the counterscarps
Narrow and steep; the walls made high and broad;
The bulwarks and the rampires large and strong,
With cavalieros and thick counterforts,
And room within to lodge six thousand men.
It must have privy ditches, countermines,
And secret issuings to defend the ditch;
It must have high argins and covered ways,
To keep the bulwark fronts from battery,
And parapets to hide the musketeers;
Casemates to place the great artillery;
And store of ordnance, that from every flank
May scour the outward curtains of the fort,

Digitized by Google

Dismount the cannon of the adverse part,
Murder the foe, and save the walls from breach.
When this is learned for service on the land,
By plain and easy demonstration
I'll teach you how to make the water mount,
That you may dry-foot march through lakes and pools,
Deep rivers, havens, creeks, and little seas,
And make a fortress in the raging waves,
Fenced with the concave of monstrous rock,
Invincible by nature of the place.
When this is done, then are ye soldiers,
And worthy sons of Tamburlaine the Great.

Cal. My lord, but this is dangerous to be done;
We may be slain or wounded ere we learn.

Tamb. Villain! Art thou the son of Tamburlaine,
And fear'st to die, or with a curtal-ax
To hew thy flesh, and make a gaping wound?
Hast thou beheld a peal of ordnance strike
A ring of pikes, mingled with shot and horse,
Whose shattered limbs, being tossed as high as Heaven,
Hang in the air as thick as sunny motes,
And canst thou, coward, stand in fear of death?
Hast thou not seen my horsemen charge the foe,
Shot through the arms, cut overthwart the hands,
Dyeing their lances with their streaming blood,
And yet at night carouse within my tent,
Filling their empty veins with airy wine,
That, being concocted, turns to crimson blood,
And wilt thou shun the field for fear of wounds?
View me, thy father, that hath conquered kings,
And, with his horse, marched round about the earth,
Quite void of scars, and clear from any wound,
That by the wars lost not a drop of blood,
And see him lance his flesh to teach you all.

[*He cuts his arm.*

A wound is nothing, be it ne'er so deep;
Blood is the god of war's rich livery.

Digitized by Google

Now look I like a soldier, and this wound
As great a grace and majesty to me,
As if a chain of gold, enamellèd,
Enchased with diamonds, sapphires, rubies,
And fairest pearl of wealthy India,
Were mounted here under a canopy,
And I sat down clothed with a massy robe,
That late adorned the Afric potentate,
Whom I brought bound unto Damascus' walls.
Come, boys, and with your fingers search my wound,
And in my blood wash all your hands at once,
While I sit smiling to behold the sight.
Now, my boys, what think ye of a wound?

Cal. I know not what I should think of it; methinks it is a pitiful sight.

Cel. 'Tis nothing: give me a wound, father.

Amy. And me another, my lord.

Tamb. Come, sirrah, give me your arm.

Cel. Here, father, cut it bravely, as you did your own.

Tamb. It shall suffice thou darest abide a wound;
My boy, thou shalt not lose a drop of blood
Before we meet the army of the Turk:
But then run desperate through the thickest throngs,
Dreadless of blows, of bloody wounds, and death;
And let the burning of Larissa walls,
My speech of war, and this my wound you see,
Teach you, my boys, to bear courageous minds,
Fit for the followers of great Tamburlaine!
Usumcasane, now come let us march
Towards Techelles and Theridamas,
That we have sent before to fire the towns,
The towers and cities of these hateful Turks,
And hunt that coward, faint-heart runaway,
With that accursèd traitor Almeda,
Till fire and sword have found them at a bay.

Usum. I long to pierce his bowels with my sword,
That hath betrayed my gracious sovereign —

Digitized by Google

That cursed and damnèd traitor Almeda.
Tamb. Then let us see if coward Callapine
Dare levy arms against our puissance,
That we may tread upon his captive neck,
And treble all his father's slaveries. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE III

Enter TECHELLES, THERIDAMAS, *and their* Train

Ther. Thus have we marched northward[n] from Tamburlaine,
Unto the frontier point of Soria;
And this is Balsera, their chiefest hold,
Wherein is all the treasure of the land.
Tech. Then let us bring our light artillery,
Minions, falc'nets, and sakers to the trench,
Filling the ditches with the walls' wide breach,
And enter in to seize upon the hold.
How say you, soldiers? shall we [or] not?
Sold. Yes, my lord, yes; come, let's about it.
Ther. But stay awhile; summon a parley, drum.
It may be they will yield it quietly,
Knowing two kings, the friends to Tamburlaine,
Stand at the walls with such a mighty power.

A parley sounded. — The CAPTAIN *appears on the walls, with* OLYMPIA *his* Wife, *and his* Son

Capt. What require you, my masters?
Ther. Captain, that thou yield up thy hold to us.
Capt. To you! Why, do you think me weary of it?
Tech. Nay, captain, thou art weary of thy life,
If thou withstand the friends of Tamburlaine!
Ther. These pioners of Argier in Africa,
Even in the cannon's face, shall raise a hill
Of earth and faggots higher than the fort,

Digitized by Google

And over thy argins and covered ways
Shall play upon the bulwarks of thy hold
Volleys of ordnance, till the breach be made
That with his ruin fills up all the trench,
And when we enter in, not Heaven itself
Shall ransom thee, thy wife, and family.

Tech. Captain, these Moors shall cut the leaden pipes,
That bring fresh water to thy men and thee,
And lie in trench before thy castle walls,
That no supply of victual shall come in,
Nor any issue forth but they shall die;
And, therefore, captain, yield it quietly.

Capt. Were you, that are the friends of Tamburlaine,
Brothers of holy Mahomet himself,
I would not yield it; therefore do your worst:
Raise mounts, batter, intrench, and undermine,
Cut off the water, all convoys that come,
Yet I am resolute, and so farewell.

[CAPTAIN, OLYMPIA, *and their* Son *retire from the walls.*

Ther. Pioners, away! and where I stuck the stake,
Intrench with those dimensions I prescribed.
Cast up the earth towards the castle wall,
Which, till it may defend you, labour low,
And few or none shall perish by their shot.

Pio. We will, my lord. [*Exeunt* Pioners.

Tech. A hundred horse shall scout about the plains
To spy what force comes to relieve the hold.
Both we, Theridamas, will entrench our men,
And with the Jacob's staff measure the height
And distance of the castle from the trench,
That we may know if our artillery
Will carry full point-blank unto their walls.

Ther. Then see the bringing of our ordnance
Along the trench into the battery,
Where we will have gabions of six feet broad
To save our cannoneers from musket shot.

Digitized by Google

Betwixt which shall our ordnance thunder forth,
And with the breach's fall, smoke, fire, and dust,
The crack, the echo, and the soldier's cry,
Make deaf the ear and dim the crystal sky.
Tech. Trumpets and drums, alarum presently;
And, soldiers, play the men; the hold is yours. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV

Alarm within. — *Enter the* CAPTAIN, *with* OLYMPIA, *and his* Son

Olymp. Come, good my lord, and let us haste from hence
Along the cave that leads beyond the foe;
No hope is left to save this conquered hold.
Capt. A deadly bullet, gliding through my side,
Lies heavy on my heart; I cannot live.
I feel my liver pierced, and all my veins,
That there begin and nourish every part,
Mangled and torn, and all my entrails bathed
In blood that straineth from their orifex.
Farewell, sweet wife! sweet son, farewell! I die. [*He dies.*
Olymp. Death, whither art thou gone, that both we live?
Come back again, sweet Death, and strike us both!
One minute end our days! and one sepùlchre
Contain our bodies! Death, why com'st thou not?
Well, this must be the messenger for thee:
[*Drawing a dagger.*
Now, ugly Death, stretch out thy sable wings,
And carry both our souls where his remains.
Tell me, sweet boy, art thou content to die?
These barbarous Scythians, full of cruelty,
And Moors, in whom was never pity found,
Will hew us piecemeal, put us to the wheel,
Or else invent some torture worse than that;
Therefore die by thy loving mother's hand,

Digitized by Google

Who gently now will lance thy ivory throat,
And quickly rid thee both of pain and life.
Son. Mother, despatch me, or I'll kill myself;
For think you I can live and see him dead?
Give me your knife, good mother, or strike home:
The Scythians shall not tyrannize on me:
Sweet mother, strike, that I may meet my father.
[*She stabs him and he dies.*
Olymp. Ah, sacred Mahomet, if this be sin,
Entreat a pardon of the God of Heaven,
And purge my soul before it come to thee.
[*She burns the bodies of her* Husband *and* Son *and then attempts to kill herself.*

Enter THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, *and all their* Train

Ther. How now, madam, what are you doing?
Olymp. Killing myself, as I have done my son,
Whose body, with his father's, I have burnt,
Lest cruel Scythians should dismember him.
Tech. 'Twas bravely done, and, like a soldier's wife.
Thou shalt with us to Tamburlaine the Great,
Who, when he hears how resolute thou art,
Will match thee with a viceroy or a king.
Olymp. My lord deceased was dearer unto me
Than any viceroy, king, or emperor;
And for his sake here will I end my days.
Ther. But, lady, go with us to Tamburlaine,
And thou shalt see a man, greater than Mahomet,
In whose high looks is much more majesty
Than from the concave superficies
Of Jove's vast palace, the empyreal orb,
Unto the shining bower where Cynthia sits,
Like lovely Thetis, in a crystal robe;
That treadeth fortune underneath his feet,
And makes the mighty god of arms his slave;
On whom Death and the Fatal Sisters wait

Digitized by Google

With naked swords and scarlet liveries:
Before whom, mounted on a lion's back,
Rhamnusia bears a helmet full of blood,
And strews the way with brains of slaughtered men;
By whose proud side the ugly Furies run,
Hearkening when he shall bid them plague the world;
Over whose zenith, clothed in windy air,
And eagle's wings joined to her feathered breast,
Fame hovereth, sounding of her golden trump,
That to the adverse poles of that straight line,
Which measureth the glorious frame of Heaven,
The name of mighty Tamburlaine is spread,
And him, fair lady, shall thy eyes behold.
Come!

Olymp. Take pity of a lady's ruthful tears,
That humbly craves upon her knees to stay
And cast her body in the burning flame,
That feeds upon her son's and husband's flesh.

Tech. Madam, sooner shall fire consume us both,
Than scorch a face so beautiful as this,
In frame of which Nature hath showed more skill
Than when she gave eternal chaos form,
Drawing from it the shining lamps of Heaven.

Ther. Madam, I am so far in love with you,
That you must go with us — no remedy.

Olymp. Then carry me, I care not, where you will,
And let the end of this my fatal journey
Be likewise end to my accursèd life.

Tech. No, madam, but the beginning of your joy:
Come willingly therefore.

Ther. Soldiers, now let us meet the general,
Who by this time is at Natolia,
Ready to charge the army of the Turk.
The gold and silver, and the pearl, we got,
Rifling this fort, divide in equal shares:
This lady shall have twice as much again
Out of the coffers of our treasury. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE V

Enter CALLAPINE, ORCANES, ALMEDA, *and the* KINGS *of* JERUSALEM, TREBIZOND, *and* SORIA, *with their* Trains. — *To them enters a* Messenger

Mes. Renownèd Emperor, mighty Callapine,
God's great lieutenant over all the world!
Here at Aleppo, with a host of men,
Lies Tamburlaine, this King of Persia,
(In numbers more than are the quivering leaves
Of Ida's forest, where your highness' hounds,
With open cry, pursue the wounded stag,)
Who means to girt Natolia's walls with siege,
Fire the town, and overrun the land.
Call. My royal army is as great as his,
That, from the bounds of Phrygia to the sea
Which washeth Cyprus with his brinish waves,
Covers the hills, the valleys, and the plains.
Viceroys and peers of Turkey, play the men!
Whet all your swords, to mangle Tamburlaine,
His sons, his captains, and his followers;
By Mahomet! not one of them shall live;
The field wherein this battle shall be fought
For ever term the Persian's sepulchre,
In memory of this our victory!
Orc. Now, he that calls himself the scourge of Jove,
The emperor of the world, and earthly god,
Shall end the warlike progress he intends,
And travel headlong to the lake of hell,
Where legions of devils, (knowing he must die
Here, in Natolia, by your highness' hands,)
All brandishing their brands of quenchless fire,
Stretching their monstrous paws, grin with their teeth
And guard the gates to entertain his soul.

Digitized by Google

Call. Tell me, viceroys, the number of your men,
And what our army royal is esteemed.
K. of Jer. From Palestina and Jerusalem,
Of Hebrews threescore thousand fighting men
Are come since last we showed your majesty.
Orc. So from Arabia Desert, and the bounds
Of that sweet land, whose brave metropolis
Re-edified the fair Semiramis,
Came forty thousand warlike foot and horse,
Since last we numbered to your majesty.
K. of Treb. From Trebizond, in Asia the Less,
Naturalized Turks and stout Bithynians
Came to my bands, full fifty thousand more
(That, fighting, know not what retreat doth mean,
Nor e'er return but with the victory,)
Since last we numbered to your majesty.
K. of Sor. Of Sorians from Halla is repaired,
And neighbour cities of your highness' land,
Ten thousand horse, and thirty thousand foot,
Since last we numbered to your majesty;
So that the royal army is esteemed
Six hundred thousand valiant fighting men.
Call. Then welcome, Tamburlaine, unto thy death.
Come, puissant viceroys, let us to the field,
(The Persians' sepulchre,) and sacrifice
Mountains of breathless men to Mahomet,
Who now, with Jove, opens the firmament
To see the slaughter of our enemies.

Enter TAMBURLAINE *with his three* Sons, USUMCASANE, *and others*

Tamb. How now, Casane? See a knot of kings,
Sitting as if they were a-telling riddles.
Usum. My lord, your presence makes them pale and wan:
Poor souls! they look as if their death were near.

Digitized by Google

Tamb. And so he is, Casane; I am here;
But yet I'll save their lives, and make them slaves.
Ye petty kings of Turkey, I am come,
As Hector did into the Grecian camp,
To overdare the pride of Græcia,
And set his warlike person to the view
Of fierce Achilles, rival of his fame:
I do you honour in the simile;
For if I should, as Hector did Achilles,
(The worthiest knight that ever brandished sword),
Challenge in combat any of you all,
I see how fearfully ye would refuse,
And fly my glove as from a scorpion.
Orc. Now thou art fearful of thy army's strength,
Thou would'st with overmatch of person fight;
But, shepherd's issue, base-born Tamburlaine,
Think of thy end! this sword shall lance thy throat.
Tamb. Villain! the shepherd's issue (at whose birth
Heaven did afford a gracious aspèct,
And joined those stars that shall be opposite
Even till the dissolution of the world,
And never meant to make a conqueror
So famous as is mighty Tamburlaine,)
Shall so torment thee and that Callapine,
That, like a roguish runaway, suborned
That villain there, that slave, that Turkish dog,
To false his service to his sovereign,
As ye shall curse the birth of Tamburlaine.
Call. Rail not, proud Scythian! I shall now revenge
My father's vile abuses, and mine own.
K. of Jer. By Mahomet! he shall be tied in chains,
Rowing with Christians in a brigandine
About the Grecian isles to rob and spoil,
And turn him to his ancient trade again:
Methinks the slave should make a lusty thief.
Call. Nay, when the battle ends, all we will meet,

Digitized by Google

And sit in council to invent some pain
That most may vex his body and his soul.
Tamb. Sirrah, Callapine! I'll hang a clog about your neck for running away again;[n] you shall not trouble me thus to come and fetch you;
But as for you, viceroys, you shall have bits,
And, harnessed like my horses, draw my coach;
And when ye stay, be lashed with whips of wire.
I'll have you learn to feed on provender
And in a stable lie upon the planks.
Orc. But, Tamburlaine, first thou shalt kneel to us,
And humbly crave a pardon for thy life.
K. of Treb. The common soldiers of our mighty host
Shall bring thee bound unto the general's tent.
K. of Sor. And all have jointly sworn thy cruel death,
Or bind thee in eternal torments' wrath.
Tamb. Well, sirs, diet yourselves; you know I shall have occasion shortly to journey you.
Cel. See, father,
How Almeda the jailer looks upon us.
Tamb. Villain! traitor! damnèd fugitive!
I'll make thee wish the earth had swallowed thee,
See'st thou not death within my wrathful looks?
Go, villain, cast thee headlong from a rock,
Or rip thy bowels, and rend out thy heart
To appease my wrath! or else I'll torture thee,
Searing thy hateful flesh with burning irons
And drops of scalding lead, while all thy joints
Be racked and beat asunder with the wheel;
For, if thou liv'st, not any element
Shall shroud thee from the wrath of Tamburlaine.
Call. Well, in despite of thee he shall be king.
Come, Almeda; receive this crown of me,
I here invest thee King of Ariadan
Bordering on Mare Roso, near to Mecca.
Orc. What! Take it, man.
Alm. Good my lord, let me take it.[n] [*To* TAMBURLAINE.

Digitized by Google

Call. Dost thou ask him leave? Here; take it.

Tamb. Go to, sirrah, take your crown, and make up the half-dozen. So, sirrah, now you are a king, you must give arms.[n]

Orc. So he shall, and wear thy head in his scutcheon.

Tamb. No; let him hang a bunch of keys on his standard to put him in remembrance he was a jailer, that when I take him, I may knock out his brains with them, and lock you in the stable, when you shall come sweating from my chariot.

K. of Treb. Away; let us to the field, that the villain may be slain.

Tamb. Sirrah, prepare whips and bring my chariot to my tent, for as soon as the battle is done, I'll ride in triumph through the camp.

Enter THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, *and their* Train

How now, ye petty kings? Lo, here are bugs
Will make the hair stand upright on your heads,
And cast your crowns in slavery at their feet.
Welcome, Theridamas and Techelles, both!
See ye this rout, and know ye this same king?

Ther. Ay, my lord; he was Callapine's keeper.

Tamb. Well, now ye see he is a king; look to him, Theridamas, when we are fighting, lest he hide his crown as the foolish King of Persia did.

K. of Sor. No, Tamburlaine; he shall not be put to that exigent, I warrant thee.

Tamb. You know not, sir —
But now, my followers and my loving friends,
Fight as you ever did, like conquerors,
The glory of this happy day is yours.
My stern aspèct shall make fair victory,
Hovering betwixt our armies, light on me
Loaden with laurel wreaths to crown us all.

Tech. I smile to think how, when this field is fought

Digitized by Google

And rich Natolia ours, our men shall sweat
With carrying pearl and treasure on their backs.
Tamb. You shall be princes all, immediately;
Come, fight ye Turks, or yield us victory.
Orc. No; we will meet thee, slavish Tamburlaine.
[*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

ACT THE FOURTH

SCENE I

Alarums within. — AMYRAS *and* CELEBINUS *issue from the tent where* CALYPHAS *sits asleep*

Amy. Now in their glories shine the golden crowns
Of these proud Turks, much like so many suns
That half dismay the majesty of Heaven.
Now, brother, follow we our father's sword,
That flies with fury swifter than our thoughts,
And cuts down armies with his conquering wings.
Cel. Call forth our lazy brother from the tent,
For if my father miss him in the field,
Wrath, kindled in the furnace of his breast,
Will send a deadly lightning to his heart.
Amy. Brother, ho! what, given so much to sleep,
You cannot leave it, when our enemies' drums
And rattling cannons thunder in our ears
Our proper ruin and our father's foil?
Cal. Away, ye fools! my father needs not me,
Nor you in faith, but that you will be thought
More childish-valorous than manly-wise.
If half our camp should sit and sleep with me,
My father were enough to scare the foe.
You do dishonour to his majesty,
To think our helps will do him any good.
Amy. What! Dar'st thou, then, be absent from the field,
Knowing my father hates thy cowardice,
And oft hath warned thee to be still in field,
When he himself amidst the thickest troops
Beats down our foes, to flesh our taintless swords?
Cal. I know, sir, what it is to kill a man;
It works remorse of conscience in me;

Digitized by Google

I take no pleasure to be murderous,
Nor care for blood when wine will quench my thirst.
Cel. O cowardly boy! Fie! for shame come forth!
Thou dost dishonour manhood and thy house.
Cal. Go, go, tall stripling, fight you for us both,
And take my other toward brother here,
For person like to prove a second Mars.
'Twill please my mind as well to hear you both
Have won a heap of honour in the field
And left your slender carcasses behind,
As if I lay with you for company.
Amy. You will not go then?
Cal. You say true.
Amy. Were all the lofty mounts of Zona Mundi
That fill the midst of farthest Tartary
Turned into pearl and proffered for my stay,
I would not bide the fury of my father,
When, made a victor in these haughty arms,
He comes and finds his sons have had no shares
In all the honours he proposed for us.
Cal. Take you the honour, I will take my ease;
My wisdom shall excuse my cowardice.
I go into the field before I need!
[*Alarums.* — AMYRAS *and* CELEBINUS *run out.*
The bullets fly at random where they list;
And should I go and kill a thousand men,
I were as soon rewarded with a shot,
And sooner far than he that never fights;
And should I go and do no harm nor good,
I might have harm which all the good I have,
Joined with my father's crown, would never cure.
I'll to cards. Perdicas!

Enter PERDICAS

Perd. Here, my lord.
Cal. Come, thou and I will go to cards to drive away the time.

Digitized by Google

Perd. Content, my lord; but what shall we play for?

Cal. Who shall kiss the fairest of the Turk's concubines first, when my father hath conquered them.

Perd. Agreed, i' faith. [*They play.*

Cal. They say I am a coward, Perdicas, and I fear as little their taratantaras, their swords or their cannons, as I do a naked lady in a net of gold, and, for fear I should be afraid, would put it off and come to bed with me.

Perd. Such a fear, my lord, would never make ye retire.

Cal. I would my father would let me be put in the front of such a battle once to try my valour. [*Alarms within.* What a coil they keep! I believe there will be some hurt done anon amongst them. [*Exeunt.* 73

SCENE II

Enter TAMBURLAINE, THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, USUMCASANE, AMYRAS, *and* CELEBINUS, *leading in* ORCANES *and the* KINGS *of* JERUSALEM, TREBIZOND, *and* SORIA

Tamb. See now, ye slaves, my children stoop your pride,
And lead your bodies sheep-like to the sword.
Bring them, my boys, and tell me if the wars
Be not a life that may illustrate gods,
And tickle not your spirits with desire
Still to be trained in arms and chivalry?

Amy. Shall we let go these kings again, my lord,
To gather greater numbers 'gainst our power,
That they may say it is not chance doth this,
But matchless strength and magnanimity? 10

Tamb. No, no, Amyras; tempt not fortune so:
Cherish thy valour still with fresh supplies,
And glut it not with stale and daunted foes.
But where's this coward villain, not my son,
But traitor to my name and majesty?

[*He goes in and brings* CALYPHAS *out.*

Digitized by Google

Image of sloth and picture of a slave,
The obloquy and scorn of my renown!
How may my heart, thus firèd with mine eyes,
Wounded with shame and killed with discontent,
Shroud any thought may hold my striving hands
From martial justice on thy wretched soul?
Ther. Yet pardon him, I pray your majesty.
Tech. and Usum. Let all of us entreat your highness' pardon.
Tamb. Stand up, ye base, unworthy soldiers!
Know ye not yet the argument of arms?
Amy. Good my lord, let him be forgiven for once,
And we will force him to the field hereafter.
Tamb. Stand up, my boys, and I will teach ye arms,
And what the jealousy of wars must do.
O Samarcanda (where I breathèd first
And joyed the fire of this martial flesh),
Blush, blush, fair city, at thine honour's foil,[a]
And shame of nature, which Jaertis' stream,
Embracing thee with deepest of his love,
Can never wash from thy distainèd brows!
Here, Jove, receive his fainting soul again;
A form not meet to give that subject essence
Whose matter is the flesh of Tamburlaine;
Wherein an incorporeal spirit moves,
Made of the mould whereof thyself consists,
Which makes me valiant, proud, ambitious,
Ready to levy power against thy throne,
That I might move the turning spheres of Heaven!
For earth and all this airy region
Cannot contain the state of Tamburlaine.
By Mahomet! thy mighty friend, I swear,
In sending to my issue such a soul,
Created of the massy dregs of earth,
The scum and tartar of the elements,
Wherein was neither courage, strength, or wit,
But folly, sloth, and damnèd idleness,

Digitized by Google

Thou hast procured a greater enemy
Than he that darted mountains at thy head,
Shaking the burthen mighty Atlas bears;
Whereat thou trembling hid'st thee in the air,
Clothed with a pitchy cloud for being seen:[n]
And now, ye cankered curs of Asia,
That will not see the strength of Tamburlaine,
Although it shine as brightly as the sun;
Now you shall feel the strength of Tamburlaine,
And, by the state of his supremacy, [*Stabs* CALYPHAS.
Approve the difference 'twixt himself and you.
Orc. Thou show'st the difference 'twixt ourselves and thee,
In this thy barbarous damnèd tyranny.
K. of Jer. Thy victories are grown so violent,
That shortly Heaven, filled with the meteors
Of blood and fire thy tyrannies have made,
Will pour down blood and fire on thy head,
Whose scalding drops will pierce thy seething brains,
And, with our bloods, revenge our bloods on thee.
Tamb. Villains! these terrors and these tyrannies
(If tyrannies war's justice ye repute,)
I execute, enjoined me from above,
To scourge the pride of such as Heaven abhors;
Nor am I made arch-monarch of the world,
Crowned and invested by the hand of Jove
For deeds of bounty or nobility;
But since I exercise a greater name,
The scourge of God, and terror of the world,
I must apply myself to fit those terms,
In war, in blood, in death, in cruelty,
And plague such peasants as resist in me,
The power of Heaven's eternal majesty.
Theridamas, Techelles, and Casane,
Ransack the tents and the pavilions
Of these proud Turks, and take their concubines,
Making them bury this effeminate brat,

Digitized by Google

For not a common soldier shall defile
His manly fingers with so faint a boy.
Then bring those Turkish harlots to my tent,
And I'll dispose them as it likes me best;
Meanwhile, take him in.
Sold. We will, my lord.
[*Exeunt with the body of* CALYPHAS.
K. of Jer. O damnèd monster! Nay, a fiend of hell,
Whose cruelties are not so harsh as thine,
Nor yet imposed with such a bitter hate!
Orc. Revenge it, Rhadamanth and Æacus,
And let your hates, extended in his pains,
Excel the hate wherewith he pains our souls.
K. of Treb. May never day give virtue to his eyes,
Whose sight, composed of fury and of fire,
Doth send such stern affections to his heart.
K. of Sor. May never spirit, vein, or artier, feed
The cursèd substance of that cruel heart!
But, wanting moisture and remorseful blood,
Dry up with anger, and consume with heat.
Tamb. Well, bark, ye dogs; I'll bridle all your tongues,
And bind them close with bits of burnished steel,
Down to the channels of your hateful throats;
And, with the pains my rigour shall inflict,
I'll make ye roar, that earth may echo forth
The far-resounding torments ye sustain:
As when an herd of lusty Cimbrian bulls
Run mourning round about the females' miss,[n]
And, stung with fury of their following,
Fill all the air with troublous bellowing;
I will, with engines never exercised,
Conquer, sack, and utterly consume
Your cities and your golden palaces;
And, with the flames that beat against the clouds,
Incense the Heavens, and make the stars to melt,
As if they were the tears of Mahomet,
For hot consumption of his country's pride;

Digitized by Google

And, till by vision or by speech I hear
Immortal Jove say "Cease, my Tamburlaine,"
I will persist, a terror to the world,
Making the meteors (that, like armèd men,
Are seen to march upon the towers of Heaven),
Run tilting round about the firmament,
And break their burning lances in the air,
For honour of my wondrous victories.
Come, bring them in to our pavilion. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE III

OLYMPIA discovered alone

Olymp. Distressed Olympia, whose weeping eyes
Since thy arrival here behold no sun,
But closed within the compass of a tent
Hath stained thy cheeks, and made thee look like death,
Devise some means to rid thee of thy life,
Rather than yield to his detested suit,
Whose drift is only to dishonour thee;
And since this earth, dewed with thy brinish tears,
Affords no herbs whose taste may poison thee,
Nor yet this air, beat often with thy sighs,
Contagious smells and vapours to infect thee,
Nor thy close cave a sword to murder thee;
Let this invention be the instrument.

Enter THERIDAMAS

Ther. Well met, Olympia; I sought thee in my tent,
But when I saw the place obscure and dark,
Which with thy beauty thou wast wont to light,
Enraged, I ran about the fields for thee,
Supposing amorous Jove had sent his son,

Digitized by Google

The wingèd Hermes, to convey thee hence;
But now I find thee, and that fear is past.
Tell me, Olympia, wilt thou grant my suit?
Olymp. My lord and husband's death, with my sweet son's,
(With whom I buried all affections
Save grief and sorrow, which torment my heart,)
Forbids my mind to entertain a thought
That tends to love, but meditate on death,
A fitter subject for a pensive soul.
Ther. Olympia, pity him, in whom thy looks
Have greater operation and more force
Than Cynthia's in the watery wilderness,
For with thy view my joys are at the full.
And ebb again as thou departest from me.
Olymp. Ah, pity me, my lord! and draw your sword,
Making a passage for my troubled soul,
Which beats against this prison to get out,
And meet my husband and my loving son.
Ther. Nothing but still thy husband and thy son!
Leave this, my love, and listen more to me.
Thou shalt be stately queen of fair Argier;
And clothed in costly cloth of massy gold,
Upon the marble turrets of my court
Sit like to Venus in her chair of state,
Commanding all thy princely eye desires;
And I will cast off arms to sit with thee,
Spending my life in sweet discourse of love.
Olymp. No such discourse is pleasant in mine ears,
But that where every period ends with death,
And every line begins with death again.
I cannot love, to be an emperess.
Ther. Nay, lady, then, if nothing will prevail,
I'll use some other means to make you yield:
Such is the sudden fury of my love,
I must and will be pleased, and you shall yield:
Come to the tent again.

Digitized by Google

Olymp. Stay now, my lord; and, will you save my honour,
I'll give your grace a present of such price,
As all the world cannot afford the like.
Ther. What is it?
Olymp. An ointment which a cunning alchemist,
Distillèd from the purest balsamum
And simplest extracts of all minerals,
In which the essential form of marble stone,
Tempered by science metaphysical,
And spells of magic from the mouths of spirits,
With which if you but 'noint your tender skin,
Nor pistols, sword, nor lance, can pierce your flesh.
Ther. Why, madam, think you to mock me thus palpably?
Olymp. To prove it, I will 'noint my naked throat,
Which, when you stab, look on your weapon's point,
And you shall see't rebated with the blow.
Ther. Why gave you not your husband some of it,
If you loved him, and it so precious?
Olymp. My purpose was, my lord, to spend it so,
But was prevented by his sudden end;
And for a present, easy proof thereof,
That I dissemble not, try it on me.
Ther. I will, Olympia, and will keep it for
The richest present of this eastern world.
[*She anoints her throat.*[n]
Olymp. Now stab, my lord, and mark your weapon's point,
That will be blunted if the blow be great.
Ther. Here then, Olympia. [*Stabs her.*
What, have I slain her! Villain, stab thyself;
Cut off this arm that murderèd thy love,
In whom the learnèd rabbis of this age
Might find as many wondrous miracles
As in the theoria of the world.
Now hell is fairer than Elysium;

Digitized by Google

A greater lamp than that bright eye of Heaven,
From whence the stars do borrow all their light,
Wanders about the black circumference;
And now the damnèd souls are free from pain,
For every Fury gazeth on her looks;
Infernal Dis is courting of my love,
Inventing masks and stately shows for her,
Opening the doors of his rich treasury
To entertain this queen of chastity;
Whose body shall be tombed with all the pomp
The treasure of my kingdom may afford.

[*Exit, with the body.*

SCENE IV

Enter TAMBURLAINE *drawn in his chariot by the* KINGS *of* TREBIZOND *and* SORIA, *with bits in their mouths: in his right hand he has a whip with which he scourgeth them, while his left hand holds the reins; then come* TECHELLES, THERIDAMAS, USUMCASANE, AMYRAS, *and* CELEBINUS *with the* KINGS *of* NATOLIA *and* JERUSALEM, *led by five or six common* Soldiers

Tamb. Holla, ye pampered jades of Asia![n]
What! can ye draw but twenty miles a day,
And have so proud a chariot at your heels,
And such a coachman as great Tamburlaine,
But from Asphaltis, where I conquered you,
To Byron here, where thus I honour you!
The horse that guide the golden eye of Heaven,
And blow the morning from their nosterils,
Making their fiery gait above the clouds,
Are not so honoured in their governor,
As you, ye slaves, in mighty Tamburlaine.
The headstrong jades of Thrace Alcides tamed,
That King Egeus fed with human flesh,

Digitized by Google

And made so wanton that they knew their strengths,
Were not subdued with valour more divine
Than you by this unconquered arm of mine.
To make you fierce, and fit my appetite,
You shall be fed with flesh as raw as blood,
And drink in pails the strongest muscatel;
If you can live with it, then live, and draw
My chariot swifter than the racking clouds;
If not, then die like beasts, and fit for naught
But perches for the black and fatal ravens.
Thus am I right the scourge of highest Jove;
And see the figure of my dignity
By which I hold my name and majesty!

Amy. Let me have coach, my lord, that I may ride,
And thus be drawn by these two idle kings.

Tamb. Thy youth forbids such ease, my kingly boy;
They shall to-morrow draw my chariot,
While these their fellow-kings may be refreshed.

Orc. O thou that sway'st the region under earth,
And art a king as absolute as Jove,
Come as thou didst in fruitful Sicily,
Surveying all the glories of the land,
And as thou took'st the fair Proserpina,
Joying the fruit of Ceres' garden-plot,
For love, for honour, and to make her queen,
So for just hate, for shame, and to subdue
This proud contemner of thy dreadful power,
Come once in fury and survey his pride,
Haling him headlong to the lowest hell.

Ther. Your majesty must get some bits for these,
To bridle their contemptuous, cursing tongues,
That, like unruly, never-broken jades,
Break through the hedges of their hateful mouths,
And pass their fixèd bounds exceedingly.

Tech. Nay, we will break the hedges of their mouth,
And pull their kicking colts[n] out of their pastures.

Usum. Your majesty already hath devised

Digitized by Google

A mean, as fit as may be, to restrain
These coltish coach-horse tongues from blasphemy.
Cel. How like you that, sir king? why speak you not?
K. of Jer. Ah, cruel brat, sprung from a tyrant's loins!
How like his cursèd father he begins
To practise taunts and bitter tyrannies!
Tamb. Ay, Turk, I tell thee, this same boy is he
That must (advanced in higher pomp than this)
Rifle the kingdoms I shall leave unsacked,
If Jove, esteeming me too good for earth,
Raise me to match the fair Aldeboran,
Above the threefold astracism of Heaven,
Before I conquer all the triple world.
Now, fetch me out the Turkish concubines;
I will prefer them for the funeral
They have bestowed on my abortive son.
[*The* Concubines *are brought in.*
Where are my common soldiers now, that fought
So lion-like upon Asphaltis' plains?
Sold. Here, my lord.
Tamb. Hold ye, tall soldiers, take ye queens apiece —
I mean such queens as were kings' concubines —
Take them; divide them, and their jewels too,
And let them equally serve all your turns.
Sold. We thank you.
Tamb. Brawl not, I warn you, for your lechery:
For every man that so offends shall die.
Orc. Injurious tyrant, wilt thou so defame
The hateful fortunes of thy victory,
To exercise upon such guiltless dames
The violence of thy common soldiers' lust?
Tamb. Live continent then, ye slaves, and meet not me
With troops of harlots at your slothful heels.
Con. Oh, pity us, my lord, and save our honours.
Tamb. Are ye not gone, ye villains, with your spoils?
[*They run away with the* Concubines.

Digitized by Google

K. of Jer. O merciless, infernal cruelty!
Tamb. Save your honours! 'Twere but time indeed,
Lost long before ye knew what honour meant.
Ther. It seems they meant to conquer us, my lord,
And make us jesting pageants for their trulls.
Tamb. And now themselves shall make our pageants,
And common soldiers jest with all their trulls.
Let them take pleasure soundly in their spoils,
Till we prepare our march to Babylon,
Whither we next make expedition.
Tech. Let us not be idle then, my lord,
But presently be prest to conquer it.
Tamb. We will, Techelles. Forward then, ye jades.
Now crouch, ye kings of greatest Asia,
And tremble when ye hear this scourge will come
That whips down cities and controlleth crowns,
Adding their wealth and treasure to my store.
The Euxine Sea, north to Natolia;
The Terrene, west; the Caspian, north-north-east;
And on the south, Sinus Arabicus;
Shall all be loaden with the martial spoils
We will convey with us to Persia.
Then shall my native city, Samarcanda,
And crystal waves of fresh Jaertis' stream,
The pride and beauty of her princely seat,
Be famous through the furthest continents,
For there my palace-royal shall be placed,
Whose shining turrets shall dismay the Heavens,
And cast the fame of Ilion's tower to hell.
Thorough the streets with troops of conquered kings
I'll ride in golden armour like the sun;
And in my helm a triple plume shall spring,
Spangled with diamonds, dancing in the air,
To note me emperor of the threefold world,
Like to an almond tree y-mounted high[n]
Upon the lofty and celestial mount
Of ever-green Selinus quaintly decked

Digitized by Google

With blooms more white than Erycina's brows,
Whose tender blossoms tremble every one,
At every little breath through Heaven is blown.
Then in my coach, like Saturn's royal son
Mounted, his shining chariot gilt with fire,
And drawn with princely eagles through the path
Paved with bright crystal and enchased with stars,
When all the gods stand gazing at his pomp,
So will I ride through Samarcanda streets,
Until my soul, dissevered from this flesh,
Shall mount the milk-white way, and meet him there.
To Babylon, my lords; to Babylon! [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

ACT THE FIFTH

SCENE I

Enter the GOVERNOR *of* BABYLON, MAXIMUS, *and others upon the walls*

Gov. What saith Maximus?
Max. My lord, the breach the enemy hath made
Gives such assurance of our overthrow
That little hope is left to save our lives,
Or hold our city from the conqueror's hands.
Then hang out flags, my lord, of humble truce,
And satisfy the people's general prayers,
That Tamburlaine's intolerable wrath
May be suppressed by our submission.
Gov. Villain, respect'st thou more thy slavish life
Than honour of thy country or thy name?
Are not my life and state as dear to me,
The city, and my native country's weal,
As anything of price with thy conceit?
Have we not hope, for all our battered walls,
To live secure and keep his forces out,
When this our famous lake of Limnasphaltis
Makes walls afresh with everything that falls
Into the liquid substance of his stream,
More strong than are the gates of death or hell?
What faintness should dismay our courages
When we are thus defenced against our foes,
And have no terror but his threatening looks.

Enter above a Citizen, *who kneels to the* GOVERNOR

Cit. My lord, if ever you did deed of ruth,
And now will work a refuge for our lives,

Digitized by Google

Offer submission, hang up flags of truce,
That Tamburlaine may pity our distress,
And use us like a loving conqueror.
Though this be held his last day's dreadful siege,
Wherein he spareth neither man nor child,
Yet are there Christians of Georgia here,
Whose state was ever pitied and relieved,
Would get his pardon if your grace would send.

Gov. How is my soul environèd with cares!
And this eternized city, Babylon,
Filled with a pack of faint-heart fugitives
That thus entreat their shame and servitude!

Enter another Citizen

2d Cit. My lord, if ever you will win our hearts,
Yield up the town and save our wives and children;
For I will cast myself from off these walls
Or die some death of quickest violence
Before I bide the wrath of Tamburlaine.

Gov. Villains, cowards, traitors to our state!
Fall to the earth and pierce the pit of hell,
That legions of tormenting spirits may vex
Your slavish bosoms with continual pains!
I care not, nor the town will ever yield,
As long as any life is in my breast.

Enter THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, *with* Soldiers

Ther. Thou desperate governor of Babylon,
To save thy life, and us a little labour,
Yield speedily the city to our hands,
Or else be sure thou shalt be forced with pains,
More exquisite than ever traitor felt.

Gov. Tyrant! I turn the traitor in thy throat,
And will defend it in despite of thee. —
Call up the soldiers to defend these walls!

Digitized by Google

Tech. Yield, foolish governor; we offer more
Than ever yet we did to such proud slaves
As durst resist us till our third day's siege.
Thou seest us prest to give the last assault,
And that shall bide no more regard of parley.
Gov. Assault and spare not; we will never yield.
[*Alarms: and they scale the walls.*

Enter TAMBURLAINE *drawn in his chariot by the* KINGS *of* TREBIZOND *and* SORIA; AMYRAS, CELEBINUS, *and* USUMCASANE; *with the two spare*[n] KINGS *of* NATOLIA *and* JERUSALEM *led by* Soldiers; *and others*

Tamb. The stately buildings of fair Babylon,
Whose lofty pillars, higher than the clouds,
Were wont to guide the seaman in the deep,
Being carried thither by the cannon's force,
Now fill the mouth of Limnasphaltis' lake
And make a bridge unto the battered walls.
Where Belus, Ninus, and great Alexander
Have rode in triumph, triumphs Tamburlaine,
Whose chariot wheels have burst the Assyrians' bones,
Drawn with these kings on heaps of carcasses.
Now in the place where fair Semiramis,
Courted by kings and peers of Asia,
Hath trod the measures, do my soldiers march;
And in the streets, where brave Assyrian dames
Have rid in pomp like rich Saturnia,
With furious words and frowning visages
My horsemen brandish their unruly blades.

Re-enter THERIDAMAS *and* TECHELLES, *bringing in the* GOVERNOR *of* BABYLON

Who have ye there, my lords?
Ther. The sturdy governor of Babylon,
That made us all the labour for the town,
And used such slender reckoning of your majesty.

Digitized by Google

Tamb. Go, bind the villain; he shall hang in chains
Upon the ruins of this conquered town.
Sirrah, the view of our vermilion tents,
(Which threatened more than if the region
Next underneath the element of fire
Were full of comets and of blazing stars,
Whose flaming trains should reach down to the earth,)
Could not affright you; no, nor I myself,
The wrathful messenger of mighty Jove,
That with his sword hath quailed all earthly kings,
Could not persuade you to submission,
But still the ports were shut; villain! I say,
Should I but touch the rusty gates of hell,
The triple-headed Cerberus would howl
And make black Jove to crouch and kneel to me;
But I have sent volleys of shot to you,
Yet could not enter till the breach was made.

Gov. Nor, if my body could have stopt the breach,
Should'st thou have entered, cruel Tamburlaine.
'Tis not thy bloody tents can make me yield,
Nor yet thyself, the anger of the Highest,
For though thy cannon shook the city walls,
My heart did never quake, or courage faint.

Tamb. Well, now I'll make it quake; go draw him up,
Hang him in chains upon the city walls,
And let my soldiers shoot the slave to death.

Gov. Vile monster! born of some infernal hag,
And sent from hell to tyrannize on earth,
Do all thy worst; nor death, nor Tamburlaine,
Torture, nor pain, can daunt my dreadless mind.

Tamb. Up with him, then; his body shall be scared.

Gov. But, Tamburlaine, in Limnasphaltis' lake
There lies more gold than Babylon is worth,
Which when the city was besieged, I hid.
Save but my life and I will give it thee.

Tamb. Then for all your valour you would save your life?

Digitized by Google

Whereabout lies it?

Gov. Under a hollow bank, right opposite
Against the western gate of Babylon,

Tamb. Go thither, some of you, and take his gold;

[*Exeunt some of the* Attendants.

The rest — forward with execution!
Away with him hence, let him speak no more.
I think I make your courage something quail.

[*Exeunt other* Attendants *with the* GOVERNOR *of* BABYLON.

When this is done, we'll march from Babylon,
And make our greatest haste to Persia.
These jades are broken-winded and half-tired,
Unharness them, and let me have fresh horse.

[Attendants *unharness the* KINGS *of* TREBIZOND *and* SORIA.

So, now their best is done to honour me,
Take them and hang them both up presently.

K. of Treb. Vile tyrant! barbarous bloody Tamburlaine!

Tamb. Take them away, Theridamas; see them dispatched.

Ther. I will, my lord.

[*Exit with the* KINGS *of* TREBIZOND *and* SORIA.

Tamb. Come, Asian viceroys; to your tasks awhile,
And take such fortune as your fellows felt.

Orc. First let thy Scythian horse tear both our limbs,
Rather than we should draw thy chariot,
And like base slaves abject our princely minds
To vile and ignominious servitude.

K. of Jer. Rather lend me thy weapon, Tamburlaine,
That I may sheathe it in this breast of mine.
A thousand deaths could not torment our hearts
More than the thought of his doth vex our souls.

Amy. They will talk still, my lord, if you don't bridle them.

Digitized by Google

Tamb. Bridle them, and let me to my coach.

[*They bridle the* KINGS *of* NATOLIA *and* JERUSALEM *and harness them to the chariot. The* GOVERNOR *is seen hanging in chains on the walls.*

Re-enter THERIDAMAS

Amy. See now, my lord, how brave the captain hangs.

Tamb. 'Tis brave indeed, my boy; well done.
Shoot first, my lord, and then the rest shall follow.

Ther. Then have at him to begin withal.

[THERIDAMAS *shoots at the* GOVERNOR.

Gov. Yet save my life, and let this wound appease
The mortal fury of great Tamburlaine.

Tamb. No, though Asphaltis' lake were liquid gold,
And offered me as ransom for thy life,
Yet should'st thou die. Shoot at him all at once.

[*They shoot.*

So now he hangs like Bagdeth's governor,
Having as many bullets in his flesh
As there be breaches in her battered wall.
Go now, and bind the burghers hand and foot,
And cast them headlong in the city's lake.
Tartars and Persians shall inhabit there,
And to command the city, I will build
A lofty citadel that all Africa,
Which hath been subject to the Persian king,
Shall pay me tribute for in Babylon.

Tech. What shall be done with their wives and children, my lord?

Tamb. Techelles, drown them all, man, woman, and child.
Leave not a Babylonian in the town.

Tech. I will about it straight. Come, soldiers.

[*Exit with* Soldiers.

Tamb. Now, Casane, where's the Turkish Alcoran,
And all the heaps of superstitious books

Digitized by Google

Found in the temples of that Mahomet,
Whom I have thought a god? They shall be burnt.
Usum. Here they are, my lord.
Tamb. Well said; let there be a fire presently.
[*They light a fire.*
In vain, I see, men worship Mahomet:
My sword hath sent millions of Turks to hell,
Slain all his priests, his kinsmen, and his friends,
And yet I live untouched by Mahomet.
There is a God, full of revenging wrath,
From whom the thunder and the lightning breaks,
Whose scourge I am, and him will I obey:
So, Casane, fling them in the fire. [*They burn the books.*
Now, Mahomet, if thou have any power,
Come down thyself and work a miracle:
Thou art not worthy to be worshippèd,
That suffers flame of fire to burn the writ
Wherein the sum of thy religion rests.
Why send'st thou not a furious whirlwind down
To blow thy Alcoran up to thy throne,
Where men report thou sitt'st by God himself?
Or vengeance on the head of Tamburlaine
That shakes his sword against thy majesty,
And spurns the abstracts of thy foolish laws?
Well, soldiers, Mahomet remains in hell;
He cannot hear the voice of Tamburlaine;
Seek out another Godhead to adore,
The God that sits in Heaven, if any God;
For he is God alone, and none but he.

Re-enter TECHELLES

Tech. I have fulfilled your highness' will, my lord.
Thousands of men, drowned in Asphaltis' lake,
Have made the waters swell above the banks,
And fishes, fed by human carcasses,
Amazed, swim up and down upon the waves,

Digitized by Google

As when they swallow asafœtida,
Which makes them fleet aloft and gape for air.
Tamb. Well then, my friendly lords, what now remains,
But that we leave sufficient garrison,
And presently depart to Persia
To triumph after all our victories?
Ther. Ay, good my lord; let us in haste to Persia,
And let this captain be removed the walls
To some high hill about the city here,
Tamb. Let it be so; about it, soldiers;
But stay; I feel myself distempered suddenly.
Tech. What is it dares distemper Tamburlaine?
Tamb. Something, Techelles; but I know not what —
But forth, ye vassals! whatsoe'er it be,
Sickness or death can never conquer me. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II

Enter CALLAPINE, *the* KING *of* AMASIA, *a* Captain *and* Soldiers, *with drums and trumpets*

Call. King of Amasia, now our mighty host
Marcheth in Asia Major where the streams
Of Euphrates and Tigris swiftly run,
And here may we behold great Babylon
Circled about with Limnasphaltis' lake
Where Tamburlaine with all his army lies,
Which being faint and weary with the siege,
We may lie ready to encounter him
Before his host be full from Babylon,
And so revenge our latest grievous loss,
If God or Mahomet send any aid.
K. of Ama. Doubt not, my lord, but we shall conquer him.
The monster that hath drunk a sea of blood,
And yet gapes still for more to quench his thirst,
Our Turkish swords shall headlong send to hell,

Digitized by Google

And that vile carcass drawn by warlike kings
The fowls shall eat; for never sepulchre
Shall grace this base-born tyrant Tamburlaine.
Call. When I record my parents' slavish life,
Their cruel death, mine own captivity,
My viceroy's bondage under Tamburlaine,
Methinks I could sustain a thousand deaths
To be revenged of all his villainy.
Ah, sacred Mahomet! thou that hast seen
Millions of Turks perish by Tamburlaine,
Kingdoms made waste, brave cities sacked and burnt,
And but one host is left to honour thee,
Aid thy obedient servant, Callapine,
And make him after all these overthrows
To triumph over cursèd Tamburlaine.
K. of Ama. Fear not, my lord; I see great Mahomet
Clothèd in purple clouds, and on his head
A chaplet brighter than Apollo's crown,
Marching about the air with armèd men
To join with you against this Tamburlaine.
Capt. Renownèd general, mighty Callapine,
Though God himself and holy Mahomet
Should come in person to resist your power,
Yet might your mighty host encounter all,
And pull proud Tamburlaine upon his knees
To sue for mercy at your highness' feet.
Call. Captain, the force of Tamburlaine is great,
His fortune greater, and the victories
Wherewith he hath so sore dismayed the world
Are greatest to discourage all our drifts;
Yet when the pride of Cynthia is at full,
She wanes again, and so shall his, I hope;
For we have here the chief selected men
Of twenty several kingdoms at the least;
Nor ploughman, priest, nor merchant, stays at home;
All Turkey is in arms with Callapine;
And never will we sunder camps and arms

Digitized by Google

Before himself or his be conquerèd.
This is the time that must eternize me
For conquering the tyrant of the world.
Come, soldiers, let us lie in wait for him,
And if we find him absent from his camp,
Or that it be rejoined again at full,
Assail it and be sure of victory. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE III

Enter THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, *and* USUMCASANE

Ther. Weep, Heavens, and vanish into liquid tears!
Fall, stars that govern his nativity,
And summon all the shining lamps of Heaven
To cast their bootless fires to the earth,
And shed their feeble influence in the air;
Muffle your beauties with eternal clouds,
For Hell and Darkness pitch their pitchy tents,
And Death with armies of Cimmerian spirits
Gives battle 'gainst the heart of Tamburlaine!
Now in defiance of that wonted love
Your sacred virtues poured upon his throne
And made his state an honour to the Heavens,
These cowards invisible assail his soul,
And threaten conquest on our sovereign;
But if he die your glories are disgraced;
Earth droops and says that hell in Heaven is placed.

Tech. Oh, then, ye powers that sway eternal seats
And guide this massy substance of the earth,
If you retain desert of holiness
As your supreme estates instruct our thoughts,
Be not inconstant, careless of your fame,
Bear not the burthen of your enemies' joys
Triumphing in his fall whom you advanced,
But as his birth, life, health, and majesty
Were strangely blest and governèd by Heaven,

Digitized by Google

So honour, Heaven (till Heaven dissolvèd be,)
His birth, his life, his health, and majesty!
Usum. Blush, Heaven, to lose the honour of thy name!
To see thy footstool set upon thy head!
And let no baseness in thy haughty breast
Sustain a shame of such inexcellence,
To see the devils mount in angels' thrones,
And angels dive into the pools of hell!
And though they think their painful date is out,
And that their power is puissant as Jove's,
Which makes them manage arms against thy state,
Yet make them feel the strength of Tamburlaine,
(Thy instrument and note of majesty,)
Is greater far than they can thus subdue:
For if he die thy glory is disgraced;
Earth droops and says that hell in Heaven is placed.

Enter TAMBURLAINE *drawn in his chariot by the captive* Kings *as before;* AMYRAS, CELEBINUS, *and* Physicians

Tamb. What daring god torments my body thus,
And seeks to conquer mighty Tamburlaine?
Shall sickness prove me now to be a man,
That have been termed the terror of the world?
Techelles and the rest, come, take your swords,
And threaten him whose hand afflicts my soul.
Come, let us march against the powers of Heaven,
And set black streamers in the firmament,
To signify the slaughter of the gods.
Ah, friends, what shall I do? I cannot stand.
Come carry me to war against the gods
That thus envy the health of Tamburlaine.
Ther. Ah, good my lord, leave these impatient words,
Which add much danger to your malady.
Tamb. Why, shall I sit and languish in this pain?
No, strike the drums, and in revenge of this,
Come, let us charge our spears and pierce his breast,

Digitized by Google

Whose shoulders bear the axis of the world,
That, if I perish, Heaven and earth may fade.
Theridamas, haste to the court of Jove,
Will him to send Apollo hither straight,
To cure me, or I'll fetch him down myself.
Tech. Sit still, my gracious lord; this grief will cease,
And cannot last, it is so violent.
Tamb. Not last, Techelles? — No! for I shall die.
See, where my slave, the ugly monster, Death,
Shaking and quivering, pale and wan for fear,
Stands aiming at me with his murdering dart,
Who flies away at every glance I give,
And, when I look away, comes stealing on.
Villain, away, and hie thee to the field!
I and mine army come to load thy back
With souls of thousand mangled carcasses.
Look, where he goes; but see, he comes again
Because I stay: Techelles, let us march
And weary Death with bearing souls to hell.
1*st Phy.* Pleaseth your majesty to drink this potion,
Which will abate the fury of your fit,
And cause some milder spirits govern you.
Tamb. Tell me what think you of my sickness now?
1*st Phy.* I viewed your urine, and the hypostasis
Thick and obscure, doth make your danger great;
Your veins are full of accidental heat,
Whereby the moisture of your blood is dried.
The humidum and calor, which some hold
Is not a parcel of the elements,
But of a substance more divine and pure,
Is almost clean extinguishèd and spent;
Which, being the cause of life, imports your death:
Besides, my lord, this day is critical,
Dangerous to those whose crisis is as yours:
Your artiers, which alongst the veins convey
The lively spirits which the heart engenders,
Are parched and void of spirits, that the soul,

Digitized by Google

Wanting those organons by which it moves,
Cannot endure, by argument of art.
Yet, if your majesty may escape this day,
No doubt but you shall soon recover all.

Tamb. Then will I comfort all my vital parts,
And live, in spite of death, above a day. [*Alarms within.*

Enter Messenger

Mes. My lord, young Callapine, that lately fled from your majesty, hath now gathered a fresh army, and hearing your absence in the field, offers to set upon us presently.

Tamb. See, my physicians now, how Jove hath sent
A present medicine to recure my pain.
My looks shall make them fly, and might I follow,
There should not one of all the villain's power
Live to give offer of another fight.

Usum. I joy, my lord, your highness is so strong,
That can endure so well your royal presence,
Which only will dismay the enemy.

Tamb. I know it will, Casane. Draw, you slaves;
In spite of death, I will go show my face.

[*Alarums.* — *Exit* TAMBURLAINE *and the rest, with the exception of the* Physicians. *They all presently re-enter.*

Tamb. Thus are the villain cowards fled for fear,
Like summer's vapours vanished by the sun;
And could I but awhile pursue the field,
That Callapine should be my slave again.
But I perceive my martial strength is spent.
In vain I strive and rail against those powers,
That mean to invest me in a higher throne,
As much too high for this disdainful earth.
Give me a map; then let me see how much
Is left for me to conquer all the world,
That these, my boys, may finish all my wants.

[*One brings a map.*

Digitized by Google

Here I began to march towards Persia,
Along Armenia and the Caspian Sea,
And thence unto Bithynia, where I took
The Turk and his great Empress prisoners.
Thence marched I into Egypt and Arabia,
And here, not far from Alexandria,
Whereas the Terrene and the Red Sea meet,
Being distant less than full a hundred leagues,
I meant to cut a channel to them both,
That men might quickly sail to India.[n]
From thence to Nubia near Borno lake,
And so along the Æthiopian sea,
Cutting the Tropic line of Capricorn,
I conquered all as far as Zanzibar.
Then, by the northern part of Africa,
I came at last to Græcia, and from thence
To Asia, where I stay against my will;
Which is from Scythia, where I first began,
Backwards and forwards near five thousand leagues.
Look here, my boys; see what a world of ground
Lies westward from the midst of Cancer's line,
Unto the rising of this earthly globe;
Whereas the sun, declining from our sight,
Begins the day with our Antipodes!
And shall I die, and this unconquerèd?
Lo, here, my sons, are all the golden mines,
Inestimable drugs and precious stones,
More worth than Asia and the world beside;
And from the Antarctic Pole eastward behold
As much more land, which never was descried,
Wherein are rocks of pearl that shine as bright
As all the lamps that beautify the sky!
And shall I die, and this unconquerèd?
Here, lovely boys; what death forbids my life,
That let your lives command in spite of death.

Amy. Alas, my lord, how should our bleeding hearts,
Wounded and broken with your highness' grief,

Digitized by Google

Retain a thought of joy or spark of life?
Your soul gives essence to our wretched subjects,
Whose matter is incorporate in your flesh.
Cel. Your pains do pierce our souls; no hope survives,
For by your life we entertain our lives.
Tamb. But, sons, this subject, not of force enough
To hold the fiery spirit it contains,
Must part, imparting his impressions
By equal portions into both your breasts;
My flesh, divided in your precious shapes,
Shall still retain my spirit, though I die,
And live in all your seeds immortally.
Then now remove me, that I may resign
My place and proper title to my son.
First, take my scourge and my imperial crown,
And mount my royal chariot of estate,
That I may see thee crowned before I die.
Help me, my lords, to make my last remove.
[*They lift him from the chariot.*
Ther. A woeful change, my lord, that daunts our thoughts,
More than the ruin of our proper souls!
Tamb. Sit up, my son, and let me see how well
Thou wilt become thy father's majesty.
Amy. With what a flinty bosom should I joy
The breath of life and burthen of my soul,
If not resolved into resolvèd pains,
My body's mortifièd lineaments
Should exercise the motions of my heart,
Pierced with the joy of any dignity!
O father! if the unrelenting ears
Of Death and Hell be shut against my prayers,
And that the spiteful influence of Heaven,
Deny my soul fruition of her joy;
How should I step, or stir my hateful feet
Against the inward powers of my heart,

Digitized by Google

Leading a life that only strives to die,
And plead in vain unpleasing sovereignty[a]?
Tamb. Let not thy love exceed thine honour, son,
Nor bar thy mind that magnanimity
That nobly must admit necessity.
Sit up, my boy, and with those silken reins
Bridle the steelèd stomachs of those jades.
Ther. My lord, you must obey his majesty,
Since fate commands and proud necessity.
Amy. Heavens witness me with what a broken heart
And damnèd spirit I ascend this seat,
And send my soul, before my father die,
His anguish and his burning agony!
[*They crown* AMYRAS.
Tamb. Now fetch the hearse of fair Zenocrate;
Let it be placed by this my fatal chair,
And serve as parcel of my funeral.
Usum. Then feels your majesty no sovereign ease,
Nor may our hearts, all drowned in tears of blood,
Joy any hope of your recovery?
Tamb. Casane, no; the monarch of the earth,
And eyeless monster that torments my soul,
Cannot behold the tears ye shed for me,
And therefore still augments his cruelty.
Tech. Then let some God oppose his holy power
Against the wrath and tyranny of Death,
That his tear-thirsty and unquenchèd hate
May be upon himself reverberate!
[*They bring in the hearse of* ZENOCRATE.
Tamb. Now eyes enjoy your latest benefit,
And when my soul hath virtue of your sight,
Pierce through the coffin and the sheet of gold,
And glut your longings with a heaven of joy.
So reign, my son; scourge and control those slaves,
Guiding thy chariot with thy father's hand.
As precious is the charge thou undertakest
As that which Clymene's brainsick son did guide,

Digitized by Google

When wandering Phœbe's ivory cheeks were scorched,
And all the earth, like Ætna, breathing fire;
Be warned by him, then; learn with awful eye
To sway a throne as dangerous as his;
For if thy body thrive not full of thoughts
As pure and fiery as Phyteus' beams,
The nature of these proud rebelling jades
Will take occasion by the slenderest hair,
And draw thee piecemeal like Hippolitus,
Through rocks more steep and sharp than Caspian clifts.
The nature of thy chariot will not bear
A guide of baser temper than myself,
More than Heaven's coach the pride of Phaeton.
Farewell, my boys; my dearest friends farewell!
My body feels, my soul doth weep to see
Your sweet desires deprived my company,
For Tamburlaine, the scourge of God, must die.

[*He dies.*

Amy. Meet Heaven and Earth, and here let all things end,
For Earth hath spent the pride of all her fruit,
And Heaven consumed his choicest living fire.
Let Earth and Heaven his timeless death deplore,
For both their worths will equal him no more.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE TRAGICAL HISTORY OF DOCTOR FAUSTUS

Digitized by Google

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ

THE POPE.[a]
CARDINAL OF LORRAIN.
EMPEROR OF GERMANY.[a]
DUKE OF VANHOLT.
FAUSTUS.
VALDES, CORNELIUS, } Friends to FAUSTUS.
WAGNER, Servant to FAUSTUS.
Clown.
ROBIN.
RALPH.
Vintner, Horse-courser, Knight, Old Man, Scholars, Friars, and Attendants.

DUCHESS OF VANHOLT.

LUCIFER.
BELZEBUB.
MEPHISTOPHILES.
Good Angel.
Evil Angel.
The Seven Deadly Sins.[a]
Devils.
Spirits in the shape of ALEXANDER THE GREAT, of his Paramour, and of HELEN OF TROY.

Chorus.

Digitized by Google

THE TRAGICAL HISTORY OF DOCTOR FAUSTUS

Enter CHORUS

Chorus. Not marching now in fields of Trasymene,
Where Mars did mate[n] the Carthaginians;
Nor sporting in the dalliance of love,
In courts of kings[n] where state is overturned;
Nor in the pomp of proud audacious deeds,
Intends our Muse to vaunt his heavenly verse:
Only this, gentlemen — we must perform
The form[n] of Faustus' fortunes, good or bad;
To patient judgements we appeal our plaud,[n]
And speak for Faustus in his infancy.
Now is he born, his parents base of stock,
In Germany, within a town called Rhodes;
Of riper years to Wertenberg he went,
Whereas his kinsmen chiefly brought him up.
So soon he profits in divinity,
The fruitful plot of scholarism graced,
That shortly he was graced with doctor's name,
Excelling all whose sweet delight disputes
In heavenly matters of theology;
Till swollen with cunning of a self-conceit,
His waxen wings did mount above his reach,
And, melting, Heavens conspired his overthrow;
For, falling to a devilish exercise,
And glutted now with learning's golden gifts,
He surfeits upon cursèd necromancy.
Nothing so sweet as magic is to him,
Which he prefers before his chiefest bliss.
And this the man that in his study sits! [*Exit.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE I

FAUSTUS *discovered in his Study*[n]

Faust. Settle thy studies, Faustus, and begin
To sound the depth of that thou wilt profess;
Having commenced, be a divine in show,
Yet level at the end of every art,
And live and die in Aristotle's works.
Sweet Analytics, 'tis thou hast ravished me, [*Reads.*
Bene disserere est finis logices.
Is to dispute well logic's chiefest end?
Affords this art no greater miracle?
Then read no more, thou hast attained the end;
A greater subject fitteth Faustus' wit:
Bid *on cai me on* farewell; Galen come,
Seeing *Ubi desinit Philosophus ibi incipit Medicus;*
Be a physician, Faustus, heap up gold,
And be eternized for some wondrous cure. [*Reads.*
Summum bonum medicinæ sanitas,
The end of physic is our body's health.
Why, Faustus, hast thou not attained that end?
Is not thy common talk found aphorisms?
Are not thy bills hung up as monuments,
Whereby whole cities have escaped the plague,
And thousand desperate maladies been eased?
Yet art thou still but Faustus and a man.
Couldst thou make men to live eternally,
Or, being dead, raise them to life again,
Then this profession were to be esteemed.
Physic, farewell. — Where is Justinian?[n] [*Reads.*
Si una eademque res legatur duobus, alter rem, alter valorem rei, etc.
A pretty case of paltry legacies! [*Reads.*
Exhæreditare filium non potest pater nisi, etc.
Such is the subject of the Institute

Digitized by Google

And universal Body of the Law.
This study fits a mercenary drudge,
Who aims at nothing but external trash;
Too servile and illiberal for me.
When all is done divinity is best;
Jerome's Bible, Faustus, view it well. [*Reads.*
Stipendium peccati mors est. Ha! *Stipendium, etc.*
The reward of sin is death. That's hard. [*Reads.*
Si peccasse negamus fallimur et nulla est in nobis veritas.
If we say that we have no sin we deceive ourselves, and there's no truth in us. Why then, belike we must sin, and so consequently die.
Ay, we must die an everlasting death.
What doctrine call you this, *Che sera sera,*[a]
What will be, shall be? Divinity, adieu!
These metaphysics of magicians
And necromantic books are heavenly:
Lines, circles, scenes, letters, and characters:
Ay, these are those that Faustus most desires.
Oh, what a world of profit and delight,
Of power, of honour, of omnipotence
Is promised to the studious artisan!
All things that move between the quiet poles
Shall be at my command: emperors and kings
Are but obeyèd in their several provinces,
Nor can they raise the wind or rend the clouds;
But his dominion that exceeds in this
Stretcheth as far as doth the mind of man,
A sound magician is a mighty god:
Here, Faustus, tire thy brains to gain a deity.
Wagner!

Enter WAGNER

Commend me to my dearest friends,
The German Valdes and Cornelius;[n]
Request them earnestly to visit me.
Wag. I will, sir. [*Exit.*

Digitized by Google

Faust. Their conference will be a greater help to me
Than all my labours, plod I ne'er so fast.

Enter Good Angel *and* Evil Angel

G. Ang. O Faustus! lay that damnèd book aside,
And gaze not on it lest it tempt thy soul,
And heap God's heavy wrath upon thy head.
Read, read the Scriptures: that[n] is blasphemy.
E. Ang. Go forward, Faustus, in that famous art,
Wherein all Nature's treasure is contained:
Be thou on earth as Jove[n] is in the sky,
Lord and commander of these elements. [*Exeunt* Angels.
Faust. How am I glutted with conceit of this!
Shall I make spirits fetch me what I please,
Resolve me of all ambiguities,
Perform what desperate enterprise I will?
I'll have them fly to India for gold,
Ransack the ocean for orient pearl,
And search all corners of the new-found world
For pleasant fruits and princely delicates;
I'll have them read me strange philosophy
And tell the secrets of all foreign kings;
I'll have them wall all Germany with brass,
And make swift Rhine circle fair Wertenberg,
I'll have them fill the public schools[n] with silk,
Wherewith the students shall be bravely clad;
I'll levy soldiers with the coin they bring,
And chase the Prince of Parma[n] from our land,
And reign sole king of all the provinces;
Yea, stranger engines for the brunt of war
Than was the fiery keel at Antwerp's bridge,[n]
I'll make my servile spirits to invent.

Enter VALDES *and* CORNELIUS

Come, German Valdes and Cornelius,
And make me blest with your sage conference.

Digitized by Google

Valdes, sweet Valdes, and Cornelius,
Know that your words have won me at the last
To practise magic and concealèd arts:
Yet not your words only, but mine own fantasy
That will receive no object;[n] for my head
But ruminates on necromantic skill.
Philosophy is odious and obscure,
Both law and physic are for petty wits;
Divinity is basest of the three,
Unpleasant, harsh, contemptible, and vile:
'Tis magic, magic that hath ravished me.
Then, gentle friends, aid me in this attempt;
And I that have with concise syllogisms
Gravelled the pastors of the German church,
And made the flowering pride of Wertenberg
Swarm to my problems, as the infernal spirits
On sweet Musæus,[n] when he came to hell,
Will be as cunning as Agrippa was,
Whose shadows[n] made all Europe honour him.

Vald. Faustus, these books, thy wit, and our experience
Shall make all nations to canònize us.
As Indian Moors obey their Spanish lords,
So shall the spirits of every element
Be always serviceable to us three;
Like lions shall they guard us when we please;
Like Almain rutters with their horsemen's staves
Or Lapland giants,[n] trotting by our sides;
Sometimes like women or unwedded maids,
Shadowing more beauty in their airy brows
Than have the white breasts of the queen of love:
From Venice shall they drag huge argosies,
And from America the golden fleece
That yearly stuffs old Philip's treasury;
If learnèd Faustus will be resolute.

Faust. Valdes, as resolute am I in this
As thou to live; therefore object it not.

Digitized by Google

Corn. The miracles that magic will perform
Will make thee vow to study nothing else.
He that is grounded in astrology,
Enriched with tongues, well seen in minerals,
Hath all the principles magic doth require.
Then doubt not, Faustus, but to be renowned,
And more frequented for this mystery
Than heretofore the Delphian Oracle.
The spirits tell me they can dry the sea,
And fetch the treasure of all foreign wrecks,
Ay, all the wealth that our forefathers hid
Within the massy entrails of the earth;
Then tell me, Faustus, what shall we three want?

Faust. Nothing, Cornelius! Oh, this cheers my soul!
Come show me some demonstrations magical,
That I may conjure in some bushy grove,
And have these joys in full possession.

Vald. Then haste thee to some solitary grove,
And bear wise Bacon's and Albanus' works,
The Hebrew Psalter and New Testament;
And whatsoever else is requisite
We will inform thee ere our conference cease.

Corn. Valdes, first let him know the words of art;
And then, all other ceremonies learned,
Faustus may try his cunning by himself.

Vald. First I'll instruct thee in the rudiments,
And then wilt thou be perfecter than I.

Faust. Then come and dine with me, and after meat,
We'll canvass every quiddity thereof;
For ere I sleep I'll try what I can do:
This night I'll conjure tho' I die therefore. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE II[n]

Enter two Scholars

1st Schol. I wonder what's become of Faustus that was wont to make our schools ring with *sic probo?*

2nd Schol. That shall we know, for see here comes his boy.

Enter WAGNER

1st Schol. How now, sirrah! Where's thy master?

Wag. God in heaven knows!

2nd Schol. Why, dost not thou know?

Wag. Yes, I know. But that follows not.

1st Schol. Go to, sirrah! leave your jesting, and tell us where he is.

Wag. That follows not necessary by force of argument, that you, being licentiates, should stand upon: therefore acknowledge your error and be attentive.

2nd Schol. Why, didst thou not say thou knewest?

Wag. Have you any witness on't?

1st Schol. Yes, sirrah, I heard you.

Wag. Ask my fellow if I be a thief.

2nd Schol. Well, you will not tell us?

Wag. Yes, sir, I will tell you; yet if you were not dunces, you would never ask me such a question; for is not he *corpus naturale?* and is not that *mobile?* then wherefore should you ask me such a question? But that I am by nature phlegmatic, slow to wrath, and prone to lechery (to love, I would say), it were not for you to come within forty feet of the place of execution,[n] although I do not doubt to see you both hanged the next sessions. Thus having triumphed over you, I will set my countenance like a precisian, and begin to speak thus: Truly, my dear brethren, my master is within at dinner, with

Digitized by Google

Valdes and Cornelius, as this wine, if it could speak, would inform your worships; and so the Lord bless you, preserve you, and keep you, my dear brethren, my dear brethren. [*Exit.*

1st Schol. Nay, then, I fear he has fallen into that damned art, for which they two are infamous through the world.

2nd Schol. Were he a stranger, and not allied to me, yet should I grieve for him. But come, let us go and inform the rector, and see if he by his grave counsel can reclaim him.

1st Schol. Oh, but I fear me nothing can reclaim him.

2nd Schol. Yet let us try what we can do. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE III[a]

Enter FAUSTUS *to conjure*

Faust. Now that the gloomy shadow of the earth
Longing to view Orion's drizzling look,
Leaps from the antarctic world unto the sky,
And dims the welkin with her pitchy breath,
Faustus, begin thine incantations,
And try if devils will obey thy hest,
Seeing thou hast prayed and sacrificed to them.
Within this circle is Jehovah's name,
Forward and backward anagrammatized,
The breviated names of holy saints,
Figures of every adjunct to the Heavens,
And characters of signs and erring stars,
By which the spirits are enforced to rise:
Then fear not, Faustus, but be resolute,
And try the uttermost magic can perform.

Sint mihi Dei Acherontis propitii! Valeat numen triplex Jehovæ! Ignei, aerii, aquatani spiritus, salvete! Orientis princeps Belzebub, inferni ardentis monarcha, et Demogorgon, propitiamus vos, ut appareat et surgat

Digitized by Google

Mephistophilis. Quid tu moraris? per Jehovam, Gehen- [20
nam, et consecratam aquam quam nunc spargo, signumque crucis quod nunc facio, et per vota nostra, ipse nunc surgat nobis dicatus Mephistophilis!

Enter MEPHISTOPHILES

I charge thee to return and change thy shape;
Thou art too ugly to attend on me.
Go, and return an old Franciscan friar;
That holy shape becomes a devil best. [*Exit* MEPH.
I see there's virtue in my heavenly words;
Who would not be proficient in this art?
How pliant is this Mephistophiles, 30
Full of obedience and humility!
Such is the force of magic and my spells:
Now Faustus, thou art conjuror laureat,
That canst command great Mephistophiles:
Quin regis Mephistophilis fratris imagine.

Re-enter MEPHISTOPHILES *like a Franciscan Friar*

Meph. Now, Faustus, what would'st thou have me to do?

Faust. I charge thee wait upon me whilst I live,
To do whatever Faustus shall command,
Be it to make the moon drop from her sphere,
Or the ocean to overwhelm the world. 40

Meph. I am a servant to great Lucifer,
And may not follow thee without his leave:
No more than he commands must we perform.

Faust. Did not he charge thee to appear to me?

Meph. No, I came hither of mine own accord.

Faust. Did not my conjuring speeches raise thee? Speak.

Meph. That was the cause, but yet *per accidens;*
For when we hear one rack the name of God,

Digitized by Google

Abjure the Scriptures and his Saviour Christ,
We fly in hope to get his glorious soul;
Nor will we come, unless he use such means
Whereby he is in danger to be damned:
Therefore the shortest cut for conjuring
Is stoutly to abjure the Trinity,
And pray devoutly to the Prince of Hell.
Faust. So Faustus hath
Already done; and holds this principle,
There is no chief but only Belzebub,
To whom Faustus doth dedicate himself.
This word "damnation" terrifies not him,
For he confounds hell in Elysium;
His ghost be with the old philosophers!
But, leaving these vain trifles of men's souls,
Tell me what is that Lucifer thy lord?
Meph. Arch-regent and commander of all spirits.
Faust. Was not that Lucifer an angel once?
Meph. Yes, Faustus, and most dearly loved of God.
Faust. How comes it then that he is Prince of devils?
Meph. Oh, by aspiring pride and insolence;
For which God threw him from the face of Heaven.
Faust. And what are you that live with Lucifer?
Meph. Unhappy spirits that fell with Lucifer,
Conspired against our God with Lucifer,
And are for ever damned with Lucifer.
Faust. Where are you damned?
Meph. In hell.
Faust. How comes it then that thou art out of hell?
Meph. Why this is hell, nor am I out of it:
Think'st thou that I who saw the face of God,
And tasted the eternal joys of Heaven,
Am not tormented with ten thousand hells,
In being deprived of everlasting bliss?
O Faustus! leave these frivolous demands,
Which strike a terror to my fainting soul.
Faust. What, is great Mephistophiles so passionate

Digitized by Google

For being deprivèd of the joys of Heaven?
Learn thou of Faustus manly fortitude,
And scorn those joys thou never shalt possess.
Go bear these tidings to great Lucifer:
Seeing Faustus hath incurred eternal death
By desperate thoughts against Jove's deity,
Say he surrenders up to him his soul,
So he will spare him four and twenty years,
Letting him live in all voluptuousness;
Having thee ever to attend on me;
To give me whatsoever I shall ask,
To tell me whatsoever I demand,
To slay mine enemies, and aid my friends,
And always be obedient to my will.
Go and return to mighty Lucifer,
And meet me in my study at midnight,
And then resolve me of thy master's mind.

Meph. I will, Faustus. [*Exit.*

Faust. Had I as many souls as there be stars,
I'd give them all for Mephistophiles.
By him I'll be great Emperor of the world,
And make a bridge thorough the moving air,
To pass the ocean with a band of men:
I'll join the hills that bind the Afric shore,
And make that country continent to Spain,
And both contributory to my crown.
The Emperor shall not live but by my leave,
Nor any potentate of Germany.
Now that I have obtained what I desire,
I'll live in speculation of this art
Till Mephistophiles return again. [*Exit.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE IV[n]

Enter WAGNER *and* Clown

Wag. Sirrah, boy, come hither.

Clown. How, boy! Swowns, boy! I hope you have seen many boys with such pickadevaunts as I have; boy, quotha!

Wag. Tell me, sirrah, hast thou any comings in?

Clown. Ay, and goings out too. You may see else.

Wag. Alas, poor slave! see how poverty jesteth in his nakedness! the villain is bare and out of service, and so hungry that I know he would give his soul to the Devil for a shoulder of mutton, though 'twere blood-raw.

Clown. How? My soul to the Devil for a shoulder of mutton, though 'twere blood-raw! Not so, good friend. By'rlady, I had need have it well roasted and good sauce to it, if I pay so dear.

Wag. Well, wilt thou serve us, and I'll make thee go like *Qui mihi discipulus?*[n]

Clown. How, in verse?

Wag. No, sirrah; in beaten silk and stavesacre.

Clown. How, how, Knave's acre! Ay, I thought that was all the land his father left him. Do you hear? I would be sorry to rob you of your living.

Wag. Sirrah, I say in stavesacre.

Clown. Oho! Oho! Stavesacre! Why then belike if I were your man I should be full of vermin.

Wag. So thou shalt, whether thou beest with me or no. But, sirrah, leave your jesting, and bind yourself presently unto me for seven years, or I'll turn all the lice about thee into familiars, and they shall tear thee in pieces.

Clown. Do you hear, sir? You may save that labour: they are too familiar with me already: swowns! they are as bold with my flesh as if they had paid for their meat and drink.

Digitized by Google

Wag. Well, do you hear, sirrah? Hold, take these guilders. [*Gives money.*

Clown. Gridirons! what be they?

Wag. Why, French crowns.

Clown. Mass, but in the name of French crowns, a man were as good have as many English counters. And what should I do with these?

Wag. Why, now, sirrah, thou art at an hour's warning, whensoever and wheresoever the Devil shall fetch thee.

Clown. No, no. Here, take your gridirons again.

Wag. Truly I'll none of them.

Clown. Truly but you shall.

Wag. Bear witness I gave them him.

Clown. Bear witness I give them you again.

Wag. Well, I will cause two devils presently to fetch thee away — Baliol and Belcher.

Clown. Let your Baliol and your Belcher come here, and I'll knock them, they were never so knocked since they were devils! Say I should kill one of them, what would folks say? "Do you see yonder tall fellow in the round slop[n] — he has killed the devil." So I should be called Kill-devil all the parish over.

Enter two Devils: *the* Clown *runs up and down crying*

Wag. Baliol and Belcher! Spirits, away!

[*Exeunt* Devils.

Clown. What, are they gone? A vengeance on them, they have vile long nails! There was a he-devil, and a she-devil! I'll tell you how you shall know them; all he-devils has horns, and all she-devils has clifts and cloven feet.

Wag. Well, sirrah, follow me.

Clown. But, do you hear — if I should serve you, would you teach me to raise up Banios and Belcheos?

Wag. I will teach thee to turn thyself to anything; to a dog, or a cat, or a mouse, or a rat, or anything.

Digitized by Google

Clown. How! a Christian fellow to a dog or a cat, a mouse or a rat! No, no, sir. If you turn me into anything, let it be in the likeness of a little pretty frisking flea, that I may be here and there and everywhere. Oh, I'll tickle the pretty wenches' plackets; I'll be amongst them, i' faith.

Wag. Well, sirrah, come.

Clown. But, do you hear, Wagner?

Wag. How! Baliol and Belcher!

Clown. O Lord! I pray, sir, let Banio and Belcher go sleep.

Wag. Villain — call me Master Wagner, and let thy left eye be diametarily fixed upon my right heel, with *quasi vestigiis nostris insistere.* [*Exit.*

Clown. God forgive me, he speaks Dutch fustian. Well, I'll follow him: I'll serve him, that's flat. [*Exit.*

SCENE V

FAUSTUS *discovered in his Study*

Faust. Now, Faustus, must
Thou needs be damned, and canst thou not be saved:
What boots it then to think of God or Heaven?
Away with such vain fancies, and despair:
Despair in God, and trust in Belzebub;
Now go not backward: no, Faustus, be resolute:
Why waver'st thou? Oh, something soundeth in mine ears
"Abjure this magic, turn to God again!"
Ay, and Faustus will turn to God again.
To God? —— He loves thee not —
The God thou serv'st is thine own appetite,
Wherein is fixed the love of Belzebub;
To him I'll build an altar and a church,
And offer lukewarm blood of new-born babes.

Digitized by Google

Enter Good Angel *and* Evil Angel

G. Ang. Sweet Faustus, leave that execrable art.
Faust. Contrition, prayer, repentance! What of them?
G. Ang. Oh, they are means to bring thee unto Heaven.
E. Ang. Rather, illusions — fruits of lunacy,
That makes men foolish that do trust them most.
G. Ang. Sweet Faustus, think of Heaven, and heavenly things.
E. Ang. No, Faustus, think of honour and of wealth.
[*Exeunt* Angels.
Faust. Of wealth!
Why the signiory of Embden shall be mine.
When Mephistophiles shall stand by me,
What God can hurt thee? Faustus, thou art safe:
Cast no more doubts. Come, Mephistophiles,
And bring glad tidings from great Lucifer;
Is't not midnight? Come, Mephistophiles;
Veni, veni, Mephistophile!

Enter MEPHISTOPHILES

Now tell me, what says Lucifer, thy lord?
Meph. That I shall wait on Faustus whilst he lives,
So he will buy my service with his soul.
Faust. Already Faustus hath hazarded that for thee.
Meph. But, Faustus, thou must bequeath it solemnly,
And write a deed of gift with thine own blood,
For that security craves great Lucifer.
If thou deny it, I will back to hell.
Faust. Stay, Mephistophiles! and tell me what good
Will my soul do thy lord.
Meph. Enlarge his kingdom.
Faust. Is that the reason why he tempts us thus?
Meph. *Solamen miseris socios habuisse doloris.*[n]
Faust. Why, have you any pain that tortures others?

Digitized by Google

Meph. As great as have the human souls of men.
But tell me, Faustus, shall I have thy soul?
And I will be thy slave, and wait on thee,
And give thee more than thou hast wit to ask.
Faust. Ay, Mephistophiles, I give it thee.
Meph. Then, Faustus, stab thine arm courageously,
And bind thy soul that at some certain day
Great Lucifer may claim it as his own;
And then be thou as great as Lucifer.
Faust. [*stabbing his arm.*] Lo, Mephistophiles, for love of thee,
I cut mine arm, and with my proper blood
Assure my soul to be great Lucifer's,
Chief lord and regent of perpetual night!
View here the blood that trickles from mine arm,
And let it be propitious for my wish.
Meph. But, Faustus, thou must
Write it in manner of a deed of gift.
Faust. Ay, so I will. [*Writes.*] But, Mephistophiles,
My blood congeals, and I can write no more.
Meph. I'll fetch thee fire to dissolve it straight.
[*Exit.*
Faust. What might the staying of my blood portend?
Is it unwilling I should write this bill?
Why streams it not that I may write afresh?
Faustus gives to thee his soul. Ah, there it stayed.
Why should'st thou not? Is not thy soul thine own?
Then write again, *Faustus gives to thee his soul.*

Re-enter MEPHISTOPHILES *with a chafer of coals*

Meph. Here's fire. Come, Faustus, set it on.
Faust. So now the blood begins to clear again;
Now will I make an end immediately. [*Writes.*
Meph. Oh, what will not I do to obtain his soul.
[*Aside.*
Faust. Consummatum est: this bill is ended,

Digitized by Google

And Faustus hath bequeathed his soul to Lucifer.
But what is this inscription on mine arm?
Homo, fuge! Whither should I fly?
If unto God, he'll throw me down to hell.
My senses are deceived; here's nothing writ —
I see it plain; here in this place is writ
Homo, fuge! Yet shall not Faustus fly.
Meph. I'll fetch him somewhat to delight his mind.
[*Exit.*

Re-enter MEPHISTOPHILES *with* Devils, *who give crowns and rich apparel to* FAUSTUS, *dance, and depart*

Faust. Speak, Mephistophiles, what means this show?
Meph. Nothing, Faustus, but to delight thy mind withal,
And to show thee what magic can perform.
Faust. But may I raise up spirits when I please?
Meph. Ay, Faustus, and do greater things than these.
Faust. Then there's enough for a thousand souls.
Here, Mephistophiles, receive this scroll,
A deed of gift of body and of soul:
But yet conditionally that thou perform
All articles prescribed between us both.
Meph. Faustus, I swear by hell and Lucifer
To effect all promises between us made.
Faust. Then hear me read them: *On these conditions following. First, that Faustus may be a spirit in form and substance. Secondly, that Mephistophiles shall be his servant, and at his command. Thirdly, shall do for him and bring him whatsoever he desires. Fourthly, that he shall be in his chamber or house invisible. Lastly, that he shall appear to the said John Faustus, at all times, and in what form or shape soever he pleases. I, John Faustus, of Wertenberg, Doctor, by these presents do give both body and soul to Lucifer, Prince of the East, and his minister, Mephistophiles: and furthermore grant unto them, that*

Digitized by Google

twenty-four years being expired, the articles above written inviolate, full power to fetch or carry the said John Faustus, body and soul, flesh, blood, or goods, into their habitation wheresoever. By me, John Faustus.

Meph. Speak, Faustus, do you deliver this as your deed?

Faust. Ay, take it, and the Devil give thee good on't!

Meph. Now, Faustus, ask what thou wilt.

Faust. First will I question with thee about hell.
Tell me where is the place that men call hell?

Meph. Under the Heavens.

Faust. Ay, but whereabout?

Meph. Within the bowels of these elements,
Where we are tortured and remain for ever;
Hell hath no limits, nor is circumscribed
In one self place; for where we are is hell,
And where hell is there must we ever be:
And, to conclude, when all the world dissolves,
And every creature shall be purified,
All places shall be hell that is not Heaven.

Faust. Come, I think hell's a fable.

Meph. Ay, think so still, till experience change thy mind.

Faust. Why, think'st thou then that Faustus shall be damned?

Meph. Ay, of necessity, for here's the scroll
Wherein thou hast given thy soul to Lucifer.

Faust. Ay, and body too; but what of that?
Think'st thou that Faustus is so fond to imagine
That, after this life, there is any pain?
Tush; these are trifles, and mere old wives' tales.

Meph. But, Faustus, I am an instance to prove the contrary,
For I am damnèd, and am now in hell.

Faust. How! now in hell?
Nay, an this be hell, I'll willingly be damned here;

Digitized by Google

What? walking, disputing, etc.?
But, leaving off this, let me have a wife,
The fairest maid in Germany;
For I am wanton and lascivious,
And cannot live without a wife.

Meph. How — a wife?
I prithee, Faustus, talk not of a wife.

Faust. Nay, sweet Mephistophiles, fetch me one, for I will have one.

Meph. Well — thou wilt have one. Sit there till I come: I'll fetch thee a wife in the Devil's name. [*Exit.*

Re-enter MEPHISTOPHILES *with a* Devil *dressed like a woman, with fireworks*

Meph. Tell me, Faustus, how dost thou like thy wife?

Faust. A plague on her for a hot whore!

Meph. Tut, Faustus,
Marriage is but a ceremonial toy;
And if thou lovest me, think no more of it.
I'll cull thee out the fairest courtesans,
And bring them every morning to thy bed;
She whom thine eye shall like, thy heart shall have,
Be she as chaste as was Penelope,
As wise as Saba, or as beautiful
As was bright Lucifer before his fall.
Here, take this book, peruse it thoroughly: [*Gives a book.*
The iterating of these lines brings gold;
The framing of this circle on the ground
Brings whirlwinds, tempests, thunder and lightning;[n]
Pronounce this thrice devoutly to thyself,
And men in armour shall appear to thee,
Ready to execute what thou desir'st.

Faust. Thanks, Mephistophiles; yet fain would I have a book wherein I might behold all spells and incantations, that I might raise up spirits when I please.

Meph. Here they are, in this book. [*Turns to them.*

Digitized by Google

Faust. Now would I have a book where I might see all characters and planets[a] of the heavens, that I might know their motions and dispositions.

Meph. Here they are too. [*Turns to them.*

Faust. Nay, let me have one book more — and then I have done — wherein I might see all plants, herbs, and trees that grow upon the earth.

Meph. Here they be.

Faust. Oh, thou art deceived.

Meph. Tut, I warrant thee.[a] [*Turns to them. Exeunt.*

SCENE VI[a]

Enter FAUSTUS *and* MEPHISTOPHILES

Faust. When I behold the heavens, then I repent,
And curse thee, wicked Mephistophiles,
Because thou hast deprived me of those joys.

Meph. Why, Faustus,
Thinkest thou Heaven is such a glorious thing?
I tell thee 'tis not half so fair as thou,
Or any man that breathes on earth.

Faust. How prov'st thou that?

Meph. 'Twas made for man, therefore is man more excellent.

Faust. If it were made for man, 'twas made for me;
I will renounce this magic and repent.

Enter Good Angel *and* Evil Angel

G. Ang. Faustus, repent; yet God will pity thee.

E. Ang. Thou art a spirit; God cannot pity thee.

Faust. Who buzzeth in mine ears I am a spirit?
Be I a devil, yet God may pity me;
Ay, God will pity me if I repent.

E. Ang. Ay, but Faustus never shall repent.

[*Exeunt* Angels.

Digitized by Google

Faust. My heart's so hardened I cannot repent.
Scarce can I name salvation, faith, or Heaven,
But fearful echoes thunder in mine ears
"Faustus, thou art damned!" Then swords and knives,
Poison, gun, halters, and envenomed steel
Are laid before me to dispatch myself,[n]
And long ere this I should have slain myself,
Had not sweet pleasure conquered deep despair.
Have not I made blind Homer sing to me
Of Alexander's love and Œnon's death?
And hath not he that built the walls of Thebes[n]
With ravishing sound of his melodious harp,
Made music with my Mephistophiles?
Why should I die then, or basely despair?
I am resolved: Faustus shall ne'er repent —
Come, Mephistophiles, let us dispute again,
And argue of divine astrology.
Tell me, are there many heavens above the moon?
Are all celestial bodies but one globe,
As is the substance of this centric earth?[n]

Meph. As are the elements, such are the spheres
Mutually folded in each other's orb,
And, Faustus,
All jointly move upon one axle-tree
Whose terminine is termed the world's wide pole;
Nor are the names of Saturn, Mars, or Jupiter
Feigned, but are erring stars.

Faust. But, tell me, have they all one motion both, *situ et tempore?*[n]

Meph. All jointly move from east to west in twenty-four hours upon the poles of the world; but differ in their motion upon the poles of the zodiac.

Faust. Tush!
These slender trifles Wagner can decide;
Hath Mephistophiles no greater skill?
Who knows not the double motion of the planets?
The first is finished in a natural day;

Digitized by Google

The second thus: as Saturn in thirty years; Jupiter in twelve; Mars in four; the Sun, Venus, and Mercury in a year; the moon in twenty-eight days. Tush, these are freshmen's suppositions. But tell me, hath every sphere a dominion or *intelligentia?*

Meph. Ay.

Faust. How many heavens, or spheres, are there?

Meph. Nine: the seven planets, the firmament, and the empyreal heaven.

Faust. Well, resolve me in this question: Why have we not conjunctions, oppositions, aspects, eclipses, all at one time, but in some years we have more, in some less?

Meph. *Per inæqualem motum respectu totius.*

Faust. Well, I am answered. Tell me who made the world.

Meph. I will not.

Faust. Sweet Mephistophiles, tell me.

Meph. Move me not, for I will not tell thee.

Faust. Villain, have I not bound thee to tell me anything?

Meph. Ay, that is not against our kingdom; but this is. Think thou on hell, Faustus, for thou art damned.

Faust. Think, Faustus, upon God that made the world.

Meph. Remember this.[n] [*Exit.*

Faust. Ay, go, accursèd spirit, to ugly hell.
'Tis thou hast damned distressèd Faustus' soul.
Is't not too late?

Re-enter Good Angel *and* Evil Angel

E. Ang. Too late.

G. Ang. Never too late, if Faustus can repent.

E. Ang. If thou repent, devils shall tear thee in pieces.

G. Ang. Repent, and they shall never raze thy skin.
[*Exeunt* Angels.

Digitized by Google

Faust. Ah, Christ my Saviour,
Seek to save distressèd Faustus' soul!

Enter LUCIFER, BELZEBUB, *and* MEPHISTOPHILES

Luc. Christ cannot save thy soul, for he is just;
There's none but I have interest in the same.
Faust. Oh, who art thou that look'st so terrible?
Luc. I am Lucifer,
And this is my companion-prince in hell.
Faust. O Faustus! they are come to fetch away thy soul!
Luc. We come to tell thee thou dost injure us;
Thou talk'st of Christ contrary to thy promise;
Thou should'st not think of God: think of the Devil.
Faust. Nor will I henceforth: pardon me in this,
And Faustus vows never to look to Heaven,
Never to name God, or to pray to him,
To burn his Scriptures, slay his ministers,
And make my spirits pull his churches down.
Luc. Do so, and we will highly gratify thee. Faustus, we are come from hell to show thee some pastime: sit down, and thou shalt see all the Seven Deadly Sins appear in their proper shapes.
Faust. That sight will be as pleasing unto me,
As Paradise was to Adam the first day
Of his creation.
Luc. Talk not of Paradise nor creation, but mark this show: talk of the Devil, and nothing else: come away!

Enter the Seven Deadly Sins

Now, Faustus, examine them of their several names and dispositions.
Faust. What art thou — the first?
Pride. I am Pride. I disdain to have any parents. I am like to Ovid's flea:[n] I can creep into every corner of a wench; sometimes, like a periwig, I sit upon her

Digitized by Google

brow; or like a fan of feathers, I kiss her lips; indeed I do — what do I not? But, fie, what a scent is here! I'll not speak another word, except the ground were perfumed, and covered with cloth of arras.

Faust. What art thou — the second?

Covet. I am Covetousness, begotten of an old churl in an old leathern bag; and might I have my wish I would desire that this house and all the people in it were turned to gold, that I might lock you up in my good chest. Oh, my sweet gold!

Faust. What art thou — the third?

Wrath. I am Wrath. I had neither father nor mother: I leapt out of a lion's mouth when I was scarce half an hour old; and ever since I have run up and down the world with this case of rapiers, wounding myself when I had nobody to fight withal. I was born in hell; and look to it, for some of you shall be my father.

Faust. What art thou — the fourth?

Envy. I am Envy, begotten of a chimney-sweeper and an oyster-wife. I cannot read, and therefore wish all books were burnt. I am lean with seeing others eat. Oh, that there would come a famine through all the world, that all might die, and I live alone! then thou should'st see how fat I would be. But must thou sit and I stand! Come down with a vengeance!

Faust. Away, envious rascal! What art thou — the fifth?

Glut. Who, I, sir? I am Gluttony. My parents are all dead, and the devil a penny they have left me, but a bare pension, and that is thirty meals a day and ten bevers — a small trifle to suffice nature. Oh, I come of a royal parentage! My grandfather was a Gammon of Bacon, my grandmother was a Hogshead of Claret wine; my godfathers were these, Peter Pickle-herring, and Martin Martlemas-beef; Oh, but my godmother, she was a jolly gentlewoman, and well beloved in every good town and city; her name was Mistress Margery March-beer.

Digitized by Google

Now, Faustus, thou hast heard all my progeny, wilt thou bid me to supper?

Faust. No, I'll see thee hanged: thou wilt eat up all my victuals.

Glut. Then the Devil choke thee!

Faust. Choke thyself, glutton! Who art thou —the sixth?

Sloth. I am Sloth. I was begotten on a sunny bank, where I have lain ever since; and you have done me great injury to bring me from thence: let me be carried thither again by Gluttony and Lechery. I'll not speak another word for a king's ransom.

Faust. What are you, Mistress Minx, the seventh and last?

Lechery. Who, I, sir? I am one that loves an inch of raw mutton better than an ell of fried stock-fish; and the first letter of my name begins with L.

Luc. Away to hell, to hell! [*Exeunt the* Sins.] Now, Faustus, how dost thou like this?

Faust. Oh, this feeds my soul!

Luc. Tut, Faustus, in hell is all manner of delight.

Faust. Oh, might I see hell, and return again,
How happy were I then!

Luc. Thou shalt; I will send for thee at midnight.
In meantime take this book; peruse it throughly,
And thou shalt turn thyself into what shape thou wilt.

Faust. Great thanks, mighty Lucifer!
This will I keep as chary as my life.

Luc. Farewell, Faustus, and think on the Devil.

Faust. Farewell, great Lucifer!
Come, Mephistophiles.

[*Exeunt* LUCIFER *and* BELZEBUB.

[*Exeunt.*

Enter CHORUS

Chorus. Learned Faustus,
To know the secrets of astronomy,

Digitized by Google

Graven in the book of Jove's high firmament,
Did mount himself to scale Olympus' top,
Being seated in a chariot burning bright,
Drawn by the strength of yoky dragons' necks.
He now is gone to prove cosmography,
And, as I guess, will first arrive at Rome,
To see the Pope and manner of his court,
And take some part of holy Peter's feast,
That to this day[n] is highly solemnized. [*Exit.*

SCENE VII[n]

Enter FAUSTUS *and* MEPHISTOPHILES

Faust. Having now, my good Mephistophiles,
Passed with delight the stately town of Trier,
Environed round with airy mountain tops,
With walls of flint, and deep entrenchèd lakes,
Not to be won by any conquering prince;
From Paris next, coasting the realm of France,
We saw the river Maine fall into Rhine,
Whose banks are set with groves of fruitful vines;
Then up to Naples, rich Campania,
Whose buildings fair and gorgeous to the eye,
The streets straight forth, and paved with finest brick,
Quarter the town in four equivalents:
There saw we learnèd Maro's[n] golden tomb,
The way he cut, an English mile in length,
Thorough a rock of stone in one night's space;
From thence to Venice, Padua, and the rest,
In one of which a sumptuous temple[n] stands,
That threats the stars with her aspiring top.
Thus hitherto has Faustus spent his time:
But tell me, now, what resting-place is this?
Hast thou, as erst I did command,
Conducted me within the walls of Rome?

Digitized by Google

Meph. Faustus, I have; and because we will not be unprovided, I have taken up his Holiness' privy chamber for our use.

Faust. I hope his Holiness will bid us welcome.

Meph. Tut, 'tis no matter, man, we'll be bold with his good cheer.
And now, my Faustus, that thou may'st perceive
What Rome containeth to delight thee with,
Know that this city stands upon seven hills
That underprop the groundwork of the same:
Just through the midst runs flowing Tiber's stream,
With winding banks that cut it in two parts:
Over the which four stately bridges lean,
That make safe passage to each part of Rome:
Upon the bridge called Ponte Angelo
Erected is a castle passing strong,
Within whose walls such store of ordnance are,
And double cannons[n] formed of carvèd brass,
As match the days within one còmplete year;
Besides the gates, and high pyramides,
Which Julius Cæsar brought from Africa.[n]

Faust. Now, by the kingdoms of infernal rule,
Of Styx, of Acheron, and the fiery lake
Of ever-burning Phlegethon, I swear
That I do long to see the monuments
And situation of bright-splendent Rome:
Come, therefore, let's away.

Meph. Nay, Faustus, stay; I know you'd see the Pope,
And take some part of holy Peter's feast,
Where thou shalt see a troop of bald-pate friars,
Whose *summum bonum* is in belly-cheer.

Faust. Well, I'm content to compass them some sport,
And by their folly make us merriment.
Then charm me, Mephistophiles, that I
May be invisible, to do what I please
Unseen of any whilst I stay in Rome.

[MEPHISTOPHILES *charms him.*

Digitized by Google

Meph. So, Faustus, now
Do what thou wilt, thou shalt not be discerned.

Sound a sonnet. Enter the POPE *and the* CARDINAL *of* LORRAIN *to the banquet, with* Friars *attending*

Pope. My Lord of Lorrain, wilt please you draw near?

Faust. Fall to, and the devil choke you an you spare!

Pope. How now! Who's that which spake? — Friars, look about.

1*st Friar.* Here's nobody, if it like your Holiness.

Pope. My lord, here is a dainty dish was sent me from the Bishop of Milan.

Faust. I thank you, sir. [*Snatches the dish.*

Pope. How now! Who's that which snatched the meat from me? Will no man look? My Lord, this dish was sent me from the Cardinal of Florence.

Faust. You say true; I'll ha't. [*Snatches the dish.*

Pope. What, again! My lord, I'll drink to your grace.

Faust. I'll pledge your grace. [*Snatches the cup.*

C. of Lor. My lord, it may be some ghost newly crept out of purgatory, come to beg a pardon of your Holiness.

Pope. It may be so. Friars, prepare a dirge to lay the fury of this ghost. Once again, my lord, fall to.

[*The* POPE *crosses himself.*

Faust. What, are you crossing of yourself?
Well, use that trick no more I would advise you.

[*The* POPE *crosses himself again.*

Well, there's the second time. Aware the third,
I give you fair warning.

[*The* POPE *crosses himself again, and* FAUSTUS *hits him a box of the ear; and they all run away.*

Come on, Mephistophiles, what shall we do?

Meph. Nay, I know not. We shall be cursed with bell, book, and candle.

Digitized by Google

Faust. How! bell, book, and candle — candle, book, and bell,
Forward and backward to curse Faustus to hell!
Anon you shall hear a hog grunt, a calf bleat, an ass bray,
Because it is Saint Peter's holiday.

Re-enter the Friars *to sing the Dirge*

1*st Friar.* Come, brethren, let's about our business with good devotion.

They sing:

Cursed be he that stole away his Holiness' meat from the table! *Maledicat Dominus!*
Cursed be he that struck his Holiness a blow on the face! *Maledicat Dominus!*
Cursed be he that took Friar Sandelo a blow on the pate! *Maledicat Dominus!*
Cursed be he that disturbeth our holy dirge! *Maledicat Dominus!*
Cursed be he that took away his Holiness' wine! *Maledicat Dominus! Et omnes sancti! Amen!*

[MEPHISTOPHILES *and* FAUSTUS *beat the* Friars, *and fling fireworks among them: and so exeunt.*

Enter CHORUS

Chorus. When Faustus had with pleasure ta'en the view
Of rarest things, and royal courts of kings,
He stayed his course, and so returnèd home;
Where such as bear his absence but with grief,
I mean his friends, and near'st companions,
Did gratulate his safety with kind words,
And in their conference of what befell,
Touching his journey through the world and air,
They put forth questions of Astrology,

Digitized by Google

Which Faustus answered with such learnèd skill,
As they admired and wondered at his wit.
Now is his fame spread forth in every land;
Amongst the rest the Emperor is one,
Carolus the Fifth, at whose palace now
Faustus is feasted 'mongst his noblemen.
What there he did in trial of his art,
I leave untold — your eyes shall see performed. [*Exit.*

SCENE VIII[a]

Enter ROBIN *the Ostler with a book in his hand*

Robin. Oh, this is admirable! here I ha' stolen one of Doctor Faustus' conjuring books, and i' faith I mean to search some circles for my own use. Now will I make all the maidens in our parish dance at my pleasure, stark-naked before me; and so by that means I shall see more than e'er I felt or saw yet.

Enter RALPH *calling* ROBIN

Ralph. Robin, prithee, come away; there's a gentleman tarries to have his horse, and he would have his things rubbed and made clean: he keeps such a chafing with my mistress about it; and she has sent me to look thee out; prithee, come away.

Robin. Keep out, keep out, or else you are blown up; you are dismembered, Ralph: keep out, for I am about a roaring piece of work.

Ralph. Come, what dost thou with that same book? Thou can'st not read.

Robin. Yes, my master and mistress shall find that I can read, he for his forehead, she for her private study; she's born to bear with me, or else my art fails.

Ralph. Why, Robin, what book is that?

Robin. What book! Why, the most intolerable book

Digitized by Google

for conjuring that e'er was invented by any brimstone devil.

Ralph. Can'st thou conjure with it?

Robin. I can do all these things easily with it; first, I can make thee drunk with ippocras at any tabern in Europe for nothing; that's one of my conjuring works.

Ralph. Our Master Parson says that's nothing.

Robin. True, Ralph; and more, Ralph, if thou hast any mind to Nan Spit, our kitchen-maid, then turn her and wind her to thy own use as often as thou wilt, and at midnight.

Ralph. O brave Robin, shall I have Nan Spit, and to mine own use? On that condition I'd feed thy devil with horse-bread as long as he lives, of free cost.

Robin. No more, sweet Ralph: let's go and make clean our boots, which lie foul upon our hands, and then to our conjuring in the devil's name. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IX[n]

Enter ROBIN *and* RALPH *with a silver goblet*

Robin. Come, Ralph, did not I tell thee we were for ever made by this Doctor Faustus' book? *ecce signum*, here's a simple purchase[n] for horse-keepers; our horses shall eat no hay as long as this lasts.

Ralph. But, Robin, here comes the vintner.

Robin. Hush! I'll gull him supernaturally.

Enter Vintner

Drawer,[n] I hope all is paid: God be with you; come, Ralph.

Vint. Soft, sir; a word with you. I must yet have a goblet paid from you, ere you go.

Robin. I, a goblet, Ralph; I, a goblet! I scorn you, and you are but a, etc.[n] I, a goblet! search me.

Digitized by Google

Vint. I mean so, sir, with your favour. [*Searches him.*

Robin. How say you now?

Vint. I must say somewhat to your fellow. You, sir!

Ralph. Me, sir! me, sir! search your fill. [Vintner *searches him.*] Now, sir, you may be ashamed to burden honest men with a matter of truth.[n] 18

Vint. Well, t'one[n] of you hath this goblet about you.

Robin. You lie, drawer, 'tis afore me. [*Aside.*] — Sirrah you, I'll teach you to impeach honest men — stand by — I'll scour you for a goblet! — stand aside you had best, I charge you in the name of Belzebub. — Look to the goblet, Ralph. [*Aside to* RALPH.

Vint. What mean you, sirrah?

Robin. I'll tell you what I mean. [*Reads from a book.*] *Sanctobulorum Periphrasticon* — nay, I'll tickle you, Vintner. — Look to the goblet, Ralph. [*Aside to* RALPH.

[*Reads.*] *Polypragmos Belseborams framanto pacostiphos tostu, Mephistophilis, etc.* 30

Enter MEPHISTOPHILES, *sets squibs at their backs, and then exit. They run about*

Vint. O nomine Domini! what meanest thou, Robin? thou hast no goblet.

Ralph. Peccatum peccatorum! Here's thy goblet, good Vintner. [*Gives the goblet to* Vintner, *who exit.*

Robin. Misericordia pro nobis! What shall I do? Good Devil, forgive me now, and I'll never rob thy library more.

Re-enter MEPHISTOPHILES

Meph. Monarch of hell, under whose black survey
Great potentates do kneel with awful fear,
Upon whose altars thousand souls do lie, 40
How am I vexèd with these villains' charms?
From Constantinople am I hither come
Only for pleasure of these damnèd slaves.

Digitized by Google

Robin. How from Constantinople? You have had a great journey: will you take sixpence in your purse to pay for your supper, and begone?

Meph. Well, villains, for your presumption, I transform thee into an ape, and thee into a dog; and so begone. [*Exit.*

Robin. How, into an ape; that's brave! I'll have fine sport with the boys. I'll get nuts and apples enow.

Ralph. And I must be a dog.

Robin. I'faith thy head will never be out of the pottage pot. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE X[a]

Enter EMPEROR, FAUSTUS, *and a* Knight *with* Attendants

Emp. Master Doctor Faustus, I have heard strange report of thy knowledge in the black art, how that none in my empire nor in the whole world can compare with thee for the rare effects of magic: they say thou hast a familiar spirit, by whom thou canst accomplish what thou list. This therefore is my request, that thou let me see some proof of thy skill, that mine eyes may be witnesses to confirm what mine ears have heard reported: and here I swear to thee by the honour of mine imperial crown, that, whatever thou doest, thou shalt be no ways prejudiced or endamaged.

Knight. I'faith he looks much like a conjuror. [*Aside.*

Faust. My gracious sovereign, though I must confess myself far inferior to the report men have published, and nothing answerable to the honour of your imperial majesty, yet for that love and duty binds me thereunto, I am content to do whatsoever your majesty shall command me.

Emp. Then, Doctor Faustus, mark what I shall say. As I was sometime solitary set

Digitized by Google

Within my closet, sundry thoughts arose
About the honour of mine ancestors,
How they had won by prowess such exploits,
Got such riches, subdued so many kingdoms
As we that do succeed, or they that shall
Hereafter possess our throne, shall
(I fear me) ne'er attain to that degree
Of high renown and great authority;
Amongst which kings is Alexander the Great,
Chief spectacle of the world's pre-eminence,
The bright shining of whose glorious acts
Lightens the world with his reflecting beams,
As when I hear but motion made of him
It grieves my soul I never saw the man.
If therefore thou by cunning of thine art
Canst raise this man from hollow vaults below,
Where lies entombed this famous conqueror,
And bring with him his beauteous paramour,
Both in their right shapes, gesture, and attire
They used to wear during their time of life,
Thou shalt both satisfy my just desire,
And give me cause to praise thee whilst I live.

Faust. My gracious lord, I am ready to accomplish your request so far forth[n] as by art, and power of my spirit, I am able to perform.

Knight. I'faith that's just nothing at all. [*Aside.*

Faust. But, if it like your grace, it is not in my ability to present before your eyes the true substantial bodies of those two deceased princes, which long since are consumed to dust.

Knight. Ay, marry, Master Doctor, now there's a sign of grace in you, when you will confess the truth. [*Aside.*

Faust. But such spirits as can lively resemble Alexander and his paramour shall appear before your grace in that manner that they both lived in, in their most flourishing estate; which I doubt not shall sufficiently content your imperial majesty.

Digitized by Google

Emp. Go to, Master Doctor, let me see them presently.

Knight. Do you hear, Master Doctor? You bring Alexander and his paramour before the Emperor! 61

Faust. How then, sir?

Knight. I'faith that's as true as Diana turned me to a stag!

Faust. No, sir, but when Actæon died, he left the horns for you. Mephistophiles, begone. [*Exit* MEPHISTO.

Knight. Nay, an you go to conjuring, I'll begone. [*Exit.*

Faust. I'll meet with you anon for interrupting me so. Here they are, my gracious lord.

Re-enter MEPHISTOPHILES *with* Spirits *in the shape of* ALEXANDER *and his* Paramour

Emp. Master Doctor, I heard this lady while she lived had a wart or mole in her neck: how shall I know whether it be so or no? 72

Faust. Your highness may boldly go and see.

Emp. Sure these are no spirits, but the true substantial bodies of those two deceased princes. [*Exeunt* Spirits.

Faust. Will't please your highness now to send for the knight that was so pleasant with me here of late?

Emp. One of you call him forth! [*Exit* Attendant.

Re-enter the Knight *with a pair of horns on his head*

How now, sir knight! why I had thought thou had'st been a bachelor, but now I see thou hast a wife, that not only gives thee horns, but makes thee wear them. Feel on thy head. 82

Knight. Thou damnèd wretch and execrable dog,
Bred in the concave of some monstrous rock,
How darest thou thus abuse a gentleman?
Villain, I say, undo what thou hast done!

Digitized by Google

Faust. Oh, not so fast, sir; there's no haste; but, good, are you remembered how you crossed me in my conference with the Emperor? I think I have met with you for it.

Emp. Good Master Doctor, at my entreaty release him: he hath done penance sufficient.

Faust. My gracious lord, not so much for the injury he offered me here in your presence, as to delight you with some mirth, hath Faustus worthily requited this injurious knight: which, being all I desire, I am content to release him of his horns: and, sir knight, hereafter speak well of scholars. Mephistophiles, transform him straight. [MEPHISTOPHILES *removes the horns.*] Now, my good lord, having done my duty I humbly take my leave.

Emp. Farewell, Master Doctor; yet, ere you go, Expect from me a bounteous reward. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE XI[n]

Enter FAUSTUS *and* MEPHISTOPHILES

Faust. Now, Mephistophiles, the restless course
That Time doth run with calm and silent foot,
Shortening my days and thread of vital life,
Calls for the payment of my latest years:
Therefore, sweet Mephistophiles, let us
Make haste to Wertenberg.

Meph. What, will you go on horse-back or on foot?

Faust. Nay, till I'm past this fair and pleasant green, I'll walk on foot.

Enter a Horse-courser

Horse-c. I have been all this day seeking one Master Fustian: mass, see where he is! God save you, Master Doctor!

Faust. What, horse-courser! You are well met.

Digitized by Google

Horse-c. Do you hear, sir? I have brought you forty dollars for your horse.

Faust. I cannot sell him so: if thou likest him for fifty, take him.

Horse-c. Alas, sir, I have no more. — I pray you speak for me.

Meph. I pray you let him have him: he is an honest fellow, and he has a great charge, neither wife nor child.

Faust. Well, come, give me your money. [Horse-courser *gives* FAUSTUS *the money.*] My boy will deliver him to you. But I must tell you one thing before you have him; ride him not into the water at any hand.[n]

Horse-c. Why, sir, will he not drink of all waters?

Faust. Oh, yes, he will drink of all waters, but ride him not into the water: ride him over hedge or ditch, or where thou wilt, but not into the water.

Horse-c. Well, sir. — Now am I made man[n] for ever: I'll not leave my horse for twice forty: if he had but the quality of hey-ding-ding, hey-ding-ding,[n] I'd make a brave living on him: he has a buttock as slick as an eel. [*Aside.*] Well, God b' wi' ye, sir, your boy will deliver him me: but hark you, sir; if my horse be sick or ill at ease, if I bring his water to you, you'll tell me what it is.

Faust. Away, you villain; what, dost think I am a horse-doctor? [*Exit* Horse-courser.

What art thou, Faustus, but a man condemned to die?
Thy fatal time[n] doth draw to final end;
Despair doth drive distrust unto my thoughts:
Confound these passions with a quiet sleep:
Tush, Christ did call the thief upon the cross;
Then rest thee, Faustus, quiet in conceit.

[*Sleeps in his chair.*

Re-enter Horse-courser, *all wet, crying*

Horse-c. Alas, alas! Doctor Fustian quotha? mass, Doctor Lopus[n] was never such a doctor: has given me

Digitized by Google

a purgation has purged me of forty dollars; I shall never see them more. But yet, like an ass as I was, I would not be ruled by him, for he bade me I should ride him into no water: now I, thinking my horse had had some [50 rare quality that he would not have had me known of, I, like a venturous youth, rid him into the deep pond at the town's end. I was no sooner in the middle of the pond, but my horse vanished away, and I sat upon a bottle of hay, never so near drowning in my life. But I'll seek out my Doctor, and have my forty dollars again, or I'll make it the dearest horse!" — Oh, yonder is his snipper-snapper. — Do you hear? you hey-pass, where's your master?

Meph. Why, sir, what would you? You cannot speak with him. 61

Horse-c. But I will speak with him.

Meph. Why, he's fast asleep. Come some other time.

Horse-c. I'll speak with him now, or I'll break his glass windows about his ears.

Meph. I tell thee he has not slept this eight nights.

Horse-c. An he have not slept this eight weeks I'll speak with him.

Meph. See where he is, fast asleep.

Horse-c. Ay, this is he. God save you, Master Doctor, Master Doctor, Master Doctor Fustian! — Forty dollars, forty dollars for a bottle of hay! 72

Meph. Why, thou seest he hears thee not.

Horse-c. So-ho, ho! — so-ho, ho! [*Hollas in his ear.*] No, will you not wake? I'll make you wake ere I go. [*Pulls* FAUSTUS *by the leg, and pulls it away.*] Alas, I am undone! What shall I do?

Faust. Oh, my leg, my leg! Help, Mephistophiles! call the officers. My leg, my leg!

Meph. Come, villain, to the constable. 80

Horse-c. O lord, sir, let me go, and I'll give you forty dollars more.

Meph. Where be they?

Digitized by Google

Horse-c. I have none about me. Come to my ostry and I'll give them you.

Meph. Begone quickly. [Horse-courser *runs away.*

Faust. What, is he gone? Farewell he! Faustus has his leg again, and the horse-courser, I take it, a bottle of hay for his labour. Well, this trick shall cost him forty dollars more.

Enter WAGNER

How now, Wagner, what's the news with thee?

Wag. Sir, the Duke of Vanholt doth earnestly entreat your company.

Faust. The Duke of Vanholt! an honourable gentleman, to whom I must be no niggard of my cunning. Come, Mephistophiles, let's away to him. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE XII[a]

Enter the DUKE *of* VANHOLT, *the* DUCHESS, FAUSTUS, *and* MEPHISTOPHILES

Duke. Believe me, Master Doctor, this merriment hath much pleased me.

Faust. My gracious lord, I am glad it contents you so well. — But it may be, madam, you take no delight in this. I have heard that great-bellied women do long for some dainties or other: what is it, madam? tell me, and you shall have it.

Duchess. Thanks, good Master Doctor; and for I see your courteous intent to pleasure me, I will not hide from you the thing my heart desires; and were it now summer, as it is January and the dead time of the winter, I would desire no better meat than a dish of ripe grapes.

Faust. Alas, madam, that's nothing! Mephistophiles, begone. [*Exit* MEPHISTOPHILES.] Were it a greater thing than this, so it would content you, you should have it.

Digitized by Google

Re-enter MEPHISTOPHILES *with grapes*

Here they be, madam; wilt please you taste on them?

Duke. Believe me, Master Doctor, this makes me wonder above the rest, that being in the dead time of winter, and in the month of January, how you should come by these grapes.

Faust. If it like your grace, the year is divided into two circles over the whole world, that, when it is here winter with us, in the contrary circle it is summer with them, as in India, Saba, and farther countries in the East; and by means of a swift spirit that I have I had them brought hither, as you see. — How do you like them, madam; be they good?

Duchess. Believe me, Master Doctor, they be the best grapes that e'er I tasted in my life before.

Faust. I am glad they content you so, madam.

Duke. Come, madam, let us in, where you must well reward this learned man for the great kindness he hath showed to you.

Duchess. And so I will, my lord; and, whilst I live, rest beholding for this courtesy.

Faust. I humbly thank your grace.

Duke. Come, Master Doctor, follow us and receive your reward. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE XIII[a]

Enter WAGNER

Wag. I think my master shortly means to die,
For he hath given to me all his goods:
And yet, methinks, if that death were so near,
He would not banquet, and carouse and swill
Amongst the students, as even now he doth,
Who are at supper with such belly-cheer
As Wagner ne'er beheld in all his life.
See where they come! belike the feast is ended.

Digitized by Google

Enter FAUSTUS, *with two or three* Scholars *and* MEPHISTOPHILES

1st Schol. Master Doctor Faustus, since our conference about fair ladies, which was the beautifullest in all the world, we have determined with ourselves that Helen of Greece was the admirablest lady that ever lived: therefore, Master Doctor, if you will do us that favour, as to let us see that peerless dame of Greece, whom all the world admires for majesty, we should think ourselves much beholding unto you.

Faust. Gentlemen,
For that I know your friendship is unfeigned,
And Faustus' custom is not to deny
The just requests of those that wish him well,
You shall behold that peerless dame of Greece,
No otherways for pomp and majesty,
Than when Sir Paris crossed the seas with her,
And brought the spoils to rich Dardania.
Be silent, then, for danger is in words.

[*Music sounds, and* HELEN *passeth over the stage.*

2nd Schol. Too simple is my wit to tell her praise,
Whom all the world admires for majesty.

3rd Schol. No marvel though the angry Greeks pursued
With ten years' war the rape of such a queen,
Whose heavenly beauty passeth all compare.

1st Schol. Since we have seen the pride of Nature's works,
And only paragon of excellence,
Let us depart; and for this glorious deed
Happy and blest be Faustus evermore.

Faust. Gentlemen, farewell — the same I wish to you. [*Exeunt* Scholars *and* WAGNER.

Enter an Old Man

Old Man. Ah, Doctor Faustus, that I might prevail
To guide thy steps unto the way of life,

Digitized by Google

By which sweet path thou may'st attain the goal
That shall conduct thee to celestial rest!
Break heart, drop blood, and mingle it with tears,
Tears falling from repentant heaviness
Of thy most vile and loathsome filthiness,
The stench whereof corrupts the inward soul
With such flagitious crimes of heinous sins
As no commiseration may expel,
But mercy, Faustus, of thy Saviour sweet,
Whose blood alone must wash away thy guilt.

Faust. Where art thou, Faustus? wretch, what hast thou done?

Damned art thou, Faustus, damned; despair and die!
Hell calls for right, and with a roaring voice
Says "Faustus! come! thine hour is almost come!"
And Faustus now will come to do thee right.[n]

[MEPHISTOPHILES *gives him a dagger.*[n]

Old Man. Ah stay, good Faustus, stay thy desperate steps!

I see an angel hovers o'er thy head,
And, with a vial full of precious grace,
Offers to pour the same into thy soul:
Then call for mercy, and avoid despair.

Faust. Ah, my sweet friend, I feel
Thy words do comfort my distressèd soul.
Leave me a while to ponder on my sins.

Old Man. I go, sweet Faustus, but with heavy cheer,
Fearing the ruin of thy hopeless soul. [*Exit.*

Faust. Accursèd Faustus, where is mercy now?
I do repent; and yet I do despair;
Hell strives with grace for conquest in my breast:
What shall I do to shun the snares of death?

Meph. Thou traitor, Faustus, I arrest thy soul
For disobedience to my sovereign lord;
Revolt, or I'll in piecemeal tear thy flesh.

Faust. Sweet Mephistophiles, entreat thy lord
To pardon my unjust presumption.

Digitized by Google

And with my blood again I will confirm
My former vow I made to Lucifer.
Meph. Do it then quickly, with unfeignèd heart,
Lest greater danger do attend thy drift.
[FAUSTUS *stabs his arm and writes on a paper with his blood.*[n]
Faust. Torment, sweet friend, that base and crookèd age,
That durst dissuade me from thy Lucifer,
With greatest torments that our hell affords.
Meph. His faith is great: I cannot touch his soul;
But what I may afflict his body with
I will attempt, which is but little worth.
Faust. One thing, good servant, let me crave of thee,
To glut the longing of my heart's desire —
That I might have unto my paramour
That heavenly Helen, which I saw of late,
Whose sweet embracings may extinguish clean
These thoughts that do dissuade me from my vow,
And keep mine oath I made to Lucifer.
Meph. Faustus, this or what else thou shalt desire
Shall be performed in twinkling of an eye.

Re-enter HELEN

Faust. Was this the face that launched a thousand ships
And burnt the topless towers of Ilium?
Sweet Helen, make me immortal with a kiss. [*Kisses her.*
Her lips suck forth my soul; see where it flies! —
Come, Helen, come, give me my soul again.
Here will I dwell, for Heaven is in these lips,
And all is dross that is not Helena.
I will be Paris, and for love of thee,
Instead of Troy, shall Wertenberg be sacked:
And I will combat with weak Menelaus,

Digitized by Google

And wear thy colours on my plumèd crest:
Yea, I will wound Achilles in the heel,
And then return to Helen for a kiss.
Oh, thou art fairer than the evening air
Clad in the beauty of a thousand stars;
Brighter art thou than flaming Jupiter
When he appeared to hapless Semele:
More lovely than the monarch of the sky
In wanton Arethusa's azured arms:[n]
And none but thou shalt be my paramour! [*Exeunt.*

Enter the Old Man

Old Man. Accursèd Faustus, miserable man,
That from thy soul exclud'st the grace of Heaven,
And fly'st the throne of his tribunal seat!

Enter Devils

Satan begins to sift[n] me with his pride:
As in this furnace[n] God shall try my faith,
My faith, vile hell, shall triumph over thee.
Ambitious fiends! see how the heavens smile
At your repulse, and laugh your state to scorn!
Hence, hell! for hence I fly unto my God.
[*Exeunt on one side* Devils — *on the other,* Old Man.

SCENE XIV[n]

Enter FAUSTUS *with* Scholars

Faust. Ah, gentlemen!

1st Schol. What ails Faustus?

Faust. Ah, my sweet chamber-fellow, had I lived with thee, then had I lived still! but now I die eternally. Look, comes he not, comes he not?

2nd Schol. What means Faustus?

Digitized by Google

3rd Schol. Belike he is grown into some sickness by being over solitary.

1st Schol. If it be so, we'll have physicians to cure him. 'Tis but a surfeit. Never fear, man.

Faust. A surfeit of deadly sin that hath damned both body and soul.

2nd Schol. Yet, Faustus, look up to heaven: remember God's mercies are infinite.

Faust. But Faustus' offences can never be pardoned: the serpent that tempted Eve may be saved, but not Faustus. Ah, gentlemen, hear me with patience, and tremble not at my speeches! Though my heart pants and quivers to remember that I have been a student here these thirty years, oh, would I had never seen Wertenberg, never read book! and what wonders I have done, all Germany can witness, yea, all the world: for which Faustus hath lost both Germany and the world, yea Heaven itself, Heaven, the seat of God, the throne of the blessed, the kingdom of joy; and must remain in hell for ever, hell, ah, hell, for ever! Sweet friends! what shall become of Faustus being in hell for ever?

3rd Schol. Yet, Faustus, call on God.

Faust. On God, whom Faustus hath abjured! on God, whom Faustus hath blasphemed! Ah, my God, I would weep, but the Devil draws in my tears. Gush forth blood instead of tears! Yea, life and soul! Oh, he stays my tongue! I would lift up my hands, but see, they hold them, they hold them!

All. Who, Faustus?

Faust. Lucifer and Mephistophiles. Ah, gentlemen, I gave them my soul for my cunning!

All. God forbid!

Faust. God forbade it indeed; but Faustus hath done it: for vain pleasure of twenty-four years hath Faustus lost eternal joy and felicity. I writ them a bill with mine own blood: the date is expired; the time will come, and he will fetch me.

Digitized by Google

1st Schol. Why did not Faustus tell us of this before, that divines might have prayed for thee?

Faust. Oft have I thought to have done so: but the Devil threatened to tear me in pieces if I named God; to fetch both body and soul if I once gave ear to divinity: and now 'tis too late. Gentlemen, away! lest you perish with me.

2nd Schol. Oh, what shall we do to save Faustus?

Faust. Talk not of me, but save yourselves, and depart.

3rd Schol. God will strengthen me. I will stay with Faustus.

1st Schol. Tempt not God, sweet friend; but let us into the next room, and there pray for him.

Faust. Ay, pray for me, pray for me! and what noise soever ye hear, come not unto me, for nothing can rescue me.

2nd Schol., Pray thou, and we will pray that God may have mercy upon thee.

Faust. Gentlemen, farewell: if I live till morning I'll visit you: if not —— Faustus is gone to hell.

All. Faustus, farewell.

[*Exeunt* Scholars. *The clock strikes eleven.*

Faust. Ah, Faustus,
Now hast thou but one bare hour to live,
And then thou must be damned perpetually!
Stand still, you ever-moving spheres of Heaven,
That time may cease, and midnight never come;
Fair Nature's eye, rise, rise again and make
Perpetual day; or let this hour be but
A year, a month, a week, a natural day,
That Faustus may repent and save his soul!
O lente, lente, currite noctis equi![n]
The stars move still, time runs, the clock will strike,
The Devil will come, and Faustus must be damned.
Oh, I'll leap up to my God! Who pulls me down?
See, see where Christ's blood streams in the firmament!
One drop would save my soul — half a drop: ah, my Christ!

Digitized by Google

Ah, rend not my heart for naming of my Christ!
Yet will I call on him: Oh, spare me, Lucifer! —
Where is it now? 'tis gone; and see where God
Stretcheth out his arm, and bends his ireful brows!
Mountain and hills come, come and fall on me,
And hide me from the heavy wrath of God![n]
No! no!
Then will I headlong run into the earth;
Earth gape! Oh, no, it will not harbour me!
You stars that reigned at my nativity,
Whose influence hath allotted death and hell,
Now draw up Faustus like a foggy mist
Into the entrails of yon labouring clouds,
That when they vomit forth into the air,
My limbs may issue from their smoky mouths,
So that my soul may but ascend to Heaven.
[*The clock strikes the half hour.*
Ah, half the hour is past! 'twill all be past anon!
O God!
If thou wilt not have mercy on my soul,
Yet for Christ's sake whose blood hath ransomed me,
Impose some end to my incessant pain;
Let Faustus live in hell a thousand years —
A hundred thousand, and — at last — be saved!
Oh, no end is limited to damnèd souls!
Why wert thou not a creature wanting soul?
Or why is this immortal that thou hast?
Ah, Pythagoras' metempsychosis![n] were that true,
This soul should fly from me, and I be changed
Unto some brutish beast! all beasts are happy,
For, when they die,
Their souls are soon dissolved in elements;
But mine must live, still to be plagued in hell.
Curst be the parents that engendered me!
No, Faustus: curse thyself: curse Lucifer
That hath deprived thee of the joys of Heaven.
[*The clock strikes twelve.*

Digitized by Google

Oh, it strikes, it strikes! Now, body, turn to air,
Or Lucifer will bear thee quick to hell.
[*Thunder and lightning.*
O soul, be changed into little water-drops,
And fall into the ocean — ne'er be found. [*Enter* Devils.
My God! my God! look not so fierce on me!
Adders and serpents, let me breathe awhile!
Ugly hell, gape not! come not, Lucifer!
I'll burn my books! — Ah Mephistophiles!
[*Exeunt* Devils *with* FAUSTUS.

Enter CHORUS[n]

Cho. Cut is the branch that might have grown full straight,
And burnèd is Apollo's laurel bough,
That sometime grew within this learnèd man.
Faustus is gone; regard his hellish fall,
Whose fiendful fortune may exhort the wise
Only to wonder at[n] unlawful things,
Whose deepness doth entice such forward wits
To practise more than heavenly power permits. [*Exit.*

Terminat hora diem; terminat auctor opus.[n]

Digitized by Google

THE JEW OF MALTA

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE JEW OF MALTA

ACT THE FIRST

SCENE I

BARABAS *discovered in his counting-house, with heaps of gold before him*

Bar. So that of thus much that return was made:
And of the third part of the Persian ships,
There was the venture summed and satisfied.
As for those Sabans,[n] and the men of Uz,
That bought my Spanish oils and wines of Greece,
Here have I purst their paltry silverlings.
Fie; what a trouble 'tis to count this trash.
Well fare the Arabians, who so richly pay
The things they traffic for with wedge of gold,
Whereof a man may easily in a day
Tell that which may maintain him all his life.
The needy groom that never fingered groat,
Would make a miracle of thus much coin:
But he whose steel-barred coffers are crammed full
And all his lifetime hath been tired,
Wearying his fingers' ends with telling it,
Would in his age be loath to labour so,
And for a pound to sweat himself to death.
Give me the merchants of the Indian mines,
That trade in metal of the purest mould;
The wealthy Moor, that in the eastern rocks
Without control can pick his riches up,
And in his house heap pearls like pebble-stones,

Digitized by Google

Receive them free, and sell them by the weight;
Bags of fiery opals, sapphires, amethysts,
Jacinths, hard topaz, grass-green emeralds,
Beauteous rubies, sparkling diamonds,
And seld-seen costly stones of so great price,
As one of them indifferently rated,
And of a carat of this quantity,
May serve in peril of calamity
To ransom great kings from captivity.
This is the ware wherein consists my wealth;
And thus methinks should men of judgement frame
Their means of traffic from the vulgar trade,
And as their wealth increaseth, so enclose
Infinite riches in a little room.
But now how stands the wind?
Into what corner peers my halcyon's bill?[a]
Ha! to the east? yes: see, how stand the vanes?
East and by south: why then I hope my ships
I sent for Egypt and the bordering isles
Are gotten up by Nilus' winding banks:
Mine argosy from Alexandria,
Loaden with spice and silks, now under sail,
Are smoothly gliding down by Candy shore
To Malta, through our Mediterranean sea.
But who comes here?

Enter a Merchant

How now?

Merch. Barabas, thy ships are safe,
Riding in Malta-road: and all the merchants
With other merchandise are safe arrived,
And have sent me to know whether yourself
Will come and custom them.

Bar. The ships are safe thou say'st, and richly fraught.

Merch. They are.

Bar. Why then go bid them come ashore,

Digitized by Google

And bring with them their bills of entry:
I hope our credit in the custom-house
Will serve as well as I were present there.
Go send 'em threescore camels, thirty mules,
And twenty wagons to bring up the ware.
But art thou master in a ship of mine,
And is thy credit not enough for that?

Merch. The very custom barely comes to more
Than many merchants of the town are worth,
And therefore far exceeds my credit, sir.

Bar. Go tell 'em the Jew of Malta sent thee, man:
Tush! who amongst 'em knows not Barabas?

Merch. I go.

Bar. So then, there's somewhat come.
Sirrah, which of my ships art thou master of?

Merch. Of the Speranza, sir.

Bar. And saw'st thou not
Mine argosy at Alexandria?
Thou could'st not come from Egypt, or by Caire,
But at the entry there into the sea,
Where Nilus pays his tribute to the main,
Thou needs must sail by Alexandria.

Merch. I neither saw them, nor inquired of them:
But this we heard some of our seamen say,
They wondered how you durst with so much wealth
Trust such a crazèd vessel, and so far.

Bar. Tush, they are wise! I know her and her strength.
But go, go thou thy ways, discharge thy ship,
And bid my factor bring his loading in. [*Exit* Merch.
And yet I wonder at this argosy.

Enter a second Merchant

2nd Merch. Thine argosy from Alexandria,
Know, Barabas, doth ride in Malta-road,
Laden with riches, and exceeding store
Of Persian silks, of gold, and orient pearl.

Digitized by Google

Bar. How chance you came not with those other ships
That sailed by Egypt?
2nd Merch. Sir, we saw 'em not.
Bar. Belike they coasted round by Candy shore
About their oils, or other businesses.
But 'twas ill done of you to come so far
Without the aid or conduct of their ships.
2nd Merch. Sir, we were wafted by a Spanish fleet,
That never left us till within a league,
That had the galleys of the Turk in chase.
Bar. Oh! — they were going up to Sicily —
Well, go,
And bid the merchants and my men dispatch
And come ashore, and see the fraught discharged.
2nd Merch. I go. [*Exit.*
Bar. Thus trowls our fortune in by land and sea,
And thus are we on every side enriched:
These are the blessings promised to the Jews,
And herein was old Abram's happiness:
What more may Heaven do for earthly man
Than thus to pour out plenty in their laps,
Ripping the bowels of the earth for them,
Making the sea[s] their servants, and the winds
To drive their substance with successful blasts?
Who hateth me but for my happiness?
Or who is honoured now but for his wealth?
Rather had I a Jew be hated thus,
Than pitied in a Christian poverty:
For I can see no fruits in all their faith,
But malice, falsehood, and excessive pride,
Which methinks fits not their profession.
Haply some hapless man hath conscience,
And for his conscience lives in beggary.
They say we are a scattered nation:
I cannot tell, but we have scambled up
More wealth by far than those that brag of faith.
There's Kirriah Jairim, the great Jew of Greece,

Digitized by Google

Obed in Bairseth, Nones in Portugal,
Myself in Malta, some in Italy,
Many in France, and wealthy every one;
Ay, wealthier far than any Christian.
I must confess we come not to be kings;
That's not our fault: alas, our number's few,
And crowns come either by succession,
Or urged by force; and nothing violent,
Oft have I heard tell, can be permanent.
Give us a peaceful rule, make Christians kings,
That thirst so much for principality.
I have no charge, nor many children,
But one sole daughter, whom I hold as dear
As Agamemnon did his Iphigen:
And all I have is hers. But who comes here?

Enter three Jews[n]

1st Jew. Tush, tell not me; 'twas done of policy.
2nd Jew. Come, therefore, let us go to Barabas,
For he can council best in these affairs;
And here he comes.
Bar. Why, how now, countrymen!
Why flock you thus to me in multitudes?
What accident's betided to the Jews?
1st Jew. A fleet of warlike galleys, Barabas,
Are come from Turkey, and lie in our road:
And they this day sit in the council-house
To entertain them and their embassy.
Bar. Why, let 'em come, so they come not to war;
Or let 'em war, so we be conquerors. —
Nay, let 'em combat, conquer, and kill all!
So they spare me, my daughter, and my wealth. [*Aside.*
1st Jew. Were it for confirmation of a league,
They would not come in warlike manner thus.
2nd Jew. I fear their coming will afflict us all.
Bar. Fond men! what dream you of their multitudes?

Digitized by Google

What need they treat of peace that are in league?
The Turks and those of Malta are in league.
Tut, tut, there is some other matter in't.
1st Jew. Why, Barabas, they come for peace or war.
Bar. Haply for neither, but to pass along
Towards Venice by the Adriatic Sea;
With whom they have attempted many times,
But never could effect their stratagem.
3rd Jew. And very wisely said. It may be so.
2nd Jew. But there's a meeting in the senate-house,
And all the Jews in Malta must be there.
Bar. Hum; all the Jews in Malta must be there?
Ay, like enough: why, then, let every man
Provide him, and be there for fashion-sake.
If anything shall there concern our state,
Assure yourselves I'll ~~look~~ — unto myself. [*Aside.*
1st Jew. I know you will. Well, brethren, let us go.
2nd Jew. Let's take our leaves. Farewell, good Barabas.
Bar. Farewell, Zaareth; farewell, Temainte.
[*Exeunt* Jews.
And, Barabas, now search this secret out;
Summon thy senses, call thy wits together:
These silly men mistake the matter clean.
Long to the Turk did Malta contribute;
Which tribute, all in policy I fear,
The Turks have let increase to such a sum
As all the wealth of Malta cannot pay;
And now by that advantage thinks, belike,
To seize upon the town: ay, that he seeks.
Howe'er the world go, I'll make sure for one,
And seek in time to intercept the worst,
Warily guarding that which I ha' got.
Ego mihimet sum semper proximus.[n]
Why, let 'em enter, let 'em take the town. [*Exit.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE II[n]

Enter FERNEZE, *Governor of Malta*, Knights, *and* Officers; *met by* CALYMATH *and* Bassoes *of the Turk*

Fern. Now, Bassoes, what demand you at our hands?
1st Bas. Know, Knights of Malta, that we came from Rhodes,
From Cyprus, Candy, and those other Isles
That lie betwixt the Mediterranean seas.
Fern. What's Cyprus, Candy, and those other Isles
To us, or Malta? What at our hands demand ye?
Caly. The ten years' tribute that remains unpaid.
Fern. Alas! my lord, the sum is over-great,
I hope your highness will consider us.
Caly. I wish, grave governor, 'twere in my power
To favour you, but 'tis my father's cause,
Wherein I may not, nay, I dare not dally.
Fern. Then give us leave, great Selim Calymath.
[*Consults apart with the* Knights.
Caly. Stand all aside, and let the knights determine,
And send to keep our galleys under sail,
For happily we shall not tarry here;
Now, governor, [say,] how are you resolved?
Fern. Thus: since your hard conditions are such
That you will needs have ten years' tribute past,
We may have time to make collection
Amongst the inhabitants of Malta for't.
1st Bas. That's more than is in our commission.
Caly. What, Callipine! a little courtesy.
Let's know their time, perhaps it is not long;
And 'tis more kingly to obtain by peace
Than to enforce conditions by constraint.
What respite ask you, governor?
Fern. But a month.
Caly. We grant a month, but see you keep your promise.

Digitized by Google

Now launch our galleys back again to sea,
Where we'll attend the respite you have ta'en,
And for the money send our messenger.
Farewell, great governor and brave Knights of Malta.
Fern. And all good fortune wait on Calymath!
[*Exeunt* CALYMATH *and* Bassoes.
Go one and call those Jews of Malta hither:
Were they not summoned to appear to-day?
Off. They were, my lord, and here they come.

Enter BARABAS *and three* Jews

1st Knight. Have you determined what to say to them?
Fern. Yes, give me leave — and, Hebrews, now come near.
From the Emperor of Turkey is arrived
Great Selim Calymath, his highness' son,
To levy of us ten years' tribute past,
Now then, here know that it concerneth us —
Bar. Then, good my lord, to keep your quiet still,
Your lordship shall do well to let them have it.
Fern. Soft, Barabas, there's more 'longs to 't than so.
To what this ten years' tribute will amount,
That we have cast, but cannot compass it
By reason of the wars that robbed our store;
And therefore are we to request your aid.
Bar. Alas, my lord, we are no soldiers!
And what's our aid against so great a prince?
1st Knight. Tut, Jew, we know thou art no soldier;
Thou art a merchant and a moneyed man,
And 'tis thy money, Barabas, we seek.
Bar. How, my lord! my money?
Fern. Thine and the rest.
For, to be short, amongst you 't must be had.
1st Jew. Alas, my lord, the most of us are poor.

Digitized by Google

Fern. Then let the rich increase your portions.
Bar. Are strangers with your tribute to be taxed?
2nd Knight. Have strangers leave with us to get their wealth?
Then let them with us contribute.
Bar. How! equally?
Fern. No, Jew, like infidels.
For through our sufferance of your hateful lives,
Who stand accursèd in the sight of Heaven,
These taxes and afflictions are befallen,
And therefore thus we are determinèd.
Read there the articles of our decrees.
Off. (*reads*). "First, the tribute-money of the Turks shall all be levied amongst the Jews, and each of them to pay one half of his estate."
Bar. How, half his estate?—I hope you mean not mine. [*Aside.*
Fern. Read on.
Off. (*reading*). "Secondly, he that denies to pay shall straight become a Christian."
Bar. How! a Christian?—Hum,—what's here to do? [*Aside.*
Off. (*reading*). "Lastly, he that denies this shall absolutely lose all he has."
The three Jews. Oh, my lord, we will give half.
Bar. O earth-mettled villains, and no Hebrews born!
And will you basely thus submit yourselves
To leave your goods to their arbitrament?
Fern. Why, Barabas, wilt thou be christenèd?
Bar. No, governor, I will be no convertite.[5]
Fern. Then pay thy half.
Bar. Why, know you what you did by this device?
Half of my substance is a city's wealth.
Governor, it was not got so easily;
Nor will I part so slightly therewithal.
Fern. Sir, half is the penalty of our decree,
Either pay that, or we will seize on all.

Digitized by Google

Bar. Corpo di Dio! stay! you shall have the half;
Let me be used but as my brethren are.
Fern. No, Jew, thou hast denied the articles,
And now it cannot be recalled.
[*Exeunt* Officers, *on a sign from* FERNEZE.
Bar. Will you, then, steal my goods?
Is theft the ground of your religion?
Fern. No, Jew, we take particularly thine
To save the ruin of a multitude:
And better one want for the common good
Than many perish for a private man:
Yet, Barabas, we will not banish thee,
But here in Malta, where thou gott'st thy wealth,
Live still; and, if thou canst, get more.
Bar. Christians, what or how can I multiply?
Of naught is nothing made.
1st Knight. From naught at first thou cam'st to little wealth,
From little unto more, from more to most:
If your first curse fall heavy on thy head,
And make thee poor and scorned of all the world,
'Tis not our fault, but thy inherent sin.
Bar. What, bring you Scripture to confirm your wrongs?
Preach me not out of my possessions.
Some Jews are wicked, as all Christians are:
But say the tribe that I descended of
Were all in general cast away for sin,
Shall I be tried by their transgression?
The man that dealeth righteously shall live:
And which of you can charge me otherwise?
Fern. Out, wretched Barabas!
Sham'st thou not thus to justify thyself,
As if we knew not thy profession?
If thou rely upon thy righteousness,
Be patient and thy riches will increase.

Digitized by Google

Excess of wealth is cause of covetousness:
And covetousness, Oh, 'tis a monstrous sin.

Bar. Ay, but theft is worse: tush! take not from me then,
For that is theft! and if you rob me thus,
I must be forced to steal and compass more.

1st Knight. Grave governor, listen not to his exclaims.
Convert his mansion to a nunnery;
His house will harbour many holy nuns.

Fern. It shall be so.

Re-enter Officers

Now, officers, have you done?

Off. Ay, my lord, we have seized upon the goods
And wares of Barabas, which being valued,
Amount to more than all the wealth in Malta.
And of the other we have seizèd half.

Fern. Then we'll take order for the residue.

Bar. Well then, my lord, say, are you satisfied?
You have my goods, my money, and my wealth,
My ships, my store, and all that I enjoyed;
And, having all, you can request no more;
Unless your unrelenting flinty hearts
Suppress all pity in your stony breasts,
And now shall move you to bereave my life.

Fern. No, Barabas; to stain our hands with blood
Is far from us and our profession.

Bar. Why, I esteem the injury far less
To take the lives of miserable men
Than be the causers of their misery.
You have my wealth, the labour of my life,
The comfort of mine age, my children's hope,
And therefore ne'er distinguish of the wrong.

Fern. Content thee, Barabas, thou hast naught but right.

Digitized by Google

Bar. Your extreme right does me exceeding wrong:
But take it to you, i' the devil's name.
Fern. Come, let us in, and gather of these goods
The money for this tribute of the Turk.
1*st Knight.* 'Tis necessary that be looked unto:
For, if we break our day, we break the league,
And that will prove but simple policy.
[*Exeunt all except* BARABAS *and the* Jews.
Bar. Ay, policy! that's their profession,
And not simplicity, as they suggest.
The plagues of Egypt, and the curse of Heaven,
Earth's barrenness, and all men's hatred
Inflict upon them, thou great *Primus Motor!*
And here upon my knees, striking the earth,
I ban their souls to everlasting pains
And extreme tortures of the fiery deep,
That thus have dealt with me in my distress.
1*st Jew.* Oh, yet be patient, gentle Barabas.
Bar. O silly brethren, born to see this day,
Why stand you thus unmoved with my laments?
Why weep you not to think upon my wrongs?
Why pine not I, and die in this distress?
1*st Jew.* Why, Barabas, as hardly can we brook
The cruel handling of ourselves in this;
Thou seest they have taken half our goods.
Bar. Why did you yield to their extortion?
You were a multitude, and I but one:
And of me only have they taken all.
1*st Jew.* Yet, brother Barabas, remember Job.
Bar. What tell you me of Job? I wot his wealth
Was written thus: he had seven thousand sheep,
Three thousand camels, and two hundred yoke
Of labouring oxen, and five hundred
She-asses: but for every one of those,
Had they been valued at indifferent rate,
I had at home, and in mine argosy,
And other ships that came from Egypt last,

Digitized by Google

As much as would have bought his beasts and him,
And yet have kept enough to live upon:
So that not he, but I, may curse the day,
Thy fatal birthday, forlorn Barabas;
And henceforth wish for an eternal night,
That clouds of darkness may enclose my flesh,
And hide these extreme sorrows from mine eyes:
For only I have toiled to inherit here
The months of vanity and loss of time,
And painful nights, have been appointed me.
2nd Jew. Good Barabas, be patient.
Bar. Ay, I pray, leave me in my patience. You, that
Were ne'er possessed of wealth, are pleased with want;
But give him liberty at least to mourn,
That in a field amidst his enemies
Doth see his soldiers slain, himself disarmed,
And knows no means of his recovery:
Ay, let me sorrow for this sudden chance;
'Tis in the trouble of my spirit I speak;
Great injuries are not so soon forgot.
1st Jew. Come, let us leave him; in his ireful mood
Our words will but increase his ecstasy.
2nd Jew. On, then; but, trust me, 'tis a misery
To see a man in such affliction. —
Farewell, Barabas! [*Exeunt the three* Jews.[n]
Bar. Ay, fare you well.
See the simplicity of these base slaves,
Who, for the villains have no wit themselves,
Think me to be a senseless lump of clay
That will with every water wash to dirt:
No, Barabas is born to better chance,
And framed of finer mould than common men,
That measure naught but by the present time.
A reaching thought will search his deepest wits,
And cast with cunning for the time to come:
For evils are apt to happen every day.

Digitized by Google

Enter ABIGAIL

But whither wends my beauteous Abigail?
Oh! what has made my lovely daughter sad?
What, woman! moan not for a little loss:
Thy father hath enough in store for thee.
Abig. Not for myself, but agèd Barabas:
Father, for thee lamenteth Abigail:
But I will learn to leave these fruitless tears,
And, urged thereto with my afflictions,
With fierce exclaims run to the senate-house,
And in the senate reprehend them all,
And rend their hearts with tearing of my hair,
Till they reduce the wrongs done to my father.
Bar. No, Abigail, things past recovery
Are hardly cured with exclamations.
Be silent, daughter, sufferance breeds ease,
And time may yield us an occasion
Which on the sudden cannot serve the turn.
Besides, my girl, think me not all so fond
As negligently to forego so much
Without provision for thyself and me,
Ten thousand portagues, besides great pearls,
Rich costly jewels, and stones infinite,
Fearing the worst of this before it fell,
I closely hid.
Abig. Where, father?
Bar. In my house, my girl.
Abig. Then shall they ne'er be seen of Barabas:
For they have seized upon thy house and wares.
Bar. But they will give me leave once more, I trow,
To go into my house.
Abig. That may they not:
For there I left the governor placing nuns,
Displacing me; and of thy house they mean
To make a nunnery, where none but their own sect
Must enter in; men generally barred.

Digitized by Google

Bar. My gold! my gold! and all my wealth is gone!
You partial heavens, have I deserved this plague?
What, will you thus oppose me, luckless stars,
To make me desperate in my poverty?
And knowing me impatient in distress,
Think me so mad as I will hang myself,
That I may vanish o'er the earth in air,
And leave no memory that e'er I was?
No, I will live; nor loathe I this my life:
And, since you leave me in the ocean thus
To sink or swim, and put me to my shifts,
I'll rouse my senses and awake myself.
Daughter! I have it: thou perceiv'st the plight
Wherein these Christians have oppressèd me:
Be ruled by me, for in extremity
We ought to make bar of no policy.
Abig. Father, whate'er it be to injure them
That have so manifestly wrongèd us,
What will not Abigail attempt?
Bar. Why, so;
Then thus, thou told'st me they have turned my house
Into a nunnery, and some nuns are there?
Abig. I did.
Bar. Then, Abigail, there must my girl
Entreat the abbess to be entertained.
Abig. How, as a nun?
Bar. Ay, daughter, for religion
Hides many mischiefs from suspicion.
Abig. Ay, but, father, they will suspect me there.
Bar. Let 'em suspect; but be thou so precise
As they may think it done of holiness.
Entreat 'em fair, and give them friendly speech,
And seem to them as if thy sins were great,
Till thou hast gotten to be entertained.
Abig. Thus, father, shall I much dissemble.
Bar. Tush!
As good dissemble that thou never mean'st,

Digitized by Google

As first mean truth and then dissemble it —
A counterfeit profession is better
Than unseen hypocrisy.[n]
Abig. Well, father, say [that] I be entertained,
What then shall follow?
Bar. This shall follow then;
There have I hid, close underneath the plank
That runs along the upper-chamber floor,
The gold and jewels which I kept for thee.
But here they come; be cunning, Abigail.
Abig. Then, father, go with me.
Bar. No, Abigail, in this
It is not necessary I be seen:
For I will seem offended with thee for't:
Be close, my girl, for this must fetch my gold.
[*They retire.*

Enter Friar JACOMO, Friar BARNARDINE, Abbess, *and a* Nun

F. Jac. Sisters, we now are almost at the new-made nunnery.
Abb. The better; for we love not to be seen:
'Tis thirty winters long since some of us
Did stray so far amongst the multitude.
F. Jac. But, madam, this house
And waters[n] of this new-made nunnery
Will much delight you.
Abb. It may be so; but who comes here?
[ABIGAIL *comes forward.*
Abig. Grave abbess, and you, happy virgins' guide,
Pity the state of a distressèd maid.
Abb. What art thou, daughter?
Abig. The hopeless daughter of a hapless Jew,
The Jew of Malta, wretched Barabas;
Sometime the owner of a goodly house,
Which they have now turned to a nunnery.

Digitized by Google

Abb. Well, daughter, say, what is thy suit with us?

Abig. Fearing the afflictions which my father feels
Proceed from sin, or want of faith in us,
I'd pass away my life in penitence,
And be a novice in your nunnery,
To make atonement for my labouring soul.

F. Jac. No doubt, brother, but this proceedeth of the spirit.

F. Barn. Ay, and of a moving spirit too, brother; but come,
Let us entreat she may be entertained.

Abb. Well, daughter, we admit you for a nun.

Abig. First let me as a novice learn to frame
My solitary life to your strait laws,
And let me lodge where I was wont to lie,
I do not doubt, by your divine precepts
And mine own industry, but to profit much.

Bar. As much, I hope, as all I hid is worth. [*Aside.*

Abb. Come, daughter, follow us.

Bar. (*coming forward*). Why, how now, Abigail,
What makest thou amongst these hateful Christians?

F. Jac. Hinder her not, thou man of little faith,
For she has mortified herself.

Bar. How! mortified?

F. Jac. And is admitted to the sisterhood.

Bar. Child of perdition, and thy father's shame!
What wilt thou do among these hateful fiends?
I charge thee on my blessing that thou leave
These devils, and their damnèd heresy.

Abig. Father, forgive me — [*She goes to him.*

Bar. Nay, back, Abigail,
(And think upon the jewels and the gold;
The board is markèd thus that covers it.)
[*Aside to* ABIGAIL *in a whisper.*
Away, accursèd, from thy father's sight.

F. Jac. Barabas, although thou art in misbelief,

Digitized by Google

And wilt not see thine own afflictions,
Yet let thy daughter be no longer blind.
Bar. Blind friar, I reck not thy persuasions,
(The board is markèd thus[n] that covers it.)
[*Aside to* ABIGAIL *in a whisper.*
For I had rather die than see her thus.
Wilt thou forsake me too in my distress,
Seducèd daughter? (Go, forget not.) [*Aside in a whisper.*
Becomes it Jews to be so credulous?
(To-morrow early I'll be at the door.) [*Aside in a whisper.*
No, come not at me; if thou wilt be damned,
Forget me, see me not, and so be gone.
(Farewell, remember to-morrow morning.)
[*Aside in a whisper.*
Out, out, thou wretch!

[*Exeunt, on one side* BARABAS, *on the other side* Friars, Abbess, Nun, *and* ABIGAIL; *as they are going out,*

Enter MATHIAS

Math. Who's this? fair Abigail, the rich Jew's daughter,
Become a nun! her father's sudden fall
Has humbled her and brought her down to this:
Tut, she were fitter for a tale of love,
Than to be tirèd out with orisons:
And better would she far become a bed,
Embracèd in a friendly lover's arms,
Than rise at midnight to a solemn mass.

Enter LODOWICK

Lod. Why, how now, Don Mathias! in a dump?
Math. Believe me, noble Lodowick, I have seen
The strangest sight, in my opinion,
That ever I beheld.
Lod. What was't, I prithee?

Digitized by Google

Math. A fair young maid, scarce fourteen years of age,
The sweetest flower in Cytherea's field,
Cropt from the pleasures of the fruitful earth,
And strangely metamorphosèd to a nun.
Lod. But say, what was she?
Math. Why, the rich Jew's daughter.
Lod. What, Barabas, whose goods were lately seized?
Is she so fair?
Math. And matchless beautiful;
As, had you seen her, 'twould have moved your heart,
Though countermined with walls of brass, to love,
Or at the least to pity.
Lod. And if she be so fair as you report,
'Twere time well spent to go and visit her:
How say you, shall we?
Math. I must and will, sir; there's no remedy.
Lod. And so will I too, or it shall go hard.
Farewell, Mathias.
Math. Farewell, Lodowick. [*Exeunt severally.*

Digitized by Google

ACT THE SECOND

SCENE I

Enter BARABAS *with a light*[a]

Bar. Thus, like the sad presaging raven, that tolls
The sick man's passport in her hollow beak,
And in the shadow of the silent night
Doth shake contagion from her sable wings;
Vexed and tormented runs poor Barabas
With fatal curses towards these Christians.
The uncertain pleasures of swift-footed time
Have ta'en their flight, and left me in despair;
And of my former riches rests no more
But bare remembrance, like a soldier's scar,
That has no further comfort for his maim.
O thou, that with a fiery pillar led'st
The sons of Israel through the dismal shades,
Light Abraham's offspring; and direct the hand
Of Abigail this night; or let the day
Turn to eternal darkness after this!
No sleep can fasten on my watchful eyes,
Nor quiet enter my distempered thoughts,
Till I have answer of my Abigail.

Enter ABIGAIL *above*

Abig. Now have I happily espied a time
To search the plank my father did appoint;
And here behold, unseen, where I have found
The gold, the pearls, and jewels, which he hid.
Bar. Now I remember those old women's words,

Digitized by Google

Who in my wealth[n] would tell me winter's tales,
And speak of spirits and ghosts that glide by night
About the place where treasure hath been hid:
And now methinks that I am one of those:
For, whilst I live, here lives my soul's sole hope,
And, when I die, here shall my spirit walk.
Abig. Now that my father's fortune were so good
As but to be about this happy place;
'Tis not so happy: yet, when we parted last,
He said he would attend me in the morn.
Then, gentle sleep, where'er his body rests,
Give charge to Morpheus that he may dream
A golden dream, and of the sudden wake,
Come and receive the treasure I have found.
Bar. Bueno para todos mi ganado no era:[n]
As good go on as sit so sadly thus.
But stay, what star shines yonder in the east?
The loadstar of my life, if Abigail.
Who's there?
Abig. Who's that?
Bar. Peace, Abigail, 'tis I.
Abig. Then, father, here receive thy happiness.
Bar. Hast thou't?
Abig. Here, [*Throws down the bags*] hast thou't?
There's more, and more, and more.
Bar. O my girl,
My gold, my fortune, my felicity!
Strength to my soul, death to mine enemy!
Welcome the first beginner of my bliss!
O Abigail, Abigail, that I had thee here too!
Then my desires were fully satisfied:
But I will practise thy enlargement thence:
O girl! O gold! O beauty! O my bliss!
[*Hugs the bags.*
Abig. Father, it draweth towards midnight now,
And 'bout this time the nuns begin to wake;
To shun suspicion, therefore, let us part.

Digitized by Google

Bar. Farewell, my joy, and by my fingers take
A kiss from him that sends it from his soul.
[*Exit* ABIGAIL *above.*
Now Phœbus ope the eyelids of the day,
And for the raven wake the morning lark,
That I may hover with her in the air;
Singing o'er these, as she does o'er her young.
Hermoso placer de los dineros.[n] [*Exit.*

SCENE II

Enter FERNEZE, MARTIN DEL BOSCO, *and* Knights

Fern. Now, captain, tell us whither thou art bound?
Whence is thy ship that anchors in our road?
And why thou cam'st ashore without our leave?
Bosc. Governor of Malta, hither am I bound;
My ship, the Flying Dragon, is of Spain,
And so am I: Del Bosco is my name;
Vice-admiral unto the Catholic King.
1*st Knight.* 'Tis true, my lord, therefore entreat him well.
Bosc. Our fraught is Grecians, Turks, and Afric Moors.
For late upon the coast of Corsica,
Because we vailed not to the Turkish fleet,
Their creeping galleys had us in the chase:
But suddenly the wind began to rise,
And then we luffed and tacked, and fought at ease:
Some have we fired, and many have we sunk;
But one amongst the rest became our prize:
The captain's slain, the rest remain our slaves,
Of whom we would make sale in Malta here.
Fern. Martin del Bosco, I have heard of thee;
Welcome to Malta, and to all of us;
But to admit a sale of these thy Turks
We may not, nay, we dare not give consent
By reason of a tributary league.

Digitized by Google

1st Knight. Del Bosco, as thou lov'st and honour'st us,
Persuade our governor against the Turk;
This truce we have is but in hope of gold,
And with that sum he craves might we wage war.

Bosc. Will Knights of Malta be in league with Turks,
And buy it basely too for sums of gold?
My lord, remember that, to Europe's shame,
The Christian Isle of Rhodes, from whence you came,
Was lately lost,[n] and you were stated here
To be at deadly enmity with Turks.

Fern. Captain, we know it, but our force is small.

Bosc. What is the sum that Calymath requires?

Fern. A hundred thousand crowns.

Bosc. My lord and king hath title to this isle,
And he means quickly to expel you hence;
Therefore be ruled by me, and keep the gold:
I'll write unto his majesty for aid,
And not depart until I see you free.

Fern. On this condition shall thy Turks be sold:
Go, officers, and set them straight in show.

[*Exeunt* Officers.

Bosco, thou shalt be Malta's general;
We and our warlike Knights will follow thee
Against these barb'rous misbelieving Turks.

Bosc. So shall you imitate those you succeed:
For when their hideous force environed Rhodes,
Small though the number was that kept the town,
They fought it out, and not a man survived
To bring the hapless news to Christendom.

Fern. So will we fight it out; come, let's away:
Proud daring Calymath, instead of gold,
We'll send thee bullets wrapt in smoke and fire:
Claim tribute where thou wilt, we are resolved,
Honour is bought with blood and not with gold.

[*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE III[a]

Enter Officers *with* ITHAMOR *and other* Slaves

1st Off. This is the market-place, here let 'em stand:
Fear not their sale, for they'll be quickly bought.
2nd Off. Every one's price is written on his back,
And so much must they yield or not be sold.
1st Off. Here comes the Jew; had not his goods been seized,
He'd given us present money for them all.

Enter BARABAS

Bar. In spite of these swine-eating Christians —
Unchosen nation, never circumcised,
Such as (poor villains!) were ne'er thought upon
Till Titus and Vespasian conquered us —
Am I become as wealthy as I was:
They hoped my daughter would ha' been a nun;
But she's at home, and I have bought a house
As great and fair as is the governor's;
And there, in spite of Malta, will I dwell,
Having Ferneze's hand, whose heart I'll have;
Ay, and his son's too, or it shall go hard.
I am not of the tribe of Levi, I,
That can so soon forget an injury.
We Jews can fawn like spaniels when we please:
And when we grin we bite, yet are our looks
As innocent and harmless as a lamb's.
I learned in Florence how to kiss my hand,
Heave up my shoulders when they call me dog,
And duck as low as any barefoot friar;
Hoping to see them starve upon a stall,
Or else be gathered for in our synagogue,
That, when the offering-basin comes to me,

Digitized by Google

Even for charity I may spit into 't.
Here comes Don Lodowick, the governor's son,
One that I love for his good father's sake.

Enter LODOWICK

Lod. I hear the wealthy Jew walkèd this way:
I'll seek him out, and so insinuate,
That I may have a sight of Abigail;
For Don Mathias tells me she is fair.
Bar. Now will I show myself
To have more of the serpent than the dove;
That is — more knave than fool. [*Aside.*
Lod. Yond' walks the Jew; now for fair Abigail.
Bar. Ay, ay, no doubt but she's at your command. [*Aside.*
Lod. Barabas, thou know'st I am the governor's son.
Bar. I would you were his father, too, sir;
That's all the harm I wish you. — The slave looks
Like a hog's cheek new singed. [*Aside.*
Lod. Whither walk'st thou, Barabas?
Bar. No farther: 'tis a custom held with us,
That when we speak with Gentiles like to you,
We turn into the air to purge ourselves:
For unto us the promise doth belong.
Lod. Well, Barabas, can'st help me to a diamond?
Bar. Oh, sir, your father had my diamonds.
Yet I have one left that will serve your turn —
I mean my daughter: but ere he shall have her
I'll sacrifice her on a pile of wood.
I ha' the poison of the city for him,
And the white leprosy. [*Aside.*
Lod. What sparkle does it give without a foil?
Bar. The diamond that I talk of ne'er was foiled —
But when he touches it, it will be foiled — [*Aside.*
Lord Lodowick, it sparkles bright and fair.
Lod. Is it square or pointed, pray let me know.

Digitized by Google

Bar. Pointed it is, good sir — but not for you. [*Aside.*
Lod. I like it much the better.
Bar. So do I too.
Lod. How shows it by night?
Bar. Outshines Cynthia's rays —
You'll like it better far o' nights than days. [*Aside*
Lod. And what's the price?
Bar. Your life an if you have it. [*Aside.*] O my lord,
We will not jar about the price; come to my house
And I will give 't your honour — with a vengeance. [*Aside.*
Lod. No, Barabas, I will deserve it first.
Bar. Good sir,
Your father has deserved it at my hands,
Who, of mere charity and Christian truth,
To bring me to religious purity,
And as it were in catechizing sort,
To make me mindful of my mortal sins,
Against my will, and whether I would or no,
Seized all I had, and thrust me out o' doors,
And made my house a place for nuns most chaste.
Lod. No doubt your soul shall reap the fruit of it.
Bar. Ay, but, my lord, the harvest is far off.
And yet I know the prayers of those nuns
And holy friars, having money for their pains,
Are wondrous — and indeed do no man good: [*Aside.*
And seeing they are not idle, but still doing,
'Tis likely they in time may reap some fruit,
I mean in fullness of perfection.
Lod. Good Barabas, glance not at our holy nuns.
Bar. No, but I do it through a burning zeal —
Hoping ere long to set the house afire;
For though they do a while increase and multiply,
I'll have a saying to that nunnery. — [*Aside.*
As for the diamond, sir, I told you of,
Come home, and there's no price shall make us part,
Even for your honourable father's sake. —

Digitized by Google

It shall go hard but I will see your death. — [*Aside.*
But now I must be gone to buy a slave.

Lod. And, Barabas, I'll bear thee company.

Bar. Come, then — here's the market-place.
What's the price of this slave? Two hundred crowns!
Do the Turks weigh so much?

1*st Off.* Sir, that's his price.

Bar. What, can he steal that you demand so much?
Belike he has some new trick for a purse;
And if he has, he is worth three hundred plates,
So that, being bought, the town-seal might be got
To keep him for his lifetime from the gallows:
The sessions day is critical to thieves,
And few or none 'scape but by being purged.

Lod. Rat'st thou this Moor but at two hundred plates?

1*st Off.* No more, my lord.

Bar. Why should this Turk be dearer than that Moor?

1*st Off.* Because he is young and has more qualities.

Bar. What, hast the philosopher's stone? an thou hast, break my head with it, I'll forgive thee.

Slave. No, sir; I can cut and shave.

Bar. Let me see, sirrah, are you not an old shaver?

Slave. Alas, sir! I am a very youth.

Bar. A youth? I'll buy you, and marry you to Lady Vanity, if you do well.

Slave. I will serve you, sir.

Bar. Some wicked trick or other. It may be, under colour of shaving, thou'lt cut my throat for my goods. Tell me, hast thou thy health well?

Slave. Ay, passing well.

Bar. So much the worse; I must have one that's sickly, an't be but for sparing victuals: 'tis not a stone of beef a day will maintain you in these chops; let me see one that's somewhat leaner.

1*st Off.* Here's a leaner, how like you him?

Bar. Where wast thou born?

Itha. In Thrace; brought up in Arabia.

Digitized by Google

Bar. So much the better, thou art for my turn.
An hundred crowns? I'll have him; there's the coin.
[*Gives money.*
1st Off. Then mark him, sir, and take him hence.
Bar. Ay, mark him, you were best, for this is he
That by my help shall do much villainy. [*Aside.*
My lord, farewell: Come, sirrah, you are mine.
As for the diamond, it shall be yours;
I pray, sir, be no stranger at my house,
All that I have shall be at your command.

Enter MATHIAS *and his* Mother KATHERINE

Math. What makes the Jew and Lodowick so private?
I fear me 'tis about fair Abigail. [*Aside.*
Bar. Yonder comes Don Mathias, let us stay;
[*Exit* LODOWICK.
He loves my daughter, and she holds him dear:
But I have sworn to frustrate both their hopes,
And be revenged upon the governor.
Kath. This Moor is comeliest, is he not? speak, son.
Math. No, this is the better, mother; view this well.
Bar. Seem not to know me here before your mother,
Lest she mistrust the match that is in hand:
When you have brought her home, come to my house;
Think of me as thy father; son, farewell.
Math. But wherefore talked Don Lodowick with you?
Bar. Tush! man, we talked of diamonds, not of Abigail.
Kath. Tell me, Mathias, is not that the Jew?
Bar. As for the comment on the Maccabees,
I have it, sir, and 'tis at your command.
Math. Yes, madam, and my talk with him was [but]
About the borrowing of a book or two.
Kath. Converse not with him, he's cast off from Heaven.
Thou hast thy crowns, fellow; come, let's away.

Digitized by Google

Math. Sirrah, Jew, remember the book.

Bar. Marry will I, sir.

[*Exeunt* MATHIAS *and his* Mother.

Off. Come, I have made reasonable market; let's away. [*Exeunt* Officers *with* Slaves.

Bar. Now let me know thy name, and therewithal
Thy birth, condition, and profession.

Itha. Faith, sir, my birth is but mean: my name's Ithamore, my profession what you please.

Bar. Hast thou no trade? then listen to my words,
And I will teach thee that shall stick by thee:
First be thou void of these affections,
Compassion, love, vain hope, and heartless fear,
Be moved at nothing, see thou pity none,
But to thyself smile when the Christians moan.

Itha. Oh, brave! master, I worship your nose for this.

Bar. As for myself, I walk abroad o' nights
And kill sick people groaning under walls:
Sometimes I go about and poison wells;
And now and then, to cherish Christian thieves,
I am content to lose some of my crowns,
That I may, walking in my gallery,
See 'em go pinioned along by my door.
Being young, I studied physic, and began
To practise first upon the Italian;
There I enriched the priests with burials,
And always kept the sextons' arms in ure
With digging graves and ringing dead men's knells:
And after that was I an engineer,
And in the wars 'twixt France and Germany,
Under pretence of helping Charles the Fifth,
Slew friend and enemy with my stratagems.
Then after that was I an usurer,
And with extorting, cozening, forfeiting,
And tricks belonging unto brokery,
I filled the jails with bankrupts in a year,
And with young orphans planted hospitals,

Digitized by Google

And every moon made some or other mad,
And now and then one hang himself for grief,
Pinning upon his breast a long great scroll
How I with interest tormented him.
But mark how I am blest for plaguing them;
I have as much coin as will buy the town.
But tell me now, how hast thou spent thy time?

Itha. 'Faith, master,
In setting Christian villages on fire,
Chaining of eunuchs, binding galley-slaves.
One time I was an hostler in an inn,
And in the night-time secretly would I steal
To travellers' chambers, and there cut their throats:
Once at Jerusalem, where the pilgrims kneeled,
I strewèd powder on the marble stones,
And therewithal their knees would rankle so,
That I have laughed a-good to see the cripples
Go limping home to Christendom on stilts.

Bar. Why, this is something: make account of me
As of thy fellow; we are villains both:
Both circumcisèd, we hate Christians both:
Be true and secret, thou shalt want no gold.
But stand aside, here comes Don Lodowick.

Enter LODOWICK[n]

Lod. O Barabas, well met;
Where is the diamond you told me of?

Bar. I have it for you, sir; please you walk in with me:
What ho, Abigail! open the door, I say.

Enter ABIGAIL *with letters*

Abig. In good time, father; here are letters come
From Ormus, and the post stays here within.

Bar. Give me the letters. — Daughter, do you hear,

Digitized by Google

Entertain Lodowick the governor's son
With all the courtesy you can afford;
Provided that you keep your maidenhead.
Use him as if he were a Philistine,
Dissemble, swear, protest, vow love to him.
He is not of the seed of Abraham. — [*Aside.*
I am a little busy, sir, pray pardon me.
Abigail, bid him welcome for my sake.
Abig. For your sake and his own he's welcome hither.
Bar. Daughter, a word more; kiss him; speak him fair,
And like a cunning Jew so cast about,
That ye be both made sure ere you come out. [*Aside.*
Abig. O father! Don Mathias is my love.
Bar. I know it: yet I say, make love to him;
Do, it is requisite it should be so — [*Aside.*
Nay, on my life, it is my factor's hand —
But go you in, I'll think upon the account.
[*Exeunt* ABIGAIL *and* LODOWICK *into the house.*
The account is made, for Lodowick [he] dies.
My factor sends me word a merchant's fled
That owes me for a hundred tun of wine:
I weigh it thus much [*Snapping his fingers*]; I have wealth enough.
For now by this has he kissed Abigail;
And she vows love to him, and he to her.
As sure as Heaven rained manna for the Jews,
So sure shall he and Don Mathias die:
His father was my chiefest enemy.

Enter MATHIAS

Whither goes Don Mathias? stay awhile.
Math. Whither, but to my fair love Abigail?
Bar. Thou know'st, and Heaven can witness this is true,
That I intend my daughter shall be thine.
Math. Ay, Barabas, or else thou wrong'st me much.

Digitized by Google

Bar. Oh, Heaven forbid I should have such a thought.
Pardon me though I weep: the governor's son
Will, whether I will or no, have Abigail:
He sends her letters, bracelets, jewels, rings.
Math. Does she receive them?
Bar. She? No, Mathias, no, but sends them back,
And when he comes, she locks herself up fast;
Yet through the keyhole will he talk to her,
While she runs to the window looking out,
When you should come and hale him from the door.
Math. O treacherous Lodowick!
Bar. Even now as I came home, he slipt me in,
And I am sure he is with Abigail.
Math. I'll rouse him thence.
Bar. Not for all Malta, therefore sheathe your sword;
If you love me, no quarrels in my house;
But steal you in, and seem to see him not;
I'll give him such a warning ere he goes
As he shall have small hopes of Abigail.
Away, for here they come.

Re-enter LODOWICK *and* ABIGAIL

Math. What, hand in hand! I cannot suffer this.
Bar. Mathias, as thou lovest me, not a word.
Math. Well, let it pass, another time shall serve.
[*Exit into the house.*
Lod. Barabas, is not that the widow's son?
Bar. Ay, and take heed, for he hath sworn your death.
Lod. My death? what, is the base-born peasant mad?
Bar. No, no, but happily he stands in fear
Of that which you, I think, ne'er dream upon,
My daughter here, a paltry silly girl.
Lod. Why, loves she Don Mathias?
Bar. Doth she not with her smiling answer you?
Abig. He has my heart; I smile against my will.
[*Aside.*

Digitized by Google

Lod. Barabas, thou know'st I've loved thy daughter long.

Bar. And so has she done you, even from a child.

Lod. And now I can no longer hold my mind.

Bar. Nor I the affection that I bear to you.

Lod. This is thy diamond, tell me shall I have it?

Bar. Win it, and wear it, it is yet unsoiled.
Oh! but I know your lordship would disdain
To marry with the daughter of a Jew;
And yet I'll give her many a golden cross
With Christian posies round about the ring.

Lod. 'Tis not thy wealth, but her that I esteem.
Yet crave I thy consent.

Bar. And mine you have, yet let me talk to her. —
This offspring of Cain, this Jebusite,[n]
That never tasted of the Passover,
Nor e'er shall see the land of Canaan,
Nor our Messias that is yet to come;
This gentle maggot, Lodowick, I mean,
Must be deluded: let him have thy hand,
But keep thy heart till Don Mathias comes. [*Aside.*

Abig. What, shall I be betrothed to Lodowick?

Bar. It's no sin to deceive a Christian;
For they themselves hold it a principle,
Faith is not to be held with heretics;
But all are heretics that are not Jews;
This follows well, and therefore, daughter, fear not.
[*Aside.*
I have entreated her, and she will grant.

Lod. Then, gentle Abigail, plight thy faith to me.

Abig. I cannot choose, seeing my father bids. —
Nothing but death shall part my love and me. [*Aside.*

Lod. Now have I that for which my soul hath longed.

Bar. So have not I, but yet I hope I shall. [*Aside.*

Abig. O wretched Abigail, what hast thou done?
[*Aside.*

Lod. Why on the sudden is your colour changed?

Digitized by Google

Abig. I know not, but farewell, I must be gone.
Bar. Stay her, but let her not speak one word more.
Lod. Mute o' the sudden! here's a sudden change.
Bar. Oh, muse not at it, 'tis the Hebrews' guise,
That maidens new betrothed should weep awhile:
Trouble her not; sweet Lodowick, depart:
She is thy wife, and thou shalt be mine heir.
Lod. Oh, is't the custom? then I am resolved:
But rather let the brightsome heavens be dim,
And nature's beauty choke with stifling clouds,
Than my fair Abigail should frown on me. —
There comes the villain, now I'll be revenged.

Re-enter MATHIAS

Bar. Be quiet, Lodowick, it is enough
That I have made thee sure to Abigail.
Lod. Well, let him go [*Exit.*
Bar. Well, but for me, as you went in at doors
You had been stabbed, but not a word on't now;
Here must no speeches pass, nor swords be drawn.
Math. Suffer me, Barabas, but to follow him.
Bar. No; so shall I, if any hurt be done,
Be made an accessory of your deeds;
Revenge it on him when you meet him next.
Math. For this I'll have his heart.
Bar. Do so; lo here I give thee Abigail.
Math. What greater gift can poor Mathias have?
Shall Lodowick rob me of so fair a love?
My life is not so dear as Abigail.
Bar. My heart misgives me, that, to cross your love,
He's with your mother; therefore after him.
Math. What, is he gone unto my mother?
Bar. Nay, if you will, stay till she comes herself.
Math. I cannot stay; for if my mother come,
She'll die with grief. [*Exit.*

Digitized by Google

Abig. I cannot take my leave of him for tears:
Father, why have you thus incensed them both?
Bar. What's that to thee?
Abig. I'll make 'em friends again.
Bar. You'll make 'em friends!
Are there not Jews enow in Malta,
But thou must dote upon a Christian?
Abig. I will have Don Mathias, he is my love.
Bar. Yes, you shall have him: go put her in.
Itha. Ay, I'll put her in. [*Puts* ABIGAIL *in.*
Bar. Now tell me, Ithamore, how lik'st thou this?
Itha. Faith, master, I think by this
You purchase both their lives; is it not so?
Bar. True; and it shall be cunningly performed.
Itha. O master, that I might have a hand in this.
Bar. Ay, so thou shalt, 'tis thou must do the deed:
Take this, and bear it to Mathias straight,
[*Gives a letter.*
And tell him that it comes from Lodowick.
Itha. 'Tis poisoned, is it not?
Bar. No, no, and yet it might be done that way:
It is a challenge feigned from Lodowick.
Itha. Fear not; I will so set his heart afire,
That he shall ~~verily think~~ it ~~comes from~~ him.
~~*Bar.* I cannot choose but like~~ thy readiness:
Yet be not rash, but do it cunningly.
Itha. As I behave myself in this, employ me hereafter.
Bar. Away then. [*Exit* ITHAMORE.
So, now will I go in to Lodowick,
And, like a cunning spirit, feign some lie,
Till I have set 'em both at enmity. [*Exit.*

Digitized by Google

ACT THE THIRD

SCENE I[a]

Enter BELLAMIRA, *a Courtesan*

Bell. Since this town was besieged, my gain grows cold:
The time has been that, but for one bare night,
A hundred ducats have been freely given:
But now against my will I must be chaste;
And yet I know my beauty doth not fail.
From Venice merchants, and from Padua
Were wont to come rare-witted gentlemen,
Scholars I mean, learnèd and liberal;
And now, save Pilia-Borsa, comes there none,
And he is very seldom from my house;
And here he comes.

Enter PILIA-BORSA

Pilia. Hold thee, wench, there's something for thee to spend. [*Shows a bag of silver.*

Bell. 'Tis silver. I disdain it.

Pilia. Ay, but the Jew has gold,
And I will have it, or it shall go hard.

Bell. Tell me, how cam'st thou by this?

Pilia. 'Faith, walking the back-lanes, through the gardens, I chanced to cast mine eye up to the Jew's counting-house, where I saw some bags of money, and in the night I clambered up with my hooks, and, as I was taking my choice, I heard a rumbling in the house; so I took only this, and run my way: but here's the Jew's man.

Bell. Hide the bag.

Digitized by Google

Enter ITHAMORE

Pilia. Look not towards him, let's away; zoons, what a looking thou keep'st; thou'lt betray 's anon.

[*Exeunt* BELLAMIRA *and* PILIA-BORSA.

Itha. Oh, the sweetest face that ever I beheld! I know she is a courtesan by her attire: now would I give a hundred of the Jew's crowns that I had such a concubine.

Well, I have delivered the challenge in such sort,
As meet they will, and fighting die; brave sport. [*Exit.*

SCENE II[n]

Enter MATHIAS

Math. This is the place; now Abigail shall see
Whether Mathias holds her dear or no.

Enter LODOWICK

What, dares the villain write in such base terms?

[*Reading a letter.*

Lod. I did it; and revenge it if thou dar'st.

[*They fight.*

Enter BARABAS, *above,*[n] *on a balcony*

Bar. Oh! bravely fought; and yet they thrust not home.
Now, Lodovico! now, Mathias! So —— [*Both fall.*
So now they have showed themselves to be tall fellows.

[*Cries within.*] Part 'em, part 'em.

Bar. Ay, part 'em now they are dead. Farewell, farewell. [*Exit.*

Enter FERNEZE, KATHERINE, *and* Attendants

Fern. What sight[n] is this! — my Lodowick[n] slain!
These arms of mine shall be thy sepulchre.

Digitized by Google

Kath. Who is this? my son Mathias slain!
Fern. O Lodowick! had'st thou perished by the Turk,
Wretched Ferneze might have 'venged thy death.
Kath. Thy son slew mine, and I'll revenge his death.
Fern. Look, Katherine, look! — thy son gave mine these wounds.
Kath. Oh! leave to grieve me, I am grieved enough.
Fern. Oh! that my sighs could turn to lively breath;
And these my tears to blood, that he might live.
Kath. Who made them enemies?
Fern. I know not, and that grieves me most of all.
Kath. My son loved thine.
Fern. And so did Lodowick him.
Kath. Lend me that weapon that did kill my son,
And it shall murder me.
Fern. Nay, madam, stay; that weapon was my son's,
And on that rather should Ferneze die.
Kath. Hold, let's inquire the causers of their deaths,
That we may 'venge their blood upon their heads.
Fern. Then take them up, and let them be interred
Within one sacred monument of stone;
Upon which altar I will offer up
My daily sacrifice of sighs and tears,
And with my prayers pierce impartial Heavens,
Till they reveal the causers of our smarts,
Which forced their hands divide united hearts:
Come, Katherine, our losses equal are,
Then of true grief let us take equal share.

[*Exeunt with the bodies.*

SCENE III[n]

Enter ITHAMORE

Itha. Why, was there ever seen such villainy,
So neatly plotted, and so well performed?
Both held in hand,[n] and flatly both beguiled?

Digitized by Google

Enter ABIGAIL

Abig. Why, how now, Ithamore, why laugh'st thou so?

Itha. O mistress, ha! ha! ha!

Abig. Why, what ail'st thou?

Itha. O my master!

Abig. Ha!

Itha. O mistress! I have the bravest, gravest, secret, subtle, bottle-nosed knave to my master, that ever gentleman had.

Abig. Say, knave, why rail'st upon my father thus?

Itha. Oh, my master has the bravest policy.

Abig. Wherein?

Itha. Why, know you not?

Abig. Why, no.

Itha. Know you not of Mathias' and Don Lodowick's disaster?

Abig. No, what was it?

Itha. Why, the devil invented a challenge, my master writ it, and I carried it, first to Lodowick, and *imprimis* to Mathias.

And then they met, and, as the story says,
In doleful wise they ended both their days.

Abig. And was my father furtherer of their deaths?

Itha. Am I Ithamore?

Abig. Yes.

Itha. So sure did your father write, and I carry the challenge.

Abig. Well, Ithamore, let me request thee this,
Go to the new-made nunnery, and inquire
For any of the friars of Saint Jaques,
And say, I pray them come and speak with me.

Itha. I pray, mistress, will you answer me but one question?

Abig. Well, sirrah, what is't?

Itha. A very feeling one; have not the nuns fine sport with the friars now and then?

Digitized by Google

Abig. Go to, sirrah sauce, is this your question? get ye gone.

Itha. I will, forsooth, mistress. [*Exit.*

Abig. Hard-hearted father, unkind Barabas!
Was this the pursuit of thy policy!
To make me show them favour severally,
That by my favour they should both be slain?
Admit thou lov'dst not Lodowick for his sire,
Yet Don Mathias ne'er offended thee:
But thou wert set upon extreme revenge,
Because the governor dispossessed thee once,
And could'st not 'venge it, but upon his son,
Nor on his son, but by Mathias' means;
Nor on Mathias, but by murdering me.
But I perceive there is no love on earth,
Pity in Jews, or piety in Turks,
But here comes cursed Ithamore, with the friar.

Enter ITHAMORE *and* Friar JACOMO

F. Jac. Virgo, salve.

Itha. When! duck you!

Abig. Welcome, grave friar; Ithamore, begone.
[*Exit* ITHAMORE.
Know, holy sir, I am bold to solicit thee.

F. Jac. Wherein?

Abig. To get me be admitted for a nun.

F. Jac. Why, Abigail, it is not yet long since
That I did labour thy admission,
And then thou did'st not like that holy life.

Abig. Then were my thoughts so frail and unconfirmed,
And I was chained to follies of the world:
But now experience, purchased with grief,
Has made me see the difference of things.
My sinful soul, alas, hath paced too long
The fatal labyrinth of misbelief,
Far from the sun that gives eternal life.

Digitized by Google

F. Jac. Who taught thee this?
Abig. The abbess of the house,
Whose zealous admonition I embrace:
Oh, therefore, Jacomo, let me be one,
Although unworthy, of that sisterhood.
F. Jac. Abigail, I will, but see thou change no more,
For that will be most heavy to thy soul.
Abig. That was my father's fault.
F. Jac. Thy father's! how?
Abig. Nay, you shall pardon me. — O Barabas,
Though thou deservest hardly at my hands,
Yet never shall these lips bewray thy life! [*Aside.*
F. Jac. Come, shall we go?
Abig. My duty waits on you.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV[a]

Enter BARABAS, *reading a letter*

Bar. What, Abigail become a nun again!
False and unkind; what, hast thou lost thy father?
And all unknown, and unconstrained of me,
Art thou again got to the nunnery?
Now here she writes, and wills me to repent.
Repentance! *Spurca!* what pretendeth this?
I fear she knows — 'tis so — of my device
In Don Mathias' and Lodovico's deaths:
If so, 'tis time that it be seen into:
For she that varies from me in belief
Gives great presumption that she loves me not;
Or loving, doth dislike of something done. —
But who comes here?

Enter ITHAMORE

O Ithamore, come near;
Come near, my love; come near, thy master's life,
My trusty servant, nay, my second self:

Digitized by Google

For I have now no hope but even in thee,
And on that hope my happiness is built.
When saw'st thou Abigail?
Itha. To-day.
Bar. With whom?
Itha. A friar.
Bar. A friar! false villain, he hath done the deed.
Itha. How, sir?
Bar. Why, made mine Abigail a nun.
Itha. That's no lie, for she sent me for him.
Bar. O unhappy day!
False, credulous, inconstant Abigail!
But let 'em go: and, Ithamore, from hence
Ne'er shall she grieve me more with her disgrace;
Ne'er shall she live to inherit aught of mine,
Be blest of me, nor come within my gates,
But perish underneath my bitter curse,
Like Cain by Adam for his brother's death.
Itha. O master!
Bar. Ithamore, entreat not for her, I am moved,
And she is hateful to my soul and me:
And 'less thou yield to this that I entreat,
I cannot think but that thou hat'st my life.
Itha. Who, I, master? Why, I'll run to some rock,
And throw myself headlong into the sea;
Why, I'll do anything for your sweet sake.
Bar. O trusty Ithamore, no servant, but my friend:
I here adopt thee for mine only heir,
All that I have is thine when I am dead,
And whilst I live use half; spend as myself;
Here, take my keys — I'll give 'em thee anon:
Go buy thee garments: but thou shalt not want:
Only know this, that thus thou art to do:
But first go fetch me in the pot of rice
That for our supper stands upon the fire.
Itha. I hold my head my master's hungry. [*Aside.*] I go, sir. [*Exit.*

Digitized by Google

Bar. Thus every villain ambles after wealth,
Although he ne'er be richer than in hope:
But, husht!

Re-enter ITHAMORE *with the pot*

Itha. Here 'tis, master.

Bar. Well said, Ithamore; what, hast thou brought
The ladle with thee too?

Itha. Yes, sir, the proverb says, he that eats with the devil had need of a long spoon.[n] I have brought you a ladle.

Bar. Very well, Ithamore, then now be secret;
And for thy sake, whom I so dearly love,
Now shalt thou see the death of Abigail,
That thou may'st freely live to be my heir.

Itha. Why, master, will you poison her with a mess of rice porridge? that will preserve life, make her round and plump, and batten more than you are aware.

Bar. Ay, but, Ithamore, seest thou this?
It is a precious powder that I bought
Of an Italian, in Ancona, once,
Whose operation is to bind, infect,
And poison deeply, yet not appear
In forty hours after it is ta'en.

Itha. How, master?

Bar. Thus, Ithamore.
This even they use in Malta here — 'tis called
Saint Jaques' Even — and then I say they use
To send their alms unto the nunneries:
Among the rest bear this, and set it there;
There's a dark entry where they take it in,
Where they must neither see the messenger,
Nor make inquiry who hath sent it them.

Itha. How so?

Bar. Belike there is some ceremony in't.
There, Ithamore, must thou go place this pot!
Stay, let me spice it first.

Digitized by Google

Itha. Pray do, and let me help you, master. Pray let me taste first.

Bar. Prythee do [ITHAMORE *tastes*]: what say'st thou now?

Itha. Troth, master, I'm loath such a pot of pottage should be spoiled.

Bar. Peace, Ithamore, 'tis better so than spared.
Assure thyself thou shalt have broth by the eye,[n]
My purse, my coffer, and myself is thine.

Itha. Well, master, I go.

Bar. Stay, first let me stir it, Ithamore.
As fatal be it to her as the draught
Of which great Alexander drunk and died:
And with her let it work like Borgia's wine,
Whereof his sire, the Pope, was poisonèd.
In few,[n] the blood of Hydra, Lerna's bane:
The juice of hebon,[n] and Cocytus' breath,
And all the poisons of the Stygian pool
Break from the fiery kingdom; and in this
Vomit your venom and envenom her
That like a fiend hath left her father thus.

Itha. What a blessing has he given't! was ever pot of rice porridge so sauced! [*Aside.*] What shall I do with it?

Bar. Oh, my sweet Ithamore, go set it down,
And come again so soon as thou hast done,
For I have other business for thee.

Itha. Here's a drench to poison a whole stable of Flanders mares: I'll carry't to the nuns with a powder.

Bar. And the horse pestilence to boot; away!

Itha. I am gone.
Pay me my wages, for my work is done. [*Exit.*

Bar. I'll pay thee with a vengeance, Ithamore. [*Exit.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE V[a]

Enter FERNEZE, MARTIN DEL BOSCO, Knights, *and* Basso

Fern. Welcome, great basso; how fares Calymath?
What wind drives you thus into Malta-road?
Bas. The wind that bloweth all the world besides —
Desire of gold.
Fern. Desire of gold, great sir?
That's to be gotten in the Western Inde:
In Malta are no golden minerals.
Bas. To you of Malta thus saith Calymath:
The time you took for respite is at hand,
For the performance of your promise passed,
And for the tribute-money I am sent.
Fern. Basso, in brief, 'shalt have no tribute here,
Nor shall the heathens live upon our spoil:
First will we raze the city walls ourselves,
Lay waste the island, hew the temples down,
And, shipping off our goods to Sicily,
Open an entrance for the wasteful sea,
Whose billows beating the resistless banks,
Shall overflow it with their refluence.
Bas. Well, Governor, since thou hast broke the league
By flat denial of the promised tribute,
Talk not of razing down your city walls,
You shall not need trouble yourselves so far,
For Selim Calymath shall come himself,
And with brass bullets batter down your towers,
And turn proud Malta to a wilderness
For these intolerable wrongs of yours;
And so farewell.
Fern. Farewell: [*Exit* Basso.
And now, ye men of Malta, look about,
And let's provide to welcome Calymath:

Digitized by Google

Close your portcullis, charge your basilisks,
And as you profitably take up arms,
So now courageously encounter them;
For by this answer, broken is the league,
And naught is to be looked for now but wars,
And naught to us more welcome is than wars. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE VI[a]

Enter Friar JACOMO *and* Friar BARNARDINE

F. Jac. Oh, brother, brother, all the nuns are sick,
And physic will not help them: they must die.
F. Barn. The abbess sent for me to be confessed:
Oh, what a sad confession will there be!
F. Jac. And so did fair Maria send for me:
I'll to her lodging: hereabouts she lies. [*Exit.*

Enter ABIGAIL

F. Barn. What, all dead, save only Abigail?
Abig. And I shall die too, for I feel death coming.
Where is the friar that conversed with me?
F. Barn. Oh, he is gone to see the other nuns.
Abig. I sent for him, but seeing you are come,
Be you my ghostly father: and first know,
That in this house I lived religiously,
Chaste, and devout, much sorrowing for my sins;
But, ere I came ——
F. Barn. What then?
Abig. I did offend high Heaven so grievously,
As I am almost desperate for my sins:
And one offence torments me more than all.
You knew Mathias and Don Lodowick?
F. Barn. Yes, what of them?
Abig. My father did contract me to 'em both:
First to Don Lodowick; him I never loved;

Digitized by Google

Mathias was the man that I held dear,
And for his sake did I become a nun.

F. Barn. So, say how was their end?

Abig. Both, jealous of my love, envied each other,
And by my father's practice, which is there
Set down at large, the gallants were both slain.
[*Gives a written paper.*

F. Barn. O monstrous villainy!

Abig. To work my peace, this I confess to thee;
Reveal it not, for then my father dies.

F. Barn. Know that confession must not be revealed,
The canon law forbids it, and the priest
That makes it known, being degraded first,
Shall be condemned, and then sent to the fire.

Abig. So I have heard; pray, therefore keep it close.
Death seizeth on my heart: ah, gentle friar!
Convert my father that he may be saved,
And witness that I die a Christian. [*Dies.*

F. Barn. Ay, and a virgin too; that grieves me most:
But I must to the Jew and exclaim on him,
And make him stand in fear of me.

Re-enter Friar JACOMO

F. Jac. O brother, all the nuns are dead, let's bury them.

F. Barn. First help to bury this, then go with me
And help me to exclaim against the Jew.

F. Jac. Why, what has he done?

F. Barn. A thing that makes me tremble to unfold.

F. Jac. What, has he crucified a child?[n]

F. Barn. No, but a worse thing: 'twas told me in shrift,
Thou know'st 'tis death an if it be revealed.
Come, let's away. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

ACT THE FOURTH

SCENE I[a]

Enter BARABAS *and* ITHAMORE. *Bells within*

Bar. There is no music to a Christian's knell:
How sweet the bells ring now the nuns are dead,
That sound at other times like tinker's pans!
I was afraid the poison had not wrought:
Or, though it wrought, it would have done no good,
For every year they swell, and yet they live;
Now all are dead, not one remains alive.

Itha. That's brave, master, but think you it will not be known?

Bar. How can it, if we two be secret?

Itha. For my part fear you not.

Bar. I'd cut thy throat if I did.

Itha. And reason too.
But here's a royal monastery hard by;
Good master, let me poison all the monks.

Bar. Thou shalt not need, for now the nuns are dead
They'll die with grief.

Itha. Do you not sorrow for your daughter's death?

Bar. No, but I grieve because she lived so long.
An Hebrew born, and would become a Christian!
Cazzo, diabolo.

Enter Friar JACOMO *and* Friar BARNARDINE

Itha. Look, look, master, here come two religious caterpillars.

Bar. I smelt 'em ere they came.

Itha. God-a-mercy, nose! come, let's begone.

Digitized by Google

F. Barn. Stay, wicked Jew, repent, I say, and stay.
F. Jac. Thou hast offended, therefore must be damned.
Bar. I fear they know we sent the poisoned broth.
Itha. And so do I, master; therefore speak 'em fair.
F. Barn. Barabas, thou hast ——
F. Jac. Ay, that thou hast ——
Bar. True, I have money, what though I have?
F. Barn. Thou art a ——
F. Jac. Ay, that thou art, a ——
Bar. What needs all this? I know I am a Jew.
F. Barn. Thy daughter ——
F. Jac. Ay, thy daughter ——
Bar. Oh, speak not of her! then I die with grief.
F. Barn. Remember that ——
F. Jac. Ay, remember that ——
Bar. I must needs say that I have been a great usurer.
F. Barn. Thou hast committed ——
Bar. Fornication — but that was in another country;
And besides, the wench is dead.
F. Barn. Ay, but, Barabas,
Remember Mathias and Don Lodowick.
Bar. Why, what of them?
F. Barn. I will not say that by a forged challenge they met.
Bar. She has confest, and we are both undone,
My bosom inmate! but I must dissemble. — [*Aside.*
O holy friars, the burthen of my sins
Lie heavy on my soul; then pray you tell me,
Is't not too late now to turn Christian?
I have been zealous in the Jewish faith,
Hard-hearted to the poor, a covetous wretch,
That would for lucre's sake have sold my soul.
A hundred for a hundred I have ta'en;
And now for store of wealth may I compare
With all the Jews of Malta; but what is wealth?

Digitized by Google

I am a Jew, and therefore am I lost.
Would penance serve to atone for this my sin,
I could afford to whip myself to death ——
Itha. And so could I; but penance will not serve.
Bar. To fast, to pray, and wear a shirt of hair,
And on my knees creep to Jerusalem.
Cellars of wine, and sollars full of wheat,
Warehouses stuft with spices and with drugs,
Whole chests of gold, in bullion, and in coin,
Besides, I know not how much weight in pearl,
Orient and round, have I within my house;
At Alexandria, merchandise unsold:
But yesterday two ships went from this town,
Their voyage will be worth ten thousand crowns.
In Florence, Venice, Antwerp, London, Seville,
Frankfort, Lubeck, Moscow, and where not,
Have I debts owing; and in most of these,
Great sums of money lying in the banco;
All this I'll give to some religious house.
So I may be baptized, and live therein.
F. Jac. O good Barabas, come to our house.
F. Barn. Oh, no, good Barabas, come to our house;
And, Barabas, you know ——
Bar. I know that I have highly sinned.
You shall convert me, you shall have all my wealth.
F. Jac. O Barabas, their laws are strict.
Bar. I know they are, and I will be with you.
F. Barn. They wear no shirts, and they go barefoot too.
Bar. Then 'tis not for me; and I am resolved
You shall confess me, and have all my goods.
[*To* Friar BARNARDINE.
F. Jac. Good Barabas, come to me.
Bar. You see I answer him, and yet he stays;
Rid him away, and go you home with me.
F. Jac. I'll be with you to-night.
Bar. Come to my house at one o'clock this night.

Digitized by Google

F. Jac. You hear your answer, and you may be gone.
F. Barn. Why, go, get you away.
F. Jac. I will not go for thee.
F. Barn. Not! then I'll make thee go.
F. Jac. How, dost call me rogue? [*They fight.*
Itha. Part 'em, master, part 'em.
Bar. This is mere frailty, brethren; be content.
Friar Barnardine, go you with Ithamore:
You know my mind, let me alone with him.
[*Aside to* Friar BARNARDINE.
F. Jac. Why does he go to thy house? let him be gone.
Bar. I'll give him something and so stop his mouth.
[*Exit* ITHAMORE *with* Friar BARNARDINE.
I never heard of any man but he
Maligned the order of the Jacobins:
But do you think that I believe his words?
Why, brother, you converted Abigail;
And I am bound in charity to requite it,
And so I will. O Jacomo, fail not, but come.
F. Jac. But, Barabas, who shall be your godfathers?
For presently you shall be shrived.
Bar. Marry, the Turk[n] shall be one of my godfathers,
But not a word to any of your covent.
F. Jac. I warrant thee, Barabas. [*Exit.*
Bar. So, now the fear is past, and I am safe,
For he that shrived her is within my house;
What if I murdered him ere Jacomo comes?
Now I have such a plot for both their lives
As never Jew nor Christian knew the like:
One turned my daughter, therefore he shall die;
The other knows enough to have my life,
Therefore 'tis not requisite he should live.
But are not both these wise men to suppose
That I will leave my house, my goods, and all,
To fast and be well whipt? I'll none of that.
Now Friar Barnardine I come to you,

Digitized by Google

I'll feast you, lodge you, give you fair words,
And after that, I and my trusty Turk —
No more, but so: it must and shall be done. [*Exit.*

SCENE II[n]

Enter BARABAS *and* ITHAMORE

Bar. Ithamore, tell me, is the friar asleep?
Itha. Yes; and I know not what the reason is,
Do what I can he will not strip himself,
Nor go to bed, but sleeps in his own clothes;
I fear me he mistrusts what we intend.
Bar. No, 'tis an order which the friars use:
Yet, if he knew our meanings, could he 'scape?
Itha. No, none can hear him, cry he ne'er so loud.
Bar. Why, true, therefore did I place him there:
The other chambers open towards the street.
Itha. You loiter, master; wherefore stay we thus?
Oh, how I long to see him shake his heels.
Bar. Come on, sirrah.
Off with your girdle, make a handsome noose.
[ITHAMORE *takes off his girdle and ties a noose in it.*
Friar, awake! [*They put the noose round the* Friar's *neck.*
F. Barn. What, do you mean to strangle me?
Itha. Yes, 'cause you use to confess.
Bar. Blame not us but the proverb — Confess and be hanged; pull hard!
F. Barn. What, will you have my life?
Bar. Pull hard, I say; you would have had my goods.
Itha. Ay, and our lives too, therefore pull amain.
[*They strangle him.*
'Tis neatly done, sir, here's no print at all.
Bar. Then it is as it should be; take him up.
Itha. Nay, master, be ruled by me a little. [*Stands the body upright against the wall and puts a staff in its hand.*]

Digitized by Google

So, let him lean upon his staff; excellent! he stands as if he were begging of bacon.[n]

Bar. Who would not think but that this friar lived? What time o' night is't now, sweet Ithamore?

Itha. Towards one.

Bar. Then will not Jacomo be long from hence.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III[n]

Enter Friar JACOMO

F. Jac. This is the hour wherein I shall proceed;
O happy hour wherein I shall convert
An infidel, and bring his gold into our treasury!
But soft, is not this Barnardine? it is;
And, understanding I should come this way,
Stands here a purpose, meaning me some wrong,
And intercept my going to the Jew. —
Barnardine!
Wilt thou not speak? thou think'st I see thee not;
Away, I'd wish thee, and let me go by:
No, wilt thou not? nay, then, I'll force my way;
And see, a staff stands ready for the purpose:
As thou lik'st that, stop me another time.

[*Takes the staff and strikes the body, which falls down.*

Enter BARABAS *and* ITHAMORE

Bar. Why, how now, Jacomo, what hast thou done?

F. Jac. Why, stricken him that would have struck at me.

Bar. Who is it? Barnardine! now out, alas, he's slain!

Itha. Ay, master, he's slain; look how his brains drop out on's nose.

F. Jac. Good sirs, I have done't, but nobody knows it but you two — I may escape.

Digitized by Google

Bar. So might my man and I hang with you for company.

Itha. No, let us bear him to the magistrates.

F. Jac. Good Barabas, let me go.

Bar. No, pardon me; the law must have its course.
I must be forced to give in evidence,
That being importuned by this Barnardine
To be a Christian, I shut him out,
And there he sat: now I, to keep my word,
And give my goods and substance to your house,
Was up thus early; with intent to go
Unto your friary, because you stayed.

Itha. Fie upon 'em, master; will you turn Christian when holy friars turn devils and murder one another?

Bar. No, for this example I'll remain a Jew:
Heaven bless me! what, a friar a murderer?
When shall you see a Jew commit the like?

Itha. Why, a Turk could ha' done no more.

Bar. To-morrow is the sessions; you shall to it.
Come, Ithamore, let's help to take him hence.

F. Jac. Villains, I am a sacred person; touch me not.

Bar. The law shall touch you, we'll but lead you, we:
'Las, I could weep at your calamity!
Take in the staff too, for that must be shown:
Law wills that each particular be known. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV[n]

Enter BELLAMIRA *and* PILIA-BORSA

Bell. Pilia-Borsa, did'st thou meet with Ithamore?

Pilia. I did.

Bell. And did'st thou deliver my letter?

Pilia. I did.

Bell. And what think'st thou? will he come?

Digitized by Google

Pilia. I think so, but yet I cannot tell; for at the reading of the letter he looked like a man of another world.

Bell. Why so?

Pilia. That such a base slave as he should be saluted by such a tall man as I am, from such a beautiful dame as you.

Bell. And what said he?

Pilia. Not a wise word, only gave me a nod, as who should say, "Is it even so?" and so I left him, being driven to a nonplus at the critical aspect of my terrible countenance.

Bell. And where didst meet him?

Pilia. Upon mine own freehold, within forty feet of the gallows, conning his neck-verse, I take it, looking of a friar's execution, whom I saluted with an old hempen proverb, *Hodie tibi, cras mihi*, and so I left him to the mercy of the hangman: but the exercise being done, see where he comes.

Enter ITHAMORE

Itha. I never knew a man take his death so patiently as this friar; he was ready to leap off ere the halter was about his neck; and when the hangman had put on his hempen tippet, he made such haste to his prayers, as if he had had another cure to serve. Well, go whither he will, I'll be none of his followers in haste: and, now I think on't, going to the execution, a fellow met me with a muschatoes like a raven's wing, and a dagger with a hilt like a warming-pan, and he gave me a letter from one Madam Bellamira, saluting me in such sort as if he had meant to make clean my boots with his lips; the effect was, that I should come to her house. I wonder what the reason is; it may be she sees more in me than I can find in myself: for she writes further, that she loves me ever since she saw me, and who would not requite such love? Here's her house, and here she

Digitized by Google

comes, and now would I were gone; I am not worthy to look upon her.

Pilia. This is the gentleman you writ to.

Itha. Gentleman! he flouts me; what gentry can be in a poor Turk of tenpence?[n] I'll be gone. [*Aside.*

Bell. Is't not a sweet-faced youth, Pilia?

Itha. Again, "sweet youth!" [*Aside.*] — Did not you, sir, bring the sweet youth a letter?

Pilia. I did, sir, and from this gentlewoman, who, as myself, and the rest of the family, stand or fall at your service.

Bell. Though woman's modesty should hale me back, I can withhold no longer; welcome, sweet love.

Itha. Now am I clean, or rather foully out of the way. [*Aside.*

Bell. Whither so soon?

Itha. I'll go steal some money from my master to make me handsome [*Aside*]. — Pray, pardon me, I must go and see a ship discharged.

Bell. Canst thou be so unkind to leave me thus?

Pilia. An ye did but know how she loves you, sir!

Itha. Nay, I care not how much she loves me — Sweet Bellamira, would I had my master's wealth for thy sake!

Pilia. And you can have it, sir, an if you please.

Itha. If 'twere above ground, I could and would have it; but he hides and buries it up, as partridges do their eggs, under the earth.

Pilia. And is't not possible to find it out?

Itha. By no means possible.

Bell. What shall we do with this base villain, then? [*Aside to* PILIA-BORSA.

Pilia. Let me alone; do you but speak him fair. — [*Aside to her.*

But, [sir,] you know some secrets of the Jew,
Which, if they were revealed, would do him harm.

Itha. Ay, and such as — Go to, no more! I'll make

Digitized by Google

him send me half he has, and glad he 'scapes so too. I'll write unto him; we'll have money straight.

Pilia. Send for a hundred crowns at least.

Itha. Ten hundred thousand crowns. [*Writing.*] "Master Barabas."

Pilia. Write not so submissively, but threatening him.

Itha. [*writing*] "Sirrah, Barabas, send me a hundred crowns."

Pilia. Put in two hundred at least.

Itha. [*writing*] "I charge thee send me three hundred by this bearer, and this shall be your warrant: if you do not — no more, but so."

Pilia. Tell him you will confess.

Itha. [*writing*] "Otherwise I'll confess all." — Vanish, and return in a twinkle.

Pilia. Let me alone; I'll use him in his kind.

[*Exit* PILIA-BORSA *with the letter.*

Itha. Hang him, Jew!

Bell. Now, gentle Ithamore, lie in my lap. —
Where are my maids? provide a running banquet;
Send to the merchant, bid him bring me silks,
Shall Ithamore, my love, go in such rags?

Itha. And bid the jeweller come hither too.

Bell. I have no husband, sweet; I'll marry thee.

Itha. Content: but we will leave this paltry land,
And sail from hence to Greece, to lovely Greece.
I'll be thy Jason, thou my golden fleece;
Where painted carpets o'er the meads are hurled,
And Bacchus' vineyards overspread the world;
Where woods and forests go in goodly green,
I'll be Adonis, thou shalt be Love's Queen.
The meads, the orchards, and the primrose-lanes,
Instead of sedge and reed, bear sugar-canes:
Thou in those groves, by Dis above,[n]
Shalt live with me and be my love.[n]

Bell. Whither will I not go with gentle Ithamore?

Digitized by Google

Re-enter PILIA-BORSA

Itha. How now! hast thou the gold?

Pilia. Yes.

Itha. But came it freely? did the cow give down her milk freely?

Pilia. At reading of the letter, he stared and stamped and turned aside. I took him by the beard, and looked upon him thus; told him he were best to send it; then he hugged and embraced me.

Itha. Rather for fear than love.

Pilia. Then, like a Jew, he laughed and jeered, and told me he loved me for your sake, and said what a faithful servant you had been.

Itha. The more villain he to keep me thus; here's goodly 'parel, is there not?

Pilia. To conclude, he gave me ten crowns.

[*Gives the money to* ITHAMORE.

Itha. But ten? I'll not leave him worth a grey groat. Give me a ream[n] of paper; we'll have a kingdom of gold for't.

Pilia. Write for five hundred crowns.

Itha. [*writing*]. "Sirrah, Jew, as you love your life send me five hundred crowns, and give the bearer one hundred." — Tell him I must have't.

Pilia. I warrant your worship shall have't.

Itha. And if he ask why I demand so much, tell him I scorn to write a line under a hundred crowns.

Pilia. You'd make a rich poet, sir. I am gone.

[*Exit.*

Itha. Take thou the money; spend it for my sake.

Bell. 'Tis not thy money, but thyself I weigh;
Thus Bellamira esteems of gold. [*Throws it aside.*
But thus of thee. [*Kisses him.*

Itha. That kiss again! she runs division[n] of my lips. What an eye she casts on me! It twinkles like a star.

Bell. Come, my dear love, let's in and sleep together.

Digitized by Google

Itha. Oh, that ten thousand nights were put in one, that we might sleep seven years together afore we wake!

Bell. Come, amorous wag, first banquet, and then sleep. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE V[a]

Enter BARABAS, *reading a letter*

Bar. "Barabas, send me three hundred crowns." — Plain Barabas! Oh, that wicked courtesan!
He was not wont to call me Barabas.
"Or else I will confess:" ay, there it goes:
But, if I get him, *coupe de gorge* for that.
He sent a shaggy, tattered, staring slave,
That when he speaks draws out his grisly beard,
And winds it twice or thrice about his ear;
Whose face has been a grindstone for men's swords;
His hands are hacked, some fingers cut quite off;
Who, when he speaks, grunts like a hog, and looks
Like one that is employed in catzerie
And crossbiting — such a rogue
As is the husband to a hundred whores:
And I by him must send three hundred crowns!
Well, my hope is, he will not stay there still;
And when he comes: Oh, that he were but here!

Enter PILIA-BORSA

Pilia. Jew, I must have more gold.

Bar. Why, want'st thou any of thy tale?

Pilia. No; but three hundred will not serve his turn.

Bar. Not serve his turn, sir?

Pilia. No, sir; and, therefore, I must have five hundred more.

Bar. I'll rather ——

Pilia. Oh, good words, sir, and send it you were best! see, there's his letter. [*Gives letter.*

Digitized by Google

Bar. Might he not as well come as send? pray, bid him come and fetch it; what he writes for you, ye shall have straight.

Pilia. Ay, and the rest too, or else ——

Bar. I must make this villain away. [*Aside.*] Please you dine with me, sir — and you shall be most heartily poisoned. [*Aside.*

Pilia. No, God-a-mercy. Shall I have these crowns?

Bar. I cannot do it, I have lost my keys.

Pilia. Oh, if that be all, I can pick ope your locks.

Bar. Or climb up to my counting-house window: you know my meaning.

Pilia. I know enough, and therefore talk not to me of your counting-house. The gold! or know, Jew, it is in my power to hang thee.

Bar. I am betrayed. — [*Aside.*

'Tis not five hundred crowns that I esteem,
I am not moved at that: this angers me,
That he, who knows I love him as myself,
Should write in this imperious vein. Why, sir,
You know I have no child, and unto whom
Should I leave all but unto Ithamore?

Pilia. Here's many words, but no crowns: the crowns!

Bar. Commend me to him, sir, most humbly,
And unto your good mistress, as unknown.

Pilia. Speak, shall I have 'em, sir

Bar. Sir, here they are. — [*Gives money.*
Oh, that I should part with so much gold! — [*Aside.*
Here, take 'em, fellow, with as good a will ——
As I would see thee hanged [*Aside*]; Oh, love stops my breath:
Never loved man servant as I do Ithamore!

Pilia. I know it, sir.

Bar. Pray, when, sir, shall I see you at my house?

Pilia. Soon enough, to your cost, sir. Fare you well. [*Exit.*

Digitized by Google

Bar. Nay, to thine own cost, villain, if thou com'st!
Was ever Jew tormented as I am?
To have a shag-rag knave to come, force from me
Three hundred crowns — and then five hundred crowns!
Well, I must seek a means to rid 'em all,
And presently; for in his villainy
He will tell all he knows, and I shall die for't.
I have it:
I will in some disguise go see the slave,
And how the villain revels with my gold. [*Exit.*

SCENE VI[a]

Enter BELLAMIRA, ITHAMORE, *and* PILIA-BORSA

Bell. I'll pledge thee, love, and therefore drink it off.

Itha. Say'st thou me so? have at it; and do you hear? [*Whispers.*

Bell. Go to, it shall be so.

Itha. Of that condition I will drink it up.
Here's to thee!

Bell. Nay, I'll have all or none.

Itha. There, if thou lov'st me do not leave a drop.

Bell. Love thee! fill me three glasses.

Itha. Three and fifty dozen, I'll pledge thee.

Pilia. Knavely spoke, and like a knight-at-arms.

Itha. Hey, *Rivo Castiliano!* a man's a man!

Bell. Now to the Jew.

Itha. Ha! to the Jew, and send me money he were best.

Pilia. What would'st thou do if he should send thee none?

Itha. Do nothing; but I know what I know; he's a murderer.

Bell. I had not thought he had been so brave a man.

Digitized by Google

Itha. You knew Mathias and the governor's son; he and I killed 'em both, and yet never touched 'em.

Pilia. Oh, bravely done.

Itha. I carried the broth that poisoned the nuns; and he and I, snickle hand too fast,[n] strangled a friar.

Bell. You two alone?

Itha. We two; and 'twas never known, nor never shall be for me.

Pilia. This shall with me unto the governor. [*Aside to* BELLAMIRA.

Bell. And fit it should: but first let's ha' more gold. — [*Aside to* PILIA-BORSA.

Come, gentle Ithamore, lie in my lap.

Itha. Love me little, love me long; let music rumble Whilst I in thy incony lap do tumble.

Enter BARABAS, *disguised as a French musician, with a lute, and a nosegay in his hat*

Bell. A French musician! come, let's hear your skill.

Bar. Must tuna my lute for sound, twang, twang, first.

Itha. Wilt drink, Frenchman? here's to thee with a —— Pox on this drunken hiccup!

Bar. Gramercy, monsieur.

Bell. Prythee, Pilia-Borsa, bid the fiddler give me the posy in his hat there.

Pilia. Sirrah, you must give my mistress your posy.

Bar. *A votre commandement, madame.* [*Giving nosegay.*

Bell. How sweet, my Ithamore, the flowers smell!

Itha. Like thy breath, sweetheart; no violet like 'em.

Pilia. Foh! methinks they stink like a hollyhock.

Bar. So, now I am revenged upon 'em all.

The scent thereof was death; I poisoned it. [*Aside.*

Itha. Play, fiddler, or I'll cut your cat's guts into chitterlings.

Digitized by Google

Bar. *Pardonnez moi*, be no in tune yet; so now, now all be in.

Itha. Give him a crown, and fill me out more wine.

Pilia. There's two crowns for thee; play.

Bar. How liberally the villain gives me mine own gold! [*Aside.* BARABAS *then plays.*

Pilia. Methinks he fingers very well.

Bar. So did you when you stole my gold. [*Aside.*

Pilia. How swift he runs!

Bar. You ran swifter when you threw my gold out of my window. [*Aside.*

Bell. Musician, hast been in Malta long?

Bar. Two, three, four month, madame.

Itha. Dost not know a Jew, one Barabas?

Bar. Very mush; monsieur, you no be his man?

Pilia. His man?

Itha. I scorn the peasant; tell him so.

Bar. He knows it already. [*Aside.*

Itha. 'Tis a strange thing of that Jew, he lives upon pickled grasshoppers and sauced mushrooms.

Bar. What a slave's this? the governor feeds not as I do. [*Aside.*

Itha. He never put on clean shirt since he was circumcised.

Bar. O rascal! I change myself twice a day. [*Aside.*

Itha. The hat he wears, Judas left under the elder[n] when he hanged himself.

Bar. 'Twas sent me for a present from the great Cham. [*Aside.*

Pilia. A musty slave he is. — Whither now, fiddler?

Bar. *Pardonnez moi, monsieur*, me be no well.

Pilia. Farewell, fiddler! [*Exit* BARABAS] One letter more to the Jew.

Bell. Prythee, sweet love, one more, and write it sharp.

Itha. No, I'll send by word of mouth now. — Bid him deliver thee a thousand crowns, by the same token, that

Digitized by Google

the nuns loved rice, that Friar Barnardine slept in his own clothes; any of 'em will do it.

Pilia. Let me alone to urge it, now I know the meaning.

Itha. The meaning has a meaning. Come let's in:
To undo a Jew is charity, and not sin. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

ACT THE FIFTH

SCENE I[n]

Enter FERNEZE, Knights, MARTIN DEL BOSCO, *and* Officers

Fern. Now, gentlemen, betake you to your arms,
And see that Malta be well fortified;
And it behoves you to be resolute;
For Calymath, having hovered here so long,
Will win the town, or die before the walls.
1st Knight. And die he shall, for we will never yield.

Enter BELLAMIRA *and* PILIA-BORSA

Bell. Oh, bring us to the governor.
Fern. Away with her! she is a courtesan.
Bell. Whate'er I am, yet, governor, hear me speak;
I bring thee news by whom thy son was slain:
Mathias did it not; it was the Jew.
Pilia. Who, besides the slaughter of these gentlemen,
Poisoned his own daughter and the nuns,
Strangled a friar, and I know not what
Mischief besides.
Fern. Had we but proof of this ——
Bell. Strong proof, my lord; his man's now at my lodging,
That was his agent; he'll confess it all.
Fern. Go fetch him straight [*Exeunt* Officers]. I always feared that Jew.

Enter Officers *with* BARABAS *and* ITHAMORE

Bar. I'll go alone; dogs! do not hale me thus.
Itha. Nor me neither, I cannot outrun you, constable — O my belly!

Digitized by Google

Bar. One dram of powder more had made all sure;
What a damned slave was I! [*Aside.*

Fern. Make fires, heat irons, let the rack be fetched.

1st Knight. Nay, stay, my lord; 'tmay be he will confess.

Bar. Confess! what mean you, lords? who should confess?

Fern. Thou and thy Turk; 'twas you that slew my son.

Itha. Guilty, my lord, I confess. Your son and Mathias were both contracted unto Abigail; he forged a counterfeit challenge.

Bar. Who carried that challenge?

Itha. I carried it, I confess; but who writ it? Marry, even he that strangled Barnardine, poisoned the nuns and his own daughter.

Fern. Away with him! his sight is death to me.

Bar. For what, you men of Malta? hear me speak:
She is a courtesan, and he a thief,
And he my bondman. Let me have law,
For none of this can prejudice my life.

Fern. Once more, away with him; you shall have law.

Bar. Devils, do your worst! I'll live in spite of you. [*Aside.*
As these have spoke, so be it to their souls! —
I hope the poisoned flowers will work anon. [*Aside.*

[*Exeunt* Officers *with* BARABAS *and* ITHAMORE, BELLAMIRA *and* PILIA-BORSA.

Enter KATHERINE

Kath. Was my Mathias murdered by the Jew?
Ferneze, 'twas thy son that murdered him.

Fern. Be patient, gentle madam, it was he;
He forged the daring challenge made them fight.

Kath. Where is the Jew? where is that murderer?

Fern. In prison till the law has passed on him.

Digitized by Google

Re-enter First Officer

1st Off. My lord, the courtesan and her man are dead:
So is the Turk and Barabas the Jew.
Fern. Dead!
1st Off. Dead, my lord, and here they bring his body.
Bosc. This sudden death of his is very strange.

Re-enter Officers *carrying* BARABAS *as dead*

Fern. Wonder not at it, sir, the Heavens are just;
Their deaths were like their lives, then think not of 'em.
Since they are dead, let them be burièd;
For the Jew's body, throw that o'er the walls,
To be a prey for vultures and wild beasts. —
So now away, and fortify the town.
[*Exeunt all, leaving* BARABAS *on the floor.*

SCENE II[a]

BARABAS *discovered rising*

Bar. What, all alone? well fare, sleepy drink.
I'll be revenged on this accursèd town;
For by my means Calymath shall enter in.
I'll help to slay their children and their wives,
To fire the churches, pull their houses down,
~~Take my goods~~ too, and seize upon my lands.
I hope to see the governor a slave,
And, rowing in a galley, whipt to death.

Enter CALYMATH, Bassoes, *and* Turks

Caly. Whom have we here, a spy?
Bar. Yes, my good lord, one that can spy a place
Where you may enter, and surprise the town:
My name is Barabas: I am a Jew.

Digitized by Google

Caly. Art thou that Jew whose goods we heard were sold
For tribute-money?
Bar. The very same, my lord:
And since that time they have hired a slave, my man,
To accuse me of a thousand villainies:
I was imprisonèd, but 'scaped their hands.
Caly. Did'st break prison?
Bar. No, no;
I drank of poppy and cold mandrake juice:
And being asleep, belike they thought me dead,
And threw me o'er the walls: so, or how else,
The Jew is here, and rests at your command.
Caly. 'Twas bravely done: but tell me, Barabas,
Canst thou, as thou report'st, make Malta ours?
Bar. Fear not, my lord, for here against the sluice,
The rock is hollow, and of purpose digged,
To make a passage for the running streams
And common channels of the city.
Now, whilst you give assault unto the walls,
I'll lead five hundred soldiers through the vault,
And rise with them i' the middle of the town,
Open the gates for you to enter in;
And by this means the city is your own.
Caly. If this be true, I'll make thee governor.
Bar. And if it be not true, then let me die.
Caly. Thou'st doomed thyself. Assault it presently.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III[n]

Alarums within. *Enter* CALYMATH, Bassoes, Turks, *and* BARABAS, *with* FERNEZE *and* Knights *prisoners*

Caly. Now vail your pride, you captive Christians,
And kneel for mercy to your conquering foe:
Now where's the hope you had of haughty Spain?

Digitized by Google

Ferneze, speak, had it not been much better
T'have kept thy promise than be thus surprised?
Fern. What should I say? We are captives and must yield.
Caly. Ay, villains, you must yield, and under Turkish yokes
Shall groaning bear the burden of our ire;
And, Barabas, as erst we promised thee,
For thy desert we make thee governor;
Use them at thy discretion.
Bar. Thanks, my lord.
Fern. O fatal day, to fall into the hands
Of such a traitor and unhallowed Jew!
What greater misery could Heaven inflict?
Caly. 'Tis our command: and, Barabas, we give
To guard thy person these our Janizaries:
Entreat them well, as we have usèd thee.
And now, brave bassoes, come, we'll walk about
The ruined town, and see the wreck we made —
Farewell, brave Jew; farewell, great Barabas!
Bar. May all good fortune follow Calymath!
[*Exeunt* CALYMATH *and* Bassoes.
And now, as entrance to our safety,
To prison with the governor and these
Captains, his consorts and confederates.
Fern. O villain! Heaven will be revenged on thee.
Bar. Away! no more; let him not trouble me.
[*Exeunt* Turks, *with* FERNEZE *and* Knights.[n]
Thus hast thou gotten, by thy policy,
No simple place, no small authority,
I now am governor of Malta; true —
But Malta hates me, and, in hating me,
My life's in danger, and what boots it thee,
Poor Barabas, to be the governor,
Whenas thy life shall be at their command?
No, Barabas, this must be looked into;
And, since by wrong thou gott'st authority,

Digitized by Google

Maintain it bravely by firm policy,
At least unprofitably lose it not:
For he that liveth in authority,
And neither gets him friends, nor fills his bags,
Lives like the ass, that Æsop speaketh of,
That labours with a load of bread and wine,
And leaves it off to snap on thistle-tops:
But Barabas will be more circumspect.
Begin betimes; occasion's bald behind;
Slip not thine opportunity, for fear too late
Thou seek'st for much, but canst not compass it. —
Within here!

Enter FERNEZE, *with a* Guard

Fern. My lord?

Bar. Ay, "lord"; thus slaves will learn.
Now, governor — stand by there, wait within.
[*Exeunt* Guard.
This is the reason that I sent for thee;
Thou seest thy life and Malta's happiness
Are at my arbitrament; and Barabas
At his discretion may dispose of both;
Now tell me, governor, and plainly too,
What think'st thou shall become of it and thee?

Fern. This, Barabas; since things are in thy power,
I see no reason but of Malta's wreck,
Nor hope of thee but extreme cruelty;
Nor fear I death, nor will I flatter thee.

Bar. Governor, good words; be not so furious.
'Tis not thy life which can avail me aught;
Yet you do live, and live for me you shall:
And, as for Malta's ruin, think you not
'Twere slender policy for Barabas
To dispossess himself of such a place?
For sith, as once you said, 'tis in this isle,
In Malta here, that I have got my goods,

Digitized by Google

And in this city still have had success,
And now at length am grown your governor,
Yourselves shall see it shall not be forgot:
For, as a friend not known, but in distress,
I'll rear up Malta, now remediless.
Fern. Will Barabas recover Malta's loss?
Will Barabas be good to Christians?
Bar. What wilt thou give me, governor, to procure
A dissolution of the slavish bands
Wherein the Turk hath yoked your land and you?
What will you give me if I render you
The life of Calymath, surprise his men,
And in an outhouse of the city shut
His soldiers, till I have consumed 'em all with fire?
What will you give him that procureth this?
Fern. Do but bring this to pass which thou pretendest,
Deal truly with us as thou intimatest,
And I will send amongst the citizens,
And by my letters privately procure
Great sums of money for thy recompense:
Nay more, do this, and live thou governor still.
Bar. Nay, do thou this, Ferneze, and be free;
Governor, I enlarge thee; live with me,
Go walk about the city, see thy friends:
Tush, send not letters to 'em, go thyself,
And let me see what money thou canst make;
Here is my hand that I'll set Malta free:
And thus we cast it: to a solemn feast
I will invite young Selim Calymath,
Where be thou present only to perform
One stratagem that I'll impart to thee,
Wherein no danger shall betide thy life,
And I will warrant Malta free for ever.
Fern. Here is my hand; believe me, Barabas,
I will be there, and do as thou desirest.
When is the time?
Bar. Governor, presently:

Digitized by Google

For Calymath, when he hath viewed the town,
Will take his leave and sail towards Ottoman.
Fern. Then will I, Barabas, about this coin,
And bring it with me to thee in the evening.
Bar. Do so, but fail not; now farewell, Ferneze! —
[*Exit* FERNEZE.
And thus far roundly goes the business:
Thus loving neither, will I live with both,
Making a profit of my policy;
And he from whom my most advantage comes
Shall be my friend.
This is the life we Jews are used to lead;
And reason too, for Christians do the like.
Well, now about effecting this device;
First to surprise great Selim's soldiers,
And then to make provision for the feast,
That at one instant all things may be done:
My policy detests prevention:
To what event my secret purpose drives,
I know; and they shall witness with their lives. [*Exit.*

SCENE IV[a]

Enter CALYMATH *and* Bassoes

Caly. Thus have we viewed the city, seen the sack,
And caused the ruins to be new-repaired,
Which with our bombards' shot and basilisk[s]
We rent in sunder at our entry:
And now I see the situation,
And how secure this conquered island stands
Environed with the Mediterranean Sea,
Strong-countermined with other petty isles;
And, toward Calabria, backed by Sicily,
(Where Syracusian Dionysius reigned,)
Two lofty turrets that command the town;
I wonder how it could be conquered thus.

Digitized by Google

Enter a Messenger

Mess. From Barabas, Malta's governor, I bring
A message unto mighty Calymath;
Hearing his sovereign was bound for sea,
To sail to Turkey, to great Ottoman,
He humbly would entreat your majesty
To come and see his homely citadel,
And banquet with him ere thou leav'st the isle.

Caly. To banquet with him in his citadel?
I fear me, messenger, to feast my train
Within a town of war so lately pillaged,
Will be too costly and too troublesome:
Yet would I gladly visit Barabas,
For well has Barabas deserved of us.

Mess. Selim, for that, thus saith the governor,
That he hath in his store a pearl so big,
So precious, and withal so orient,
As, be it valued but indifferently,
The price thereof will serve to entertain
Selim and all his soldiers for a month;
Therefore he humbly would entreat your highness
Not to depart till he has feasted you.

Caly. I cannot feast my men in Malta walls,
Except he place his tables in the streets.

Mess. Know, Selim, that there is a monastery
Which standeth as an outhouse to the town:
There will he banquet them; but thee at home,
With all thy bassoes and brave followers.

Caly. Well, tell the governor we grant his suit,
We'll in this summer evening feast with him.

Mess. I shall, my lord. [*Exit.*

Caly. And now, bold bassoes, let us to our tents,
And meditate how we may grace us best
To solemnize our governor's great feast. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE V[n]

Enter FERNEZE, Knights, *and* MARTIN DEL BOSCO

Fern. In this, my countrymen, be ruled by me,
Have special care that no man sally forth
Till you shall hear a culverin discharged
By him that bears the linstock, kindled thus;
Then issue out and come to rescue me,
For happily I shall be in distress,
Or you releasèd of this servitude.
1*st Knight.* Rather than thus to live as Turkish thralls,
What will we not adventure?
Fern. On then, begone.
Knights. Farewell, grave governor!
[*Exeunt on one side* Knights *and* MARTIN DEL BOSCO; *on the other* FERNEZE.

SCENE VI[n]

Enter, above, BARABAS, *with a hammer, very busy; and* Carpenters

Bar. How stand the cords? How hang these hinges? fast?
Are all the cranes and pulleys sure?
1*st Carp.* All fast.
Bar. Leave nothing loose, all levelled to my mind.
Why now I see that you have art indeed.
There, carpenters, divide that gold amongst you:
[*Gives money.*
Go swill in bowls of sack and muscadine!
Down to the cellar, taste of all my wines.
1*st Carp.* We shall, my lord, and thank you.
[*Exeunt* Carpenters.
Bar. And, if you like them, drink your fill and die:
For so I live, perish may all the world!

Digitized by Google

Now Selim Calymath return me word
That thou wilt come, and I am satisfied.

Enter Messenger

Now, sirrah, what, will he come?
Mess. He will; and has commanded all his men
To come ashore, and march through Malta streets,
That thou mayest feast them in thy citadel.
Bar. Then now are all things as my wish would have 'em,
There wanteth nothing but the governor's pelf,
And see, he brings it.

Enter FERNEZE

Now, governor, the sum.
Fern. With free consent, a hundred thousand pounds.
Bar. Pounds say'st thou, governor? well, since it is no more,
I'll satisfy myself with that; nay, keep it still,
For, if I keep not promise, trust not me.
And, governor, now partake my policy:
First, for his army; they are sent before,
Entered the monastery, and underneath
In several places are field-pieces pitched,
Bombards, whole barrels full of gunpowder,
That on the sudden shall dissever it,
And batter all the stones about their ears,
Whence none can possibly escape alive.
Now, as for Calymath and his consorts,
Here have I made a dainty gallery,
The floor whereof, this cable being cut,
Doth fall asunder; so that it doth sink
Into a deep pit past recovery.
Here, hold that knife [*Throws down a knife*], and when thou seest he comes,
And with his bassoes shall be blithely set,

Digitized by Google

A warning-piece shall be shot off from the tower,
To give thee knowledge when to cut the cord
And fire the house; say, will not this be brave?
Fern. Oh, excellent! here, hold thee, Barabas,
I trust thy word, take what I promised thee.
Bar. No, governor, I'll satisfy thee first,
Thou shalt not live in doubt of anything.
Stand close, for here they come [FERNEZE *retires*]. Why, is not this
A kingly kind of trade to purchase towns
By treachery and sell 'em by deceit?
Now tell me, worldlings, underneath the sun
If greater falsehood ever has been done?

Enter CALYMATH *and* Bassoes

Caly. Come, my companion bassoes; see, I pray,
How busy Barabas is there above
To entertain us in his gallery;
Let us salute him. Save thee, Barabas!
Bar. Welcome, great Calymath!
Fern. How the slave jeers at him. [*Aside.*
Bar. Will't please thee, mighty Selim Calymath,
To ascend our homely stairs?
Caly. Ay, Barabas —
Come, bassoes, ascend.
Fern. [*coming forward*]. Stay, Calymath!
For I will show thee greater courtesy
Than Barabas would have afforded thee.
Knight [*within*]. Sound a charge there!

[*A charge sounded within.* FERNEZE *cuts the cord: the floor of the gallery gives way, and* BARABAS *falls into a caldron.*

Enter MARTIN DEL BOSCO *and* Knights

Caly. How now! what means this?
Bar. Help, help me! Christians, help!

Digitized by Google

Fern. See, Calymath, this was devised for thee!
Caly. Treason! treason! bassoes, fly!
Fern. No, Selim, do not fly;
See his end first, and fly then if thou canst.
Bar. Oh, help me, Selim! help me, Christians!
Governor, why stand you all so pitiless?
Fern. Should I in pity of thy plaints or thee,
Accursèd Barabas, base Jew, relent?
No, thus I'll see thy treachery repaid,
But wish thou hadst behaved thee otherwise.
Bar. You will not help me then?
Fern. No, villain, no.
Bar. And, villains, know you cannot help me now. —
Then, Barabas, breathe forth thy latest hate,
And in the fury of thy torments strive
To end thy life with resolution.
Know, governor, 'twas I that slew thy son;
I framed the challenge that did make them meet:
Know, Calymath, I aimed thy overthrow,
And had I but escaped this stratagem,
I would have brought confusion on you all,
Damned Christian dogs! and Turkish infidels!
But now begins the extremity of heat
To pinch me with intolerable pangs:
Die, life! fly, soul! tongue, curse thy fill, and die! [*Dies.*
Caly. Tell me, you Christians, what doth this portend?
Fern. This train he laid to have entrapped thy life;
Now, Selim, note the unhallowed deeds of Jews:
Thus he determined to have handled thee,
But I have rather chose to save thy life.
Caly. Was this the banquet he prepared for us?
Let's hence, lest further mischief be pretended.
Fern. Nay, Selim, stay; for, since we have thee here,
We will not let thee part so suddenly:
Besides, if we should let thee go, all's one,
For with thy galleys could'st thou not get hence,
Without fresh men to rig and furnish them.

Digitized by Google

Caly. Tush, governor, take thou no care for that,
My men are all aboard,
And do attend my coming there by this.
Fern. Why, heard'st thou not the trumpet sound a charge?
Caly. Yes, what of that?
Fern. Why, then the house was fired,
Blown up, and all thy soldiers massacred.
Caly. O monstrous treason!
Fern. A Jew's courtesy:
For he that did by treason work our fall,
By treason hath delivered thee to us:
Know, therefore, till thy father hath made good
The ruins done to Malta and to us,
Thou canst not part; for Malta shall be freed,
Or Selim ne'er return to Ottoman.
Caly. Nay, rather, Christians, let me go to Turkey,
In person there to mediate your peace;
To keep me here will not advantage you.
Fern. Content thee, Calymath, here thou must stay,
And live in Malta prisoner; for, come all the world
To rescue thee, so will we guard us now,
As sooner shall they drink the ocean dry
Than conquer Malta, or endanger us.
So march away, and let due praise be given
Neither to Fate nor Fortune, but to Heaven. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

EDWARD THE SECOND

Digitized by Google

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ[a]

KING EDWARD THE SECOND.
PRINCE EDWARD, his Son, afterwards King Edward the Third.
EARL OF KENT, Brother of King Edward the Second.
GAVESTON.
WARWICK.
LANCASTER.
PEMBROKE.
ARUNDEL.
LEICESTER.
BERKELEY.
MORTIMER, the elder.
MORTIMER, the younger, his Nephew.
SPENSER, the elder.
SPENSER, the younger, his Son.
ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY.
BISHOP OF COVENTRY.
BISHOP OF WINCHESTER.
BALDOCK.
BEAUMONT.
TRUSSEL.
GURNEY.
MATREVIS.
LIGHTBORN.
SIR JOHN OF HAINAULT.
LEVUNE.
RICE AP HOWEL.
Abbot, Monks, Herald, Lords, Poor Men, James, Mower, Champion, Messengers, Soldiers, and Attendants.

QUEEN ISABELLA, Wife of King Edward the Second.
Niece to King Edward the Second, Daughter of the Duke of Gloucester.
Ladies.

Digitized by Google

EDWARD THE SECOND

ACT THE FIRST

SCENE I[a]

Enter GAVESTON, *reading a letter*

Gav. "My father is deceased! Come, Gaveston,
And share the kingdom with thy dearest friend."
Ah! words that make me surfeit with delight!
What greater bliss can hap to Gaveston
Than live and be the favourite of a king!
Sweet prince, I come; these, these thy amorous lines
Might have enforced me to have swum from France,
And, like Leander, gasped upon the sand,
So thou would'st smile, and take me in thine arms.
The sight of London to my exiled eyes
Is as Elysium to a new-come soul;
Not that I love the city, or the men,
But that it harbours him I hold so dear —
The king, upon whose bosom let me lie,
And with the world be still at enmity.
What need the arctic people love starlight,
To whom the sun shines both by day and night?
Farewell base stooping to the lordly peers!
My knee shall bow to none but to the king.
As for the multitude, that are but sparks,
Raked up in embers of their poverty; —
Tanti; I'll fawn first on the wind
That glanceth at my lips, and flieth away.
But how now, what are these?

Digitized by Google

Enter three Poor Men

Poor Men. Such as desire your worship's service.
Gav. What canst thou do?
1st P. Man. I can ride.
Gav. But I have no horse. What art thou?
2nd P. Man. A traveller.
Gav. Let me see — thou would'st do well
To wait at my trencher and tell me lies at dinner-time;
And as I like your discoursing, I'll have you.
And what art thou?
3rd P. Man. A soldier, that hath served against the Scot.
Gav. Why, there are hospitals for such as you;
I have no war, and therefore, sir, begone.
3rd P. Man. Farewell, and perish by a soldier's hand,
That would'st reward them with an hospital.
Gav. Ay, ay, these words of his move me as much
As if a goose would play the porcupine,
And dart her plumes, thinking to pierce my breast.
But yet it is no pain to speak men fair;
I'll flatter these, and make them live in hope. [*Aside.*
You know that I came lately out of France,
And yet I have not viewed my lord the king;
If I speed well, I'll entertain you all.
All. We thank your worship.
Gav. I have some business. Leave me to myself.
All. We will wait here about the court. [*Exeunt.*
Gav. Do; these are not men for me:
I must have wanton poets, pleasant wits,
Musicians, that with touching of a string
May draw the pliant king which way I please.
Music and poetry is his delight;
Therefore I'll have Italian masks by night,
Sweet speeches, comedies, and pleasing shows;
And in the day, when he shall walk abroad,
Like sylvan nymphs my pages shall be clad;

Digitized by Google

My men, like satyrs grazing on the lawns,
Shall with their goat-feet dance the antic hay.
Sometime a lovely boy[n] in Dian's shape,
With hair that gilds the water as it glides,
Crownets of pearl about his naked arms,
And in his sportful hands an olive-tree,
To hide those parts which men delight to see,
Shall bathe him in a spring; and there hard by,
One like Actæon peeping through the grove,
Shall by the angry goddess be transformed,
And running in the likeness of an hart
By yelping hounds pulled down, shall seem to die;
Such things as these best please his majesty.
Here comes my lord the king, and the nobles
From the parliament. I'll stand aside. [*Retires.*

Enter KING EDWARD, LANCASTER, *the* Elder MORTIMER, Young MORTIMER, KENT, WARWICK, PEMBROKE, *and* Attendants

K. Edw. Lancaster![n]
Lan. My lord.
Gav. That Earl of Lancaster do I abhor. [*Aside.*
K. Edw. Will you not grant me this?—In spite of them
I'll have my will; and these two Mortimers,
That cross me thus, shall know I am displeased. [*Aside.*
E. Mor. If you love us, my lord, hate Gaveston.
Gav. That villain Mortimer! I'll be his death.
[*Aside.*
Y. Mor. Mine uncle here, this earl, and I myself,
Were sworn to your father at his death,
That he should ne'er return into the realm:
And know, my lord, ere I will break my oath,
This sword of mine, that should offend your foes,
Shall sleep within the scabbard at thy need,
And underneath thy banners march who will,
For Mortimer will hang his armour up.

Digitized by Google

Gav. Mort Dieu! [*Aside.*

K. Edw. Well, Mortimer, I'll make thee rue these words.
Beseems it thee to contradict thy king?
Frown'st thou thereat, aspiring Lancaster?
The sword shall plane the furrows of thy brows,
And hew these knees that now are grown so stiff.
I will have Gaveston; and you shall know
What danger 'tis to stand against your king.

Gav. Well done, Ned! [*Aside.*

Lan. My lord, why do you thus incense your peers,
That naturally would love and honour you,
But for that base and obscure Gaveston?
Four earldoms[n] have I, besides Lancaster —
Derby, Salisbury, Lincoln, Leicester —
These will I sell, to give my soldiers pay,
Ere Gaveston shall stay within the realm;
Therefore, if he be come, expel him straight.

Kent. Barons and earls, your pride hath made me mute;
But now I'll speak, and to the proof, I hope.
I do remember, in my father's days,
Lord Percy of the north, being highly moved,
Braved Moubery in presence of the king;
For which, had not his highness loved him well,
He should have lost his head; but with his look
The undaunted spirit of Percy was appeased,
And Moubery and he were reconciled:
Yet dare you brave the king unto his face. —
Brother,[n] revenge it, and let these their heads
Preach upon poles, for trespass of their tongues.

War. Oh, our heads!

K. Edw. Ay, yours; and therefore I would wish you grant —

War. Bridle thy anger, gentle Mortimer.

Y. Mor. I cannot, nor I will not; I must speak. —
Cousin, our hands I hope shall fence our heads,
And strike off his that makes you threaten us.

Digitized by Google

Come, uncle, let us leave the brainsick king,
And henceforth parley with our naked swords.
E. Mor. Wiltshire[n] hath men enough to save our heads.
War. All Warwickshire will love him for my sake.
Lan. And northward Gaveston hath many friends. —
Adieu, my lord; and either change your mind,
Or look to see the throne, where you should sit,
To float in blood; and at thy wanton head,
The glozing head of thy base minion thrown.

[*Exeunt all except* KING EDWARD, KENT, GAVESTON *and* Attendants.

K. Edw. I cannot brook these haughty menaces;
Am I a king, and must be overruled? —
Brother, display my ensigns in the field;
I'll bandy with the barons and the earls,
And either die or live with Gaveston.
Gav. I can no longer keep me from my lord.

[*Comes forward.*

K. Edw. What, Gaveston! welcome! — Kiss not my hand —
Embrace me, Gaveston, as I do thee.
Why should'st thou kneel? know'st thou not who I am?
Thy friend, thyself, another Gaveston!
Not Hylas was more mourned of Hercules,
Than thou hast been of me since thy exile.
Gav. And since I went from hence, no soul in hell
Hath felt more torment than poor Gaveston.
K. Edw. I know it. — Brother, welcome home my friend.
Now let the treacherous Mortimers conspire,
And that high-minded Earl of Lancaster:
I have my wish, in that I joy thy sight;
And sooner shall the sea o'erwhelm my land,
Than bear the ship that shall transport thee hence.
I here create thee Lord High Chamberlain,
Chief Secretary to the state and me,
Earl of Cornwall, King and Lord of Man.

Digitized by Google

Gav. My lord, these titles far exceed my worth.
Kent. Brother, the least of these may well suffice
For one of greater birth than Gaveston.
K. Edw. Cease, brother: for I cannot brook these words.
Thy worth, sweet friend, is far above my gifts,
Therefore, to equal it, receive my heart;
If for these dignities thou be envied,
I'll give thee more; for, but to honour thee,
Is Edward pleased with kingly regiment.
Fear'st thou thy person? thou shalt have a guard:
Wantest thou gold? go to my treasury:
Wouldst thou be loved and feared? receive my seal;
Save or condemn, and in our name command
Whatso thy mind affects, or fancy likes.
Gav. It shall suffice me to enjoy your love,
Which whiles I have, I think myself as great
As Cæsar riding in the Roman street,
With captive kings at his triumphant car.

Enter the BISHOP *of* COVENTRY

K. Edw. Whither goes my lord of Coventry so fast?
B. of Cov. To celebrate your father's exequies.
But is that wicked Gaveston returned?
K. Edw. Ay, priest, and lives to be revenged on thee,
That wert the only cause of his exile.
Gav. 'Tis true; and but for reverence of these robes,
Thou should'st not plod one foot beyond this place.
B. of Cov. I did no more than I was bound to do;
And, Gaveston, unless thou be reclaimed,
As then I did incense the parliament,
So will I now, and thou shalt back to France.
Gav. Saving your reverence, you must pardon me.
K. Edw. Throw off his golden mitre, rend his stole,
And in the channel christen him anew.

Digitized by Google

Kent. Ah, brother, lay not violent hands on him!
For he'll complain unto the see of Rome.
Gav. Let him complain unto the see of hell;
I'll be revenged on him for my exile.
K. Edw. No, spare his life, but seize upon his goods:
Be thou lord bishop and receive his rents,
And make him serve thee as thy chaplain:
I give him thee — here, use him as thou wilt.
Gav. He shall to prison, and there die in bolts.
K. Edw. Ay, to the Tower, the Fleet, or where thou wilt.
B. of Cov. For this offence, be thou accurst of God!
K. Edw. Who's there? Convey this priest to the Tower.
B. of Cov. True, true.
K. Edw. But, in the meantime, Gaveston, away,
And take possession of his house and goods.
Come, follow me, and thou shalt have my guard
To see it done, and bring thee safe again.
Gav. What should a priest do with so fair a house?
A prison may best beseem his holiness. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II[a]

Enter on one side the two MORTIMERS; *on the other,* WARWICK *and* LANCASTER

War. 'Tis true, the bishop is in the Tower,
And goods and body given to Gaveston.
Lan. What! will they tyrannize upon the church?
Ah, wicked king! accursèd Gaveston!
This ground, which is corrupted with their steps,
Shall be their timeless sepulchre or mine.
Y. Mor. Well, let that peevish Frenchman guard him sure;
Unless his breast be sword-proof he shall die.
E. Mor. How now! why droops the Earl of Lancaster?

Digitized by Google

Y. Mor. Wherefore is Guy of Warwick discontent?
Lan. That villain Gaveston is made an earl.
E. Mor. An earl!
War. Ay, and besides Lord Chamberlain of the realm,
And Secretary too, and Lord of Man.
E. Mor. We may not, nor we will not suffer this.
Y. Mor. Why post we not from hence to levy men?
Lan. "My Lord of Cornwall," now at every word!
And happy is the man whom he vouchsafes,
For vailing of his bonnet, one good look.
Thus, arm in arm, the king and he doth march:
Nay more, the guard upon his lordship waits;
And all the court begins to flatter him.
War. Thus leaning on the shoulder of the king,
He nods and scorns and smiles at those that pass.
E. Mor. Doth no man take exceptions at the slave?
Lan. All stomach him, but none dare speak a word.
Y. Mor. Ah, that bewrays their baseness, Lancaster!
Were all the earls and barons of my mind,
We'd hale him from the bosom of the king,
And at the court-gate hang the peasant up,
Who, swoln with venom of ambitious pride,
Will be the ruin of the realm and us.
War. Here comes my lord of Canterbury's grace.
Lan. His countenance bewrays he is displeased.

Enter the ARCHBISHOP *of* CANTERBURY *and an* Attendant

A. of Cant. First were his sacred garments rent and torn,
Then laid they violent hands upon him; next
Himself imprisoned, and his goods asseized:
This certify the Pope — away, take horse. [*Exit* Attend.
Lan. My lord, will you take arms against the king?
A. of Cant. What need I? God himself is up in arms,
When violence is offered to the church.

Digitized by Google

Y. Mor. Then will you join with us, that be his peers,
To banish or behead that Gaveston?
A. of Cant. What else, my lords? for it concerns me near;
The bishopric of Coventry is his.

Enter QUEEN ISABELLA

Y. Mor. Madam, whither walks your majesty so fast?
Q. Isab. Unto the forest,[n] gentle Mortimer,
To live in grief and baleful discontent;
For now, my lord, the king regards me not,
But dotes upon the love of Gaveston,
He claps his cheeks, and hangs about his neck,
Smiles in his face, and whispers in his ears;
And when I come he frowns, as who should say,
"Go whither thou wilt, seeing I have Gaveston."
E. Mor. Is it not strange that he is thus bewitched?
Y. Mor. Madam, return unto the court again:
That sly inveigling Frenchman we'll exile,
Or lose our lives; and yet, ere that day come,
The king shall lose his crown; for we have power,
And courage too, to be revenged at full.
A. of Cant. But yet lift not your swords against the king.
Lan. No; but we will lift Gaveston from hence.
War. And war must be the means, or he'll stay still.
Q. Isab. Then let him stay; for rather than my lord
Shall be oppressed with civil mutinies,
I will endure a melancholy life,
And let him frolic with his minion.
A. of Cant. My lords, to ease all this, but hear me speak:
We and the rest, that are his counsellors,
Will meet, and with a general consent
Confirm his banishment with our hands and seals.
Lan. What we confirm the king will frustrate.

Digitized by Google

Y. Mor. Then may we lawfully revolt from him.
War. But say, my lord, where shall this meeting be?
A. of Cant. At the New Temple.
Y. Mor. Content.
A. of Cant. And, in the meantime, I'll entreat you all
To cross to Lambeth, and there stay with me.
Lan. Come then, let's away.
Y. Mor. Madam, farewell!
Q. Isab. Farewell, sweet Mortimer; and, for my sake,
Forbear to levy arms against the king.
Y. Mor. Ay, if words will serve; if not, I must.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III[a]

Enter GAVESTON *and* KENT

Gav. Edmund, the mighty Prince of Lancaster,
That hath more earldoms than an ass can bear,
And both the Mortimers, two goodly men,
With Guy of Warwick, that redoubted knight,
Are gone toward Lambeth — there let them remain.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV[a]

Enter LANCASTER, WARWICK, PEMBROKE, *the* Elder MORTIMER, Young MORTIMER, *the* ARCHBISHOP *of* CANTERBURY *and* Attendants

Lan. Here is the form of Gaveston's exile:
May it please your lordship to subscribe your name.
A. of Cant. Give me the paper.
[*He subscribes, as do the others after him.*
Lan. Quick, quick, my lord; I long to write my name.
War. But I long more to see him banished hence.
Y. Mor. The name of Mortimer shall fright the king,
Unless he be declined from that base peasant.

Digitized by Google

Enter KING EDWARD, GAVESTON, *and* KENT

K. Edw. What, are you moved that Gaveston sits here?
It is our pleasure; we will have it so.
Lan. Your grace doth well to place him by your side,
For nowhere else the new earl is so safe.
E. Mor. What man of noble birth can brook this sight?
Quam male conveniunt!
See what a scornful look the peasant casts!
Pem. Can kingly lions fawn on creeping ants?
War. Ignoble vassal, that like Phaeton
Aspir'st unto the guidance of the sun!
Y. Mor. Their downfall is at hand, their forces down:
We will not thus be faced and overpeered.
K. Edw. Lay hands on that traitor Mortimer!
E. Mor. Lay hands on that traitor Gaveston!
Kent. Is this the duty that you owe your king?
War. We know our duties — let him know his peers.
K. Edw. Whither will you bear him? Stay, or ye shall die.
E. Mor. We are no traitors; therefore threaten not.
Gav. No, threaten not, my lord, but pay them home!
Were I a king ——
Y. Mor. Thou villain, wherefore talk'st thou of a king,
That hardly art a gentleman by birth?
K. Edw. Were he a peasant, being my minion,[n]
I'll make the proudest of you stoop to him.
Lan. My lord, you may not thus disparage us. —
Away, I say, with hateful Gaveston!
E. Mor. And with the Earl of Kent that favours him.
[Attendants *remove* KENT *and* GAVESTON.
K. Edw. Nay, then, lay violent hands upon your king,
Here, Mortimer, sit thou in Edward's throne:

Digitized by Google

Warwick and Lancaster, wear you my crown:
Was ever king thus overruled as I?

Lan. Learn then to rule us better, and the realm.

Y. Mor. What we have done, our heart-blood shall maintain.

War. Think you that we can brook this upstart's pride?

K. Edw. Anger and wrathful fury stops my speech.

A. of Cant. Why are you moved? be patient, my lord,
And see what we your counsellors have done.

Y. Mor. My lords, now let us all be resolute,
And either have our wills, or lose our lives.

K. Edw. Meet you for this, proud overbearing peers?
Ere my sweet Gaveston shall part from me,
This isle shall fleet upon the ocean,
And wander to the unfrequented Inde.

A. of Cant. You know that I am legate to the Pope;
On your allegiance to the see of Rome,
Subscribe, as we have done, to his exile.

Y. Mor. Curse him, if he refuse; and then may we
Depose him and elect another king.

K. Edw. Ay, there it goes! but yet I will not yield:
Curse me, depose me, do the worst you can.

Lan. Then linger not, my lord, but do it straight.

A. of Cant. Remember how the bishop was abused!
Either banish him that was the cause thereof,
Or I will presently discharge these lords
Of duty and allegiance due to thee.

K. Edw. It boots me not to threat—I must speak fair: [*Aside.*
The legate of the Pope will be obeyed.
My lord, you shall be Chancellor of the realm;
Thou, Lancaster, High Admiral of our fleet;
Young Mortimer and his uncle shall be earls;
And you, Lord Warwick, President of the North;
And thou of Wales. If this content you not,
Make several kingdoms of this monarchy,
And share it equally amongst you all,

Digitized by Google

So I may have some nook or corner left,
To frolic with my dearest Gaveston.

A. of Cant. Nothing shall alter us — we are resolved.

Lan. Come, come, subscribe.

Y. Mor. Why should you love him whom the world hates so?

K. Edw. Because he loves me more than all the world.
Ah, none but rude and savage-minded men
Would seek the ruin of my Gaveston;
You that be noble-born should pity him.

War. You that are princely-born should shake him off:
For shame subscribe, and let the lown depart.

E. Mor. Urge him, my lord.

A. of Cant. Are you content to banish him the realm?

K. Edw. I see I must, and therefore am content:
Instead of ink I'll write it with my tears. [*Subscribes.*

Y. Mor. The king is lovesick for his minion.

K. Edw. 'Tis done — and now, accursèd hand, fall off!

Lan. Give it me — I'll have it published in the streets.

Y. Mor. I'll see him presently dispatched away.

A. of Cant. Now is my heart at ease.

War. And so is mine.

Pem. This will be good news to the common sort.

E. Mor. Be it or no, he shall not linger here.

[*Exeunt all except* KING EDWARD.

K. Edw. How fast they run to banish him I love!
They would not stir, were it to do me good.
Why should a king be subject to a priest?
Proud Rome! that hatchest such imperial grooms,
For these thy superstitious taper-lights,
Wherewith thy antichristian churches blaze,
I'll fire thy crazèd buildings, and enforce
The papal towers to kiss the lowly ground!
With slaughtered priests make Tiber's channel swell,
And banks raised higher with their sepulchres!
As for the peers, that back the clergy thus,
If I be king, not one of them shall live.

Digitized by Google

Re-enter GAVESTON

Gav. My lord, I hear it whispered everywhere,
That I am banished, and must fly the land.
K. Edw. 'Tis true, sweet Gaveston — Oh! were it false!
The legate of the Pope will have it so,
And thou must hence, or I shall be deposed.
But I will reign to be revenged of them;
And therefore, sweet friend, take it patiently.
Live where thou wilt, I'll send thee gold enough;
And long thou shalt not stay, or if thou dost,
I'll come to thee; my love shall ne'er decline.
Gav. Is all my hope turned to this hell of grief?
K. Edw. Rend not my heart with thy too-piercing words:
Thou from this land, I from myself am banished.
Gav. To go from hence grieves not poor Gaveston;
But to forsake you, in whose gracious looks
The blessedness of Gaveston remains:
For nowhere else seeks he felicity.
K. Edw. And only this torments my wretched soul,
That, whether I will or no, thou must depart.
Be governor of Ireland in my stead,
And there abide till fortune call thee home.
Here, take my picture, and let me wear thine;
[*They exchange pictures.*
Oh, might I keep thee here as I do this,
Happy were I! but now most miserable!
Gav. 'Tis something to be pitied of a king.
K. Edw. Thou shalt not hence — I'll hide thee, Gaveston.
Gav. I shall be found, and then 'twill grieve me more.
K. Edw. Kind words and mutual talk makes our grief greater:
Therefore, with dumb embracement, let us part —
Stay, Gaveston, I cannot leave thee thus.

Digitized by Google

Gav. For every look, my lord, drops down a tear:
Seeing I must go, do not renew my sorrow.
K. Edw. The time is little that thou hast to stay,
And, therefore, give me leave to look my fill:
But come, sweet friend, I'll bear thee on thy way.
Gav. The peers will frown.
K. Edw. I pass not for their anger. — Come, let's go;
Oh, that we might as well return as go.

Enter QUEEN ISABELLA

Q. Isab. Whither goes my lord?
K. Edw. Fawn not on me, French strumpet! get thee gone!
Q. Isab. On whom but on my husband should I fawn?
Gav. On Mortimer! with whom, ungentle queen —
I say no more — judge you the rest, my lord.
Q. Isab. In saying this, thou wrong'st me, Gaveston;
Is't not enough that thou corrupt'st my lord,
And art a bawd to his affections,
But thou must call mine honour thus in question?
Gav. I mean not so; your grace must pardon me.
K. Edw. Thou art too familiar with that Mortimer,
And by thy means is Gaveston exiled;
But I would wish thee reconcile the lords,
Or thou shalt ne'er be reconciled to me.
Q. Isab. Your highness knows it lies not in my power.
K. Edw. Away then! touch me not — Come, Gaveston.
Q. Isab. Villain! 'tis thou that robb'st me of my lord.
Gav. Madam, 'tis you that rob me of my lord.
K. Edw. Speak not unto her; let her droop and pine.
Q. Isab. Wherein, my lord, have I deserved these words?
Witness the tears that Isabella sheds,
Witness this heart, that sighing for thee, breaks,
How dear my lord is to poor Isabel.

Digitized by Google

K. Edw. And witness Heaven how dear thou art to me:
There weep: for till my Gaveston be repealed,
Assure thyself thou com'st not in my sight.
[*Exeunt* EDWARD *and* GAVESTON.
Q. Isab. O miserable and distressèd queen!
Would, when I left sweet France and was embarked,
That charming Circe walking on the waves,
Had changed my shape, or at the marriage-day
The cup of Hymen had been full of poison,
Or with those arms that twined about my neck
I had been stifled, and not lived to see
The king my lord thus to abandon me!
Like frantic Juno will I fill the earth
With ghastly murmur of my sighs and cries;
For never doted Jove on Ganymede
So much as he on cursèd Gaveston:
But that will more exasperate his wrath;
I must entreat him, I must speak him fair;
And be a means to call home Gaveston:
And yet he'll ever dote on Gaveston;
And so am I for ever miserable.

Re-enter LANCASTER, WARWICK, PEMBROKE, *the* Elder MORTIMER, *and* Young MORTIMER

Lan. Look where the sister of the King of France,
Sits wringing of her hands, and beats her breast!
War. The king, I fear, hath ill-entreated her.
Pem. Hard is the heart that injuries such a saint.
Y. Mor. I know 'tis 'long of Gaveston she weeps.
E. Mor. Why, he is gone.
Y. Mor. Madam, how fares your grace?
Q. Isab. Ah, Mortimer! now breaks the king's hate forth,
And he confesseth that he loves me not.
Y. Mor. Cry quittance, madam, then; and love not him.

Digitized by Google

Q. Isab. No, rather will I die a thousand deaths:
And yet I love in vain — he'll ne'er love me.
Lan. Fear ye not, madam; now his minion's gone,
His wanton humour will be quickly left.
Q. Isab. Oh, never, Lancaster! I am enjoined
To sue upon you all for his repeal;
This wills my lord, and this must I perform,
Or else be banished from his highness' presence.
Lan. For his repeal, madam! he comes not back,
Unless the sea cast up his shipwrecked body.
War. And to behold so sweet a sight as that,
There's none here but would run his horse to death.
Y. Mor. But, madam, would you have us call him home?
Q. Isab. Ay, Mortimer, for till he be restored,
The angry king hath banished me the court;
And, therefore, as thou lov'st and tender'st me,
Be thou my advocate unto these peers.
Y. Mor. What! would you have me plead for Gaveston?
E. Mor. Plead for him that will, I am resolved.
Lan. And so am I, my lord: dissuade the queen.
Q. Isab. O Lancaster! let him dissuade the king,
For 'tis against my will he should return.
War. Then speak not for him, let the peasant go.
Q. Isab. 'Tis for myself I speak, and not for him.
Pem. No speaking will prevail, and therefore cease.
Y. Mor. Fair queen, forbear to angle for the fish
Which, being caught, strikes him that takes it dead;
I mean that vile torpedo,[n] Gaveston,
That now, I hope, floats on the Irish seas.
Q. Isab. Sweet Mortimer, sit down by me awhile,
And I will tell thee reasons of such weight
As thou wilt soon subscribe to his repeal.
Y. Mor. It is impossible; but speak your mind.
Q. Isab. Then thus, but none shall hear it but ourselves. [*Talks to* Y. MORTIMER *apart.*

Digitized by Google

Lan. My lords, albeit the queen win Mortimer,
Will you be resolute, and hold with me?
E. Mor. Not I, against my nephew.
Pem. Fear not, the queen's words cannot alter him.
War. No? do but mark how earnestly she pleads!
Lan. And see how coldly his looks make denial!
War. She smiles; now for my life his mind is changed!
Lan. I'll rather lose his friendship, I, than grant.
Y. Mor. Well, of necessity it must be so. —
My lords, that I abhor base Gaveston,
I hope your honours make no question,
And therefore, though I plead for his repeal,
'Tis not for his sake, but for our avail;
Nay, for the realm's behoof, and for the king's.
Lan. Fie, Mortimer, dishonour not thyself!
Can this be true, 'twas good to banish him?
And is this true, to call him home again?
Such reasons make white black, and dark night day.
Y. Mor. My lord of Lancaster, mark the respect.
Lan. In no respect can contraries be true.
Q. Isab. Yet, good my lord, hear what he can allege.
War. All that he speaks is nothing; we are resolved.
Y. Mor. Do you not wish that Gaveston were dead?
Pem. I would he were!
Y. Mor. Why then, my lord, give me but leave to speak.
E. Mor. But, nephew, do not play the sophister.
Y. Mor. This which I urge is of a burning zeal
To mend the king, and do our country good.
Know you not Gaveston hath store of gold,
Which may in Ireland purchase him such friends,
As he will front the mightiest of us all?
And whereas he shall live and be beloved,
'Tis hard for us to work his overthrow.
War. Mark you but that, my lord of Lancaster.
Y. Mor. But were he here, detested as he is,
How easily might some base slave be suborned

Digitized by Google

To greet his lordship with a poniard,
And none so much as blame the murderer,
But rather praise him for that brave attempt,
And in the chronicle enrol his name
For purging of the realm of such a plague!
Pem. He saith true.
Lan. Ay, but how chance this was not done before?
Y. Mor. Because, my lords, it was not thought upon.
Nay, more, when he shall know it lies in us
To banish him, and then to call him home,
'Twill make him vail the top-flag of his pride,
And fear to offend the meanest nobleman.
E. Mor. But how if he do not, nephew?
Y. Mor. Then may we with some colour rise in arms;
For, howsoever we have borne it out,
'Tis treason to be up against the king;
So we shall have the people of our side,
Which for his father's sake lean to the king,
But cannot brook a night-grown mushroom,
Such a one as my lord of Cornwall is,
Should bear us down of the nobility.
And when the commons and the nobles join,
'Tis not the king can buckler Gaveston;
We'll pull him from the strongest hold he hath.
My lords, if to perform this I be slack,
Think me as base a groom as Gaveston.
Lan. On that condition, Lancaster will grant.
War. And so will Pembroke and I.
E. Mor. And I.
Y. Mor. In this I count me highly gratified,
And Mortimer will rest at your command.
Q. Isab. And when this favour Isabel forgets,
Then let her live abandoned and forlorn. —
But see, in happy time, my lord the king,
Having brought the Earl of Cornwall on his way,[n]
Is new returned; this news will glad him much;
Yet not so much as me; I love him more

Digitized by Google

Than he can Gaveston; would he love me
But half so much, then were I treble-blessed!

Re-enter KING EDWARD, *mourning*

K. Edw. He's gone, and for his absence thus I mourn.
Did never sorrow go so near my heart
As doth the want of my sweet Gaveston;
And could my crown's revenue bring him back,
I would freely give it to his enemies,
And think I gained, having bought so dear a friend.
Q. Isab. Hark! how he harps upon his minion.
K. Edw. My heart is as an anvil unto sorrow,
Which beats upon it like the Cyclops' hammers,
And with the noise turns up my giddy brain,
And makes me frantic for my Gaveston.
Ah! had some bloodless Fury rose from hell,
And with my kingly sceptre struck me dead,
When I was forced to leave my Gaveston!
Lan. Diablo! What passions call you these?
Q. Isab. My gracious lord, I come to bring you news.
K. Edw. That you have parleyed with your Mortimer!
Q. Isab. That Gaveston, my lord, shall be repealed.
K. Edw. Repealed! the news is too sweet to be true.
Q. Isab. But will you love me, if you find it so?
K. Edw. If it be so, what will not Edward do?
Q. Isab. For Gaveston, but not for Isabel.
K. Edw. For thee, fair queen, if thou lov'st Gaveston;
I'll hang a golden tongue about thy neck,
Seeing thou hast pleaded with so good success.
Q. Isab. No other jewels hang about my neck
Than these, my lord; nor let me have more wealth
Than I may fetch from this rich treasury —
Oh, how a kiss revives poor Isabel!
K. Edw. Once more receive my hand; and let this be
A second marriage 'twixt thyself and me.

Digitized by Google

Q. Isab. And may it prove more happy than the first!
My gentle lord, bespeak these nobles fair,
That wait attendance for a gracious look,
And on their knees salute your majesty.
K. Edw. Courageous Lancaster, embrace thy king!
And, as gross vapours perish by the sun,
Even so let hatred with thy sovereign's smile.
Live thou with me as my companion.
Lan. This salutation overjoys my heart.
K. Edw. Warwick shall be my chiefest counsellor:
These silver hairs will more adorn my court
Than gaudy silks, or rich embroidery.
Chide me, sweet Warwick, if I go astray.
War. Slay me, my lord, when I offend your grace.
K. Edw. In solemn triumphs, and in public shows,
Pembroke shall bear the sword before the king.
Pem. And with this sword Pembroke will fight for you.
K. Edw. But wherefore walks young Mortimer aside?
Be thou commander of our royal fleet;
Or, if that lofty office like thee not,
I make thee here Lord Marshal of the realm.
Y. Mor. My lord, I'll marshal so your enemies,
As England shall be quiet, and you safe.
K. Edw. And as for you, Lord Mortimer of Chirke,
Whose great achievements in our foreign war
Deserves no common place, nor mean reward;
Be you the general of the levied troops,
That now are ready to assail the Scots.[n]
E. Mor. In this your grace hath highly honoured me,
For with my nature war doth best agree.
Q. Isab. Now is the King of England rich and strong,
Having the love of his renownèd peers.
K. Edw. Ay, Isabel, ne'er was my heart so light. —
Clerk of the crown, direct our warrant forth
For Gaveston to Ireland:

Digitized by Google

Enter BEAUMONT *with warrant*

Beaumont, fly
As fast as Iris or Jove's Mercury.
Bea. It shall be done, my gracious lord. [*Exit.*
K. Edw. Lord Mortimer, we leave you to your charge.
Now let us in, and feast it royally.
Against our friend the Earl of Cornwall comes,
We'll have a general tilt and tournament;
And then his marriage shall be solemnized.
For wot you not that I have made him sure
Unto our cousin,[n] the Earl of Gloucester's heir?
Lan. Such news we hear, my lord.
K. Edw. That day, if not for him, yet for my sake,
Who in the triumph will be challenger,
Spare for no cost; we will requite your love.
War. In this, or aught your highness shall command us.
K. Edw. Thanks, gentle Warwick: come, let's in and revel. [*Exeunt all except the* MORTIMERS.
E. Mor. Nephew, I must go to Scotland; thou stayest here.
Leave now t'oppose thyself against the king.
Thou seest by nature he is mild and calm,
And, seeing his mind so dotes on Gaveston,
Let him without controlment have his will.
The mightiest kings have had their minions:
Great Alexander loved Hephestion;
The conquering Hercules for Hylas wept;
And for Patroclus stern Achilles drooped.
And not kings only, but the wisest men:
The Roman Tully loved Octavius;
Grave Socrates wild Alcibiades.
Then let his grace, whose youth is flexible,
And promiseth as much as we can wish,
Freely enjoy that vain, light-headed earl;
For riper years will wean him from such toys.

Digitized by Google

Y. Mor. Uncle, his wanton humour grieves not me;
But this I scorn, that one so basely born
Should by his sovereign's favour grow so pert,
And riot it with the treasure of the realm.
While soldiers mutiny for want of pay,
He wears a lord's revenue on his back,
And Midas-like, he jets it in the court,
With base outlandish cullions at his heels,
Whose proud fantastic liveries make such show,
As if that Proteus, god of shapes, appeared.
I have not seen a dapper Jack so brisk;
He wears a short Italian hooded cloak,
Larded with pearl, and, in his Tuscan cap,
A jewel of more value than the crown.
While others walk below, the king and he
From out a window laugh at such as we,
And flout our train, and jest at our attire.
Uncle, 'tis this makes me impatient.

E. Mor. But, nephew, now you see the king is changed.

Y. Mor. Then so am I, and live to do him service:
But, whiles I have a sword, a hand, a heart,
I will not yield to any such upstart.
You know my mind; come, uncle, let's away. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

ACT THE SECOND

SCENE I[a]

Enter Young SPENSER *and* BALDOCK

Bald. Spenser,
Seeing that our lord the Earl of Gloucester's dead,
Which of the nobles dost thou mean to serve?
Y. Spen. Not Mortimer, nor any of his side;
Because the king and he are enemies.
Baldock, learn this of me, a factious lord
Shall hardly do himself good, much less us;
But he that hath the favour of a king,
May with one word advance us while we live:
The liberal Earl of Cornwall is the man
On whose good fortune Spenser's hopes depends.
Bald. What, mean you then to be his follower?
Y. Spen. No, his companion; for he loves me well,
And would have once preferred me to the king.
Bald. But he is banished; there's small hope of him.
Y. Spen. Ay, for a while; but, Baldock, mark the end.
A friend of mine told me in secrecy
That he's repealed, and sent for back again;
And even now a post came from the court
With letters to our lady from the king;
And as she read she smiled, which makes me think
It is about her lover Gaveston.
Bald. 'Tis like enough; for, since he was exiled
She neither walks abroad, nor comes in sight.
But I had thought the match had been broke off,

Digitized by Google

And that his banishment had changed her mind.
Y. Spen. Our lady's first love is not wavering;
My life for thine she will have Gaveston.
Bald. Then hope I by her means to be preferred,
Having read unto her since she was a child.
Y. Spen. Then, Baldock, you must cast the scholar off,
And learn to court it like a gentleman.
'Tis not a black coat and a little band,
A velvet-caped coat, faced before with serge,
And smelling to a nosegay all the day,
Or holding of a napkin in your hand,
Or saying a long grace at a table's end,
Or making low legs to a nobleman,
Or looking downward with your eyelids close,
And saying, "Truly, an't may please your honour,"
Can get you any favour with great men;
You must be proud, bold, pleasant, resolute,
And now and then stab, as occasion serves.
Bald. Spenser, thou know'st I hate such formal toys,
And use them but of mere hypocrisy.
Mine old lord whiles he lived was so precise,
That he would take exceptions at my buttons,
And being like pin's heads, blame me for the bigness;
Which made me curate-like in mine attire,
Though inwardly licentious enough,
And apt for any kind of villainy.
I am none of these common pedants, I,
That cannot speak without *propterea quod.*
Y. Spen. But one of those that saith, *quandoquidem,*
And hath a special gift to form a verb.[n]
Bald. Leave off this jesting, here my lady comes.

Enter KING EDWARD'S Niece

Niece. The grief for his exile was not so much,
As is the joy of his returning home.
This letter came from my sweet Gaveston:

Digitized by Google

What need'st thou, love, thus to excuse thyself?
I know thou could'st not come and visit me:
[*Reads.*] "I will not long be from thee, though I die."
This argues the entire love of my lord;
[*Reads.*] "When I forsake thee, death seize on my heart:"
But stay thee here where Gaveston shall sleep.
[*Puts the letter into her bosom.*
Now to the letter of my lord the king. —
He wills me to repair unto the court,
And meet my Gaveston? why do I stay,
Seeing that he talks thus of my marriage-day?
Who's there? Baldock!
See that my coach be ready, I must hence.
Bald. It shall be done, madam.
Niece. And meet me at the park-pale presently.
[*Exit* BALDOCK.
Spenser, stay you and bear me company,
For I have joyful news to tell thee of;
My lord of Cornwall is a-coming over,
And will be at the court as soon as we.
Y. Spen. I knew the king would have him home again.
Niece. If all things sort out, as I hope they will,
Thy service, Spenser, shall be thought upon.
Y. Spen. I humbly thank your ladyship.
Niece. Come, lead the way; I long till I am there.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE II

Enter KING EDWARD, QUEEN ISABELLA, KENT, LANCASTER, Young MORTIMER, WARWICK, PEMBROKE, *and* Attendants

K. Edw. The wind is good, I wonder why he stays;
I fear me he is wrecked upon the sea.
Q. Isab. Look, Lancaster, how passionate he is,
And still his mind runs on his minion!

Digitized by Google

Lan. My lord —
K. Edw. How now! what news? is Gaveston arrived?
Y. Mor. Nothing but Gaveston! what means your grace?
You have matters of more weight to think upon;
The King of France sets foot in Normandy.
K. Edw. A trifle! we'll expel him when we please.
But tell me, Mortimer, what's thy device
Against the stately triumph we decreed?
Y. Mor. A homely one, my lord, not worth the telling.
K. Edw. Pray thee, let me know it.
Y. Mor. But, seeing you are so desirous, thus it is:
A lofty cedar tree, fair flourishing,
On whose top-branches kingly eagles perch,
And by the bark a canker creeps me up,
And gets into the highest bough of all:
The motto, *Æque tandem.*[n]
K. Edw. And what is yours, my lord of Lancaster?
Lan. My lord, mine's more obscure than Mortimer's.
Pliny reports there is a flying fish
Which all the other fishes deadly hate,
And therefore, being pursued, it takes the air:
No sooner is it up, but there's a fowl
That seizeth it; this fish, my lord, I bear,
The motto this: *Undique mors est.*[n]
Kent. Proud Mortimer! ungentle Lancaster!
Is this the love you bear your sovereign?
Is this the fruit your reconcilement bears?
Can you in words make show of amity,
And in your shields display your rancorous minds!
What call you this but private libelling
Against the Earl of Cornwall and my brother?
Q. Isab. Sweet husband, be content, they all love you.
K. Edw. They love me not that hate my Gaveston.
I am that cedar, shake me not too much;
And you the eagles; soar ye ne'er so high,
I have the jesses that will pull you down;

Digitized by Google

And *Æque tandem* shall that canker cry
Unto the proudest peer of Britainy.
Though thou compar'st him to a flying fish,
And threatenest death whether he rise or fall,
'Tis not the hugest monster of the sea,
Nor foulest harpy that shall swallow him.
Y. Mor. If in his absence thus he favours him,
What will he do whenas he shall be present?
Lan. That shall we see; look where his lordship comes.

Enter GAVESTON

K. Edw. My Gaveston!
Welcome to Tynemouth! welcome to thy friend!
Thy absence made me droop and pine away;
For, as the lovers of fair Danae,
When she was locked up in a brazen tower,
Desired her more, and waxed outrageous,
So did it fare with me: and now thy sight
Is sweeter far than was thy parting hence
Bitter and irksome to my sobbing heart.
Gav. Sweet lord and king, your speech preventeth mine,
Yet have I words left to express my joy:
The shepherd nipt with biting winter's rage
Frolics not more to see the painted spring,
Than I do to behold your majesty.
K. Edw. Will none of you salute my Gaveston?
Lan. Salute him? yes; welcome, Lord Chamberlain!
Y. Mor. Welcome is the good Earl of Cornwall!
War. Welcome, Lord Governor of the Isle of Man!
Pem. Welcome, Master Secretary!
Kent. Brother, do you hear them?
K. Edw. Still will these earls and barons use me thus.
Gav. My lord, I cannot brook these injuries.
Q. Isab. Ay, me, poor soul, when these begin to jar.
[*Aside.*

Digitized by Google

K. Edw. Return it to their throats, I'll be thy warrant.
Gav. Base, leaden earls, that glory in your birth,
Go sit at home and eat your tenant's beef;
And come not here to scoff at Gaveston,
Whose mounting thoughts did never creep so low
As to bestow a look on such as you.
Lan. Yet I disdain not to do this for you.
[*Draws his sword and offers to stab* GAVESTON.
K. Edw. Treason! treason! where's the traitor?
Pem. Here! here!
K. Edw. Convey hence Gaveston; they'll murder him.
Gav. The life of thee shall salve this foul disgrace.
Y. Mor. Villain! thy life, unless I miss mine aim.
[*Wounds* GAVESTON.
Q. Isab. Ah! furious Mortimer, what hast thou done?
Y. Mor. No more than I would answer, were he slain.
[*Exit* GAVESTON *with* Attendants.
K. Edw. Yes, more than thou canst answer, though he live;
Dear shall you both abide this riotous deed.
Out of my presence! come not near the court.
Y. Mor. I'll not be barred the court for Gaveston.
Lan. We'll hale him by the ears unto the block.
K. Edw. Look to your own heads; his is sure enough.
War. Look to your own crown, if you back him thus.
Kent. Warwick, these words do ill beseem thy years.
K. Edw. Nay, all of them conspire to cross me thus;
But if I live, I'll tread upon their heads
That think with high looks thus to tread me down.
Come, Edmund, let's away and levy men,
'Tis war that must abate these barons' pride.
[*Exeunt* KING EDWARD, QUEEN ISABELLA, *and* KENT.
War. Let's to our castles, for the king is moved.
Y. Mor. Moved may he be, and perish in his wrath!
Lan. Cousin, it is no dealing with him now,

Digitized by Google

He means to make us stoop by force of arms;
And therefore let us jointly here protest,
To persecute that Gaveston to the death.

Y. Mor. By heaven, the abject villain shall not live!

War. I'll have his blood, or die in seeking it.

Pem. The like oath Pembroke takes.

Lan. And so doth Lancaster.
Now send our heralds to defy the king;
And make the people swear to put him down.

Enter a Messenger

Y. Mor. Letters! from whence?

Mess. From Scotland, my lord.
[*Giving letters to* MORTIMER.

Lan. Why, how now, cousin, how fares all our friends?

Y. Mor. My uncle's taken prisoner by the Scots.

Lan. We'll have him ransomed, man; be of good cheer.

Y. Mor. They rate his ransom at five thousand pound.
Who should defray the money but the king,
Seeing he is taken prisoner in his wars?
I'll to the king.

Lan. Do, cousin, and I'll bear thee company.

War. Meantime, my lord of Pembroke and myself
Will to Newcastle here, and gather head.

Y. Mor. About it, then, and we will follow you.

Lan. Be resolute and full of secrecy.

War. I warrant you. [*Exit with* PEMBROKE.

Y. Mor. Cousin, and if he will not ransom him,
I'll thunder such a peal into his ears,
As never subject did unto his king.

Lan. Content, I'll bear my part — Holla! who's there?

Enter Guard

Y. Mor. Ay, marry, such a guard as this doth well.

Lan. Lead on the way.

Guard. Whither will your lordships?

Digitized by Google

Y. Mor. Whither else but to the king.
Guard. His highness is disposed to be alone.
Lan. Why, so he may, but we will speak to him.
Guard. You may not in, my lord.
Y. Mor. May we not?

Enter KING EDWARD *and* KENT

K. Edw. How now!
What noise is this? who have we there? is't you? [*Going.*
Y. Mor. Nay, stay, my lord, I come to bring you news;
Mine uncle's taken prisoner by the Scots.
K. Edw. Then ransom him.
Lan. 'Twas in your wars; you should ransom him.
Y. Mor. And you shall ransom him, or else —— 141
Kent. What! Mortimer, you will not threaten him?
K. Edw. Quiet yourself, you shall have the broad seal,[n]
To gather for him throughout the realm.
Lan. Your minion Gaveston hath taught you this.
Y. Mor. My lord, the family of the Mortimers
Are not so poor, but, would they sell their land,
'Twould levy men enough to anger you.
We never beg, but use such prayers as these.
K. Edw. Shall I still be haunted thus? 150
Y. Mor. Nay, now you're here alone, I'll speak my mind.
Lan. And so will I, and then, my lord, farewell.
Y. Mor. The idle triumphs, masks, lascivious shows,
And prodigal gifts bestowed on Gaveston,
Have drawn thy treasury dry, and made thee weak;
The murmuring commons, overstretchèd, break.
Lan. Look for rebellion, look to be deposed;
Thy garrisons are beaten out of France,
And, lame and poor, lie groaning at the gates.
The wild Oneyl, with swarms of Irish kerns, 160

Digitized by Google

Lives uncontrolled within the English pale.
Unto the walls of York the Scots make road,
And unresisted drive away rich spoils.
Y. Mor. The haughty Dane commands the narrow seas,
While in the harbour ride thy ships unrigged.
Lan. What foreign prince sends thee ambassadors?
Y. Mor. Who loves thee, but a sort of flatterers?
Lan. Thy gentle queen, sole sister to Valois,[n]
Complains that thou hast left her all forlorn.
Y. Mor. Thy court is naked, being bereft of those
That make a king seem glorious to the world;
I mean the peers, whom thou should'st dearly love:
Libels are cast again thee in the street:
Ballads and rhymes made of thy overthrow.
Lan. The Northern borderers seeing their houses burnt,
Their wives and children slain, run up and down,
Cursing the name of thee and Gaveston.
Y. Mor. When wert thou in the field with banner spread,
But once? And then thy soldiers marched like players,
With garish robes, not armour; and thyself,
Bedaubed with gold, rode laughing at the rest,
Nodding and shaking of thy spangled crest,
Where women's favours hung like labels down.
Lan. And therefore came it, that the fleering Scots,
To England's high disgrace, have made this jig:[n]

Maids of England, sore may you mourn,
For your lemans you have lost at Bannocksbourn —
With a heave and a ho!
What weeneth the King of England,
So soon to have won Scotland? —
With a rombelow!

Y. Mor. Wigmore shall fly,[n] to set my uncle free.
Lan. And when 'tis gone, our swords shall purchase more.

Digitized by Google

If ye be moved, revenge it as you can;
Look next to see us with our ensigns spread.
[*Exit with* Young MORTIMER.
K. Edw. My swelling heart for very anger breaks!
How oft have I been baited by these peers,
And dare not be revenged, for their power is great!
Yet, shall the crowing of these cockerels
Affright a lion? Edward, unfold thy paws,
And let their lives' blood slake thy fury's hunger.
If I be cruel and grow tyrannous,
Now let them thank themselves, and rue too late.
Kent. My lord, I see your love to Gaveston
Will be the ruin of the realm and you,
For now the wrathful nobles threaten wars,
And therefore, brother, banish him for ever.
K. Edw. Art thou an enemy to my Gaveston?
Kent. Ay, and it grieves me that I favoured him.
K. Edw. Traitor, begone! whine thou with Mortimer.
Kent. So will I, rather than with Gaveston.
K. Edw. Out of my sight, and trouble me no more!
Kent. No marvel though thou scorn thy noble peers,
When I thy brother am rejected thus.
K. Edw. Away! [*Exit* KENT.
Poor Gaveston, that has no friend but me,
Do what they can, we'll live in Tynemouth here,
And, so I walk with him about the walls,
What care I though the earls begirt us round? —
Here cometh she that's cause of all these jars.

Enter QUEEN ISABELLA *with* KING EDWARD'S Niece, *two* Ladies, GAVESTON, BALDOCK *and* Young SPENSER

Q. Isab. My lord, 'tis thought the earls are up in arms.
K. Edw. Ay, and 'tis likewise thought you favour 'em.
Q. Isab. Thus do you still suspect me without cause?

Digitized by Google

Niece. Sweet uncle! speak more kindly to the queen.
Gav. My lord, dissemble with her, speak her fair.
K. Edw. Pardon me, sweet, I had forgot myself.
Q. Isab. Your pardon is quickly got of Isabel.
K. Edw. The younger Mortimer is grown so brave,
That to my face he threatens civil wars.
Gav. Why do you not commit him to the Tower?
K. Edw. I dare not, for the people love him well.
Gav. Why, then we'll have him privily made away.
K. Edw. Would Lancaster and he had both caroused
A bowl of poison to each other's health!
But let them go, and tell me what are these.
Niece. Two of my father's servants whilst he liv'd —
May't please your grace to entertain them now.
K. Edw. Tell me, where wast thou born? what is thine arms?
Bald. My name is Baldock, and my gentry
I fetch from Oxford, not from heraldry.
K. Edw. The fitter art thou, Baldock, for my turn.
Wait on me, and I'll see thou shall not want.
Bald. I humbly thank your majesty.
K. Edw. Knowest thou him, Gaveston?
Gav. Ay, my lord;
His name is Spenser, he is well allied;
For my sake, let him wait upon your grace;
Scarce shall you find a man of more desert.
K. Edw. Then, Spenser, wait upon me; for his sake
I'll grace thee with a higher style ere long.
Y. Spen. No greater titles happen unto me,
Than to be favoured of your majesty!
K. Edw. Cousin, this day shall be your marriage-feast.
And, Gaveston, think that I love thee well,
To wed thee to our niece, the only heir[a]
Unto the Earl of Gloucester late deceased.
Gav. I know, my lord, many will stomach me,
But I respect neither their love nor hate.

Digitized by Google

K. Edw. The headstrong barons shall not limit me;
He that I list to favour shall be great.
Come, let's away; and when the marriage ends,
Have at the rebels, and their 'complices! [*Exeunt.*

SCENE III[n]

Enter KENT, LANCASTER, Young MORTIMER, WARWICK, PEMBROKE, *and others*

Kent. My lords, of love to this our native land
I come to join with you and leave the king;
And in your quarrel and the realm's behoof
Will be the first that shall adventure life.
Lan. I fear me, you are sent of policy,[n]
To undermine us with a show of love.
War. He is your brother, therefore have we cause
To cast the worst, and doubt of your revolt.
Kent. Mine honour shall be hostage of my truth:
If that will not suffice, farewell, my lords.
Y. Mor. Stay, Edmund; never was Plantagenet
False of his word, and therefore trust we thee.
Pem. But what's the reason you should leave him now?
Kent. I have informed the Earl of Lancaster.
Lan. And it sufficeth. Now, my lords, know this,
That Gaveston is secretly arrived,
And here in Tynemouth frolics with the king.
Let us with these our followers scale the walls,
And suddenly surprise them unawares.
Y. Mor. I'll give the onset.
War. And I'll follow thee.
Y. Mor. This tottered ensign of my ancestors,
Which swept the desert shore of that Dead Sea
Whereof we got the name of Mortimer,[n]
Will I advance upon this castle's walls.

Digitized by Google

Drums, strike alarum, raise them from their sport,
And ring aloud the knell of Gaveston!
Lan. None be so hardy as to touch the king;
But neither spare you Gaveston nor his friends. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV[n]

Enter severally KING EDWARD *and* Young SPENSER

K. Edw. Oh, tell me, Spenser, where is Gaveston?
Y. Spen. I fear me he is slain, my gracious lord.
K. Edw. No, here he comes; now let them spoil and kill.

Enter QUEEN ISABELLA, KING EDWARD'S Niece, GAVESTON, *and* Nobles

Fly, fly, my lords, the earls have got the hold;
Take shipping and away to Scarborough;
Spenser and I will post away by land.
Gav. Oh, stay, my lord, they will not injure you.
K. Edw. I will not trust them; Gaveston, away!
Gav. Farewell, my lord.
K. Edw. Lady, farewell.
Niece. Farewell, sweet uncle, till we meet again.
K. Edw. Farewell, sweet Gaveston; and farewell, niece.
Q. Isab. No farewell to poor Isabel thy queen?
K. Edw. Yes, yes, for Mortimer, your lover's sake.
Q. Isab. Heaven can witness I love none but you:
[*Exeunt all but* QUEEN ISABELLA.
From my embracements thus he breaks away.
Oh, that mine arms could close this isle about,
That I might pull him to me where I would!
Or that these tears, that drizzle from mine eyes,
Had power to mollify his stony heart,
That when I had him we might never part!

Digitized by Google

Enter LANCASTER, WARWICK, Young MORTIMER, *and others. Alarums within*

Lan. I wonder how he 'scaped!
Y. Mor. Who's this? the queen!
Q. Isab. Ay, Mortimer, the miserable queen,
Whose pining heart her inward sighs have blasted,
And body with continual mourning wasted:
These hands are tired with haling of my lord
From Gaveston, from wicked Gaveston,
And all in vain; for, when I speak him fair,
He turns away, and smiles upon his minion.
Y. Mor. Cease to lament, and tell us where's the king?
Q. Isab. What would you with the king? is't him you seek?
Lan. No, madam, but that cursèd Gaveston.
Far be it from the thought of Lancaster
To offer violence to his sovereign.
We would but rid the realm of Gaveston:
Tell us where he remains, and he shall die.
Q. Isab. He's gone by water unto Scarborough;
Pursue him quickly, and he cannot 'scape;
The king hath left him, and his train is small.
War. Forslow no time, sweet Lancaster; let's march.
Y. Mor. How comes it that the king and he is parted?
Q. Isab. That thus your army, going several ways,
Might be of lesser force: and with the power
That he intendeth presently to raise,
Be easily suppressed; therefore be gone.
Y. Mor. Here in the river rides a Flemish hoy;
Let's all aboard, and follow him amain.
Lan. The wind that bears him hence will fill our sails:
Come, come aboard, 'tis but an hour's sailing.
Y. Mor. Madam, stay you within this castle here.
Q. Isab. No, Mortimer, I'll to my lord the king.
Y. Mor. Nay, rather sail with us to Scarborough.
Q. Isab. You know the king is so suspicious,

Digitized by Google

As if he hear I have but talked with you,
Mine honour will be called in question;
And therefore, gentle Mortimer, be gone.
Y. Mor. Madam, I cannot stay to answer you,
But think of Mortimer as he deserves.
[*Exeunt all except* QUEEN ISABELLA.
Q. Isab. So well hast thou deserved, sweet Mortimer,
As Isabel could live with thee for ever.
In vain I look for love at Edward's hand,
Whose eyes are fixed on none but Gaveston.
Yet once more I'll importune him with prayer:
If he be strange and not regard my words,
My son and I will over into France,
And to the king my brother there complain,
How Gaveston hath robbed me of his love:
But yet, I hope my sorrows will have end,
And Gaveston this blessèd day be slain. [*Exit.*

SCENE V[a]

Enter GAVESTON, *pursued*

Gav. Yet, lusty lords, I have escaped your hands,
Your threats, your larums, and your hot pursuits;
And though divorcèd from King Edward's eyes,
Yet liveth Pierce of Gaveston unsurprised,
Breathing, in hope (malgrado all your beards,
That muster rebels thus against your king),
To see his royal sovereign once again.

Enter WARWICK, LANCASTER, PEMBROKE, Young MORTIMER, Soldiers, JAMES, *and other* Attendants *of* PEMBROKE

War. Upon him, soldiers, take away his weapons.
Y. Mor. Thou proud disturber of thy country's peace,
Corrupter of thy king; cause of these broils,

Digitized by Google

Base flatterer, yield! and, were it not for shame,
Shame and dishonour to a soldier's name,
Upon my weapon's point here should'st thou fall,
And welter in thy gore.
Lan. Monster of men!
That, like the Greekish strumpet,[n] trained to arms
And bloody wars so many valiant knights;
Look for no other fortune, wretch, than death!
King Edward is not here to buckler thee.
War. Lancaster, why talk'st thou to the slave?
Go, soldiers, take him hence, for, by my sword,
His head shall off: Gaveston, short warning
Shall serve thy turn: it is our country's cause,
That here severely we will execute
Upon thy person. Hang him at a bough.
Gav. My lord! —
War. Soldiers, have him away —
But for thou wert the favourite of a king,
Thou shalt have so much honour at our hands —
Gav. I thank you all, my lords: then I perceive,
That heading is one, and hanging is the other,[n]
And death is all.

Enter ARUNDEL

Lan. How now, my lord of Arundel?
Arun. My lords, King Edward greets you all by me.
War. Arundel, say your message.
Arun. His majesty,
Hearing that you had taken Gaveston,
Entreateth you by me, yet but he may
See him before he dies; for why, he says,
And sends you word, he knows that die he shall;
And if you gratify his grace so far,
He will be mindful of the courtesy.
War. How now?
Gav. Renownèd Edward, how thy name
Revives poor Gaveston!

Digitized by Google

War. No, it needeth not;
Arundel, we will gratify the king
In other matters; he must pardon us in this.
Soldiers, away with him!
Gav. Why, my lord of Warwick,
Will not these delays beget my hopes?
I know it, lords, it is this life you aim at,
Yet grant King Edward this.
Y. Mor. Shalt thou appoint
What we shall grant? Soldiers, away with him:
Thus we'll gratify the king,
We'll send his head by thee; let him bestow
His tears on that, for that is all he gets
Of Gaveston, or else his senseless trunk.
Lan. Not so, my lords, lest he bestow more cost
In burying him than he hath ever earned.
Arun. My lords, it is his majesty's request,
And in the honour of a king he swears,
He will but talk with him, and send him back.
War. When? can you tell? Arundel, no; we wot,
He that the care of his realm remits,
And drives his nobles to these exigents
For Gaveston, will, if he sees him once,
Violate any promise to possess him.
Arun. Then, if you will not trust his grace in keep,
My lords, I will be pledge for his return.
Y. Mor. 'Tis honourable in thee to offer this;
But, for we know thou art a noble gentleman,
We will not wrong thee so, to make away
A true man for a thief.
Gav. How mean'st thou, Mortimer? that is over-base.
Y. Mor. Away, base groom, robber of king's renown!
Question with thy companions and mates.
Pem. My Lord Mortimer, and you, my lords, each one,
To gratify the king's request therein,
Touching the sending of this Gaveston,
Because his majesty so earnestly

Digitized by Google

Desires to see the man before his death,
I will upon mine honour undertake
To carry him, and bring him back again;
Provided this, that you my lord of Arundel
Will join with me.
War. Pembroke, what wilt thou do?
Cause yet more bloodshed? is it not enough
That we have taken him, but must we now
Leave him on "had I wist," [n] and let him go?
Pem. My lords, I will not over-woo your honours,
But if you dare trust Pembroke with the prisoner,
Upon mine oath, I will return him back.
Arun. My lord of Lancaster, what say you in this?
Lan. Why, I say, let him go on Pembroke's word.
Pem. And you, Lord Mortimer?
Y. Mor. How say you, my lord of Warwick?
War. Nay, do your pleasures, I know how 'twill prove.
Pem. Then give him me.
Gav. Sweet sovereign, yet I come
To see thee ere I die.
War. Yet not perhaps,
If Warwick's wit and policy prevail. [*Aside.*
Y. Mor. My lord of Pembroke, we deliver him you;
Return him on your honour. Sound, away!

[*Exeunt all except* PEMBROKE, ARUNDEL, GAVESTON, JAMES, *and other* Attendants *of* PEMBROKE.

Pem. My lord of Arundel, you shall go with me.
My house is not far hence; out of the way
A little, but our men shall go along.
We that have pretty wenches to our wives,
Sir, must not come so near to balk their lips.
Arun. 'Tis very kindly spoke, my lord of Pembroke;
Your honour hath an adamant of power
To draw a prince.
Pem. So, my lord. Come hither, James:
I do commit this Gaveston to thee,

Digitized by Google

Be thou this night his keeper; in the morning
We will discharge thee of thy charge: be gone.

Gav. Unhappy Gaveston, whither goest thou now?

[*Exit with* JAMES *and the other* Attendants.

Horse-boy. My lord, we'll quickly be at Cobham.

[*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

ACT THE THIRD

SCENE I[a]

Enter GAVESTON *mourning*, JAMES, *and other* Attendants *of* PEMBROKE

Gav. O treacherous Warwick! thus to wrong thy friend.
James. I see it is your life these arms pursue.
Gav. Weaponless must I fall, and die in bands?
Oh! must this day be period of my life?
Centre of all my bliss![a] An ye be men,
Speed to the king.

Enter WARWICK *and* Soldiers

War. My lord of Pembroke's men,
Strive you no longer — I will have that Gaveston.
James. Your lordship does dishonour to yourself,
And wrong our lord, your honourable friend.
War. No, James, it is my country's cause I follow.
Go, take the villain; soldiers, come away.
We'll make quick work. Commend me to your master,
My friend, and tell him that I watched it well.
Come, let thy shadow parley with King Edward.
Gav. Treacherous earl, shall I not see the king?
War. The King of Heaven perhaps, no other king.
Away! [*Exeunt* WARWICK *and* Soldiers *with* GAVESTON.
James. Come, fellows, it booted not for us to strive,
We will in haste go certify our lord. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE II[a]

Enter KING EDWARD *and* Young SPENSER, BALDOCK, *and* Nobles *of the* KING'S *side, and* Soldiers *with drums and fifes*

K. Edw. I long to hear an answer from the barons
Touching my friend, my dearest Gaveston.
Ah! Spenser, not the riches of my realm
Can ransom him! ah, he is marked to die!
I know the malice of the younger Mortimer,
Warwick I know is rough, and Lancaster
Inexorable, and I shall never see
My lovely Pierce of Gaveston again!
The barons overbear me with their pride.

Y. Spen. Were I King Edward, England's sovereign,
Son to the lovely Eleanor of Spain,
Great Edward Longshanks' issue, would I bear
These braves, this rage, and suffer uncontrolled
These barons thus to beard me in my land,
In mine own realm? My lord, pardon my speech:
Did you retain your father's magnanimity,[a]
Did you regard the honour of your name,
You would not suffer thus your majesty
Be counterbuffed of your nobility.
Strike off their heads, and let them preach on poles!
No doubt, such lessons they will teach the rest,
As by their preachments they will profit much,
And learn obedience to their lawful king.

K. Edw. Yea, gentle Spenser, we have been too mild,
Too kind to them; but now have drawn our sword,
And if they send me not my Gaveston,
We'll steel it[a] on their crest, and poll their tops.

Bald. This haught resolve becomes your majesty
Not to be tied to their affection,
As though your highness were a schoolboy still,
And must be awed and governed like a child.

Digitized by Google

Enter the Elder SPENSER,[n] *with his truncheon and* Soldiers

E. Spen. Long live my sovereign, the noble Edward —
In peace triumphant, fortunate in wars!
K. Edw. Welcome, old man, com'st thou in Edward's aid?
Then tell thy prince of whence, and what thou art.
E. Spen. Lo, with a band of bowmen and of pikes,
Brown bills and targeteers, four hundred strong,
Sworn to defend King Edward's royal right,
I come in person to your majesty,
Spenser, the father of Hugh Spenser there,
Bound to your highness everlastingly,
For favour done, in him, unto us all.
K. Edw. Thy father, Spenser?
Y. Spen. True, an it like your grace,
That pours, in lieu of all your goodness shown,
His life, my lord, before your princely feet.
K. Edw. Welcome ten thousand times, old man, again.
Spenser, this love, this kindness to thy king,
Argues thy noble mind and disposition.
Spenser, I here create thee Earl of Wiltshire,
And daily will enrich thee with our favour,
That, as the sunshine, shall reflect o'er thee.
Beside, the more to manifest our love,
Because we hear Lord Bruce doth sell his land,
And that the Mortimers are in hand withal,
Thou shalt have crowns of us t' outbid the barons:
And, Spenser, spare them not, lay it on.
Soldiers, a largess, and thrice welcome all!
Y. Spen. My lord, here comes the queen.

Enter QUEEN ISABELLA, PRINCE EDWARD, *and* LEVUNE

K. Edw. Madam, what news?
Q. Isab. News of dishonour, lord, and discontent.
Our friend Levune, faithful and full of trust,
Informeth us, by letters and by words,

Digitized by Google

That Lord Valois our brother, King of France,
Because your highness hath been slack in homage,
Hath seizèd Normandy into his hands.
These be the letters, this the messenger.
K. Edw. Welcome, Levune. Tush, Sib,[a] if this be all,
Valois and I will soon be friends again. —
But to my Gaveston; shall I never see,
Never behold thee now? — Madam, in this matter,
We will employ you and your little son;
You shall go parley with the King of France. —
Boy, see you bear you bravely to the king,
And do your message with a majesty.
P. Edw. Commit not to my youth things of more weight
Than fits a prince so young as I to bear,
And fear not, lord and father, Heaven's great beams
On Atlas' shoulder shall not lie more safe,
Than shall your charge committed to my trust.
Q. Isab. Ah, boy! this towardness makes thy mother fear
Thou art not marked to many days on earth.
K. Edw. Madam, we will that you with speed be shipped,
And this our son; Levune shall follow you
With all the haste we can dispatch him hence.
Choose of our lords to bear you company;
And go in peace, leave us in wars at home.
Q. Isab. Unnatural wars, where subjects brave their king;
God end them once! My lord, I take my leave,
To make my preparation for France.
[*Exit with* PRINCE EDWARD.

Enter ARUNDEL

K. Edw. What, Lord Arundel, dost thou come alone?
Arun. Yea, my good lord, for Gaveston is dead.

Digitized by Google

K. Edw. Ah, traitors! have they put my friend to death?
Tell me, Arundel, died he ere thou cam'st,
Or didst thou see my friend to take his death?
Arun. Neither, my lord; for, as he was surprised,
Begirt with weapons and with enemies round,
I did your highness' message to them all;
Demanding him of them, entreating rather,
And said, upon the honour of my name,
That I would undertake to carry him
Unto your highness, and to bring him back.
K. Edw. And tell me, would the rebels deny me that?
Y. Spen. Proud recreants!
K. Edw. Yea, Spenser, traitors all.
Arun. I found them at the first inexorable;
The Earl of Warwick would not bide the hearing,
Mortimer hardly; Pembroke and Lancaster
Spake least: and, when they flatly had denied,
Refusing to receive me pledge for him,
The Earl of Pembroke mildly thus bespake:
"My lords, because our sovereign sends for him,
And promiseth he shall be safe returned,
I will this undertake, to have him hence,
And see him re-delivered to your hands."
K. Edw. Well, and how fortunes it that he came not?
Y. Spen. Some treason, or some villainy was the cause.
Arun. The Earl of Warwick seized him on his way;
For, being delivered unto Pembroke's men,
Their lord rode home thinking his prisoner safe;
But ere he came, Warwick in ambush lay,
And bare him to his death; and in a trench
Strake off his head, and marched unto the camp.
Y. Spen. A bloody part, flatly 'gainst law of arms!
K. Edw. Oh, shall I speak, or shall I sigh and die!
Y. Spen. My lord, refer your vengeance to the sword
Upon these barons; hearten up your men;

Digitized by Google

Let them not unrevenged murder your friends!
Advance your standard, Edward, in the field,
And march to fire them from their starting holes.
K. Edw. [*kneeling*]. By earth, the common mother of us all,
By Heaven, and all the moving orbs thereof,
By this right hand, and by my father's sword,
And all the honours 'longing to my crown,
I will have heads, and lives for him, as many
As I have manors, castles, towns, and towers! — [*Rises.*
Treacherous Warwick! traitorous Mortimer!
If I be England's king, in lakes of gore
Your headless trunks, your bodies will I trail,
That you may drink your fill, and quaff in blood,
And stain my royal standard with the same,
That so my bloody colours may suggest
Remembrance of revenge immortally
On your accursèd traitorous progeny,
You villains, that have slain my Gaveston!
And in this place of honour and of trust,
Spenser, sweet Spenser, I adopt thee here:
And merely[n] of our love we do create thee
Earl of Gloucester, and Lord Chamberlain,
Despite of times, despite of enemies.
Y. Spen. My lord, here's a messenger from the barons
Desires access unto your majesty.
K. Edw. Admit him near.

Enter the Herald, *with his coat of arms*

Her. Long live King Edward, England's lawful lord!
K. Edw. So wish not they, I wis, that sent thee hither.
Thou com'st from Mortimer and his 'complices,
A ranker rout of rebels never was.
Well, say thy message.
Her. The barons up in arms, by me salute
Your highness with long life and happiness;

Digitized by Google

And bid me say, as plainer to your grace,
That if without effusion of blood
You will this grief have ease and remedy,
That from your princely person you remove
This Spenser, as a putrifying branch,
That deads the royal vine, whose golden leaves
Empale your princely head, your diadem,
Whose brightness such pernicious upstarts dim,
Say they; and lovingly advise your grace,
To cherish virtue and nobility,
And have old servitors in high esteem,
And shake off smooth dissembling flatterers:
This granted, they, their honours, and their lives,
Are to your highness vowed and consecrate.

Y. Spen. Ah, traitors! will they still display their pride?

K. Edw. Away, tarry no answer, but be gone!
Rebels, will they appoint their sovereign
His sports, his pleasures, and his company?
Yet, ere thou go, see how I do divorce
[*Embraces* SPENSER.
Spenser from me. — Now get thee to thy lords,
And tell them I will come to chastise them
For murdering Gaveston; hie thee, get thee gone!
Edward with fire and sword follows at thy heels.
[*Exit* Herald.
My lords, perceive you how these rebels swell?
Soldiers, good hearts, defend your sovereign's right,
For now, even now, we march to make them stoop.
Away! [*Exeunt. Alarums, excursions, a great fight, and a retreat sounded, within.*

Re-enter KING EDWARD, *the* Elder SPENSER, Young SPENSER, *and* Noblemen *of the* KING'S *side*

K. Edw. Why do we sound retreat? Upon them, lords!
This day I shall pour vengeance with my sword

Digitized by Google

On those proud rebels that are up in arms,
And do confront and countermand their king..

Y. Spen. I doubt it not, my lord, right will prevail.

E. Spen. 'Tis not amiss, my liege, for either part
To breathe awhile; our men, with sweat and dust
All choked well near, begin to faint for heat;
And this retire refresheth horse and man.

Y. Spen. Here come the rebels.

Enter Young MORTIMER, LANCASTER, WARWICK, PEMBROKE, *and others*

Y. Mor. Look, Lancaster, yonder is Edward
Among his flatterers.

Lan. And there let him be
Till he pay dearly for their company.

War. And shall, or Warwick's sword shall smite in vain.

K. Edw. What, rebels, do you shrink and sound retreat?

Y. Mor. No, Edward, no, thy flatterers faint and fly.

Lan. They'd best betimes forsake thee, and their trains,
For they'll betray thee, traitors as they are.

Y. Spen. Traitor on thy face, rebellious Lancaster!

Pem. Away, base upstart, bravest thou nobles thus?

E. Spen. A noble attempt, and honourable deed,
Is it not, trow ye, to assemble aid,
And levy arms against your lawful king!

K. Edw. For which ere long their heads shall satisfy,
To appease the wrath of their offended king.

Y. Mor. Then, Edward, thou wilt fight it to the last,
And rather bathe thy sword in subjects' blood,
Than banish that pernicious company?

K. Edw. Ay, traitors all, rather than thus be braved,

Digitized by Google

Make England's civil towns huge heaps of stones,
And ploughs to go about our palace gates.
War. A desperate and unnatural resolution!
Alarum! — to the fight!
St. George for England, and the barons' right.
K. Edw. Saint George for England, and King Edward's right.
[*Alarums. Exeunt the two parties severally.*

SCENE III[n]

Enter KING EDWARD *and his followers, with the* Barons *and* KENT, *captives*

K. Edw. Now, lusty lords, now, not by chance of war,
But justice of the quarrel and the cause,
Vailed is your pride; methinks you hang the heads,
But we'll advance them, traitors; now 'tis time
To be avenged on you for all your braves,
And for the murder of my dearest friend,
To whom right well you knew our soul was knit,
Good Pierce of Gaveston, my sweet favourite.
Ah, rebels! recreants! you made him away.
Kent. Brother, in regard of[n] thee, and of thy land,
Did they remove that flatterer from thy throne.
K. Edw. So, sir, you have spoke; away, avoid our presence! [*Exit* KENT.
Accursèd wretches, was't in regard of us,
When we had sent our messenger to request
He might be spared to come to speak with us,
And Pembroke undertook for his return,
That thou, proud Warwick, watched the prisoner,
Poor Pierce, and headed him 'gainst law of arms?
For which thy head shall overlook the rest,
As much as thou in rage outwent'st the rest.
War. Tyrant, I scorn thy threats and menaces;
It is but temporal that thou canst inflict.

Digitized by Google

Lan. The worst is death, and better die to live
Than live in infamy under such a king.
K. Edw. Away with them, my lord of Winchester!
These lusty leaders, Warwick and Lancaster,
I charge you roundly — off with both their heads!
Away!
War. Farewell, vain world!
Lan. Sweet Mortimer, farewell.
Y. Mor. England, unkind to thy nobility,
Groan for this grief, behold how thou art maimed!
K. Edw. Go, take that haughty Mortimer to the Tower,
There see him safe bestowed; and for the rest,
Do speedy execution on them all.
Begone!
Y. Mor. What, Mortimer! can ragged stony walls
Immure thy virtue that aspires to Heaven?
No, Edward, England's scourge, it may not be;
Mortimer's hope surmounts his fortune far.
[*The captive* Barons *are led off.*
K. Edw. Sound drums and trumpets! March with me, my friends,
Edward this day hath crowned him king anew.
[*Exeunt all except* Young SPENSER, LEVUNE, *and* BALDOCK.
Y. Spen. Levune, the trust that we repose in thee,
Begets the quiet of King Edward's land.
Therefore begone in haste, and with advice
Bestow that treasure on the lords of France,
That, therewith all enchanted, like the guard
That suffered Jove to pass in showers of gold
To Danae, all aid may be denied
To Isabel, the queen, that now in France
Makes friends, to cross the seas with her young son,
And step into his father's regiment.
Levune. That's it these barons and the subtle queen
Long levelled at.

Digitized by Google

Bald. Yea, but, Levune, thou seest
These barons lay their heads on blocks together;
What they intend, the hangman frustrates clean.
Levune. Have you no doubt, my lords, I'll clap so close[n]
Among the lords of France with England's gold,
That Isabel shall make her plaints in vain,
And France shall be obdurate with her tears.
Y. Spen. Then make for France, amain — Levune, away!
Proclaim King Edward's wars and victories. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

ACT THE FOURTH

SCENE I[n]

Enter KENT

Kent. Fair blows the wind for France; blow, gentle gale,
Till Edmund be arrived for England's good!
Nature, yield to my country's cause in this.
A brother? no, a butcher of thy friends!
Proud Edward, dost thou banish me thy presence?
But I'll to France, and cheer the wrongèd queen,
And certify what Edward's looseness is.
Unnatural king! to slaughter noblemen
And cherish flatterers! Mortimer, I stay
Thy sweet escape: stand gracious, gloomy night,
To his device.

Enter Young MORTIMER, *disguised*

Y. Mor. Holla! who walketh there?
Is't you, my lord?
Kent. Mortimer, 'tis I;
But hath thy potion wrought so happily?
Y. Mor. It hath, my lord; the warders all asleep,
I thank them, gave me leave to pass in peace.
But hath your grace got shipping unto France?
Kent. Fear it not. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II[n]

Enter QUEEN ISABELLA *and* PRINCE EDWARD

Q. Isab. Ah, boy! our friends do fail us all in France:
The lords are cruel, and the king unkind;
What shall we do?

Digitized by Google

P. Edw. Madam, return to England,
And please my father well, and then a fig
For all my uncle's friendship here in France.
I warrant you, I'll win his highness quickly;
'A loves me better than a thousand Spensers.
Q. Isab. Ah, boy, thou art deceived, at least in this,
To think that we can yet be tuned together;
No, no, we jar too far. Unkind Valois!
Unhappy Isabel! when France rejects,
Whither, oh! whither dost thou bend thy steps?

Enter SIR JOHN *of* HAINAULT

Sir J. Madam, what cheer?
Q. Isab. Ah! good Sir John of Hainault,
Never so cheerless, nor so far distrest.
Sir J. I hear, sweet lady, of the king's unkindness;
But droop not, madam; noble minds contemn
Despair; will your grace with me to Hainault,
And there stay time's advantage with your son?
How say you, my lord, will you go with your friends,
And shake off all our fortunes equally?
P. Edw. So pleaseth the queen, my mother, me it likes:
The King of England, nor the court of France,
Shall have me from my gracious mother's side,
Till I be strong enough to break a staff;
And then have at the proudest Spenser's head.
Sir J. Well said, my lord.
Q. Isab. Oh, my sweet heart, how do I moan thy wrongs,
Yet triumph in the hope of thee, my joy!
Ah, sweet Sir John! even to the utmost verge
Of Europe, or the shore of Tanais,
We will with thee to Hainault — so we will: —
The marquis is a noble gentleman;
His grace, I dare presume, will welcome me.
But who are these?

Digitized by Google

Enter KENT *and* Young MORTIMER

Kent. Madam, long may you live,
Much happier than your friends in England do!
Q. Isab. Lord Edmund and Lord Mortimer alive!
Welcome to France! the news was here, my lord,
That you were dead, or very near your death.
Y. Mor. Lady, the last was truest of the twain:
But Mortimer, reserved for better hap,
Hath shaken off the thraldom of the Tower,
And lives t'advance your standard, good my lord.
P. Edw. How mean you? and the king, my father, lives!
No, my Lord Mortimer, not I,[n] I trow.[n]
Q. Isab. Not, son! why not? I would it were no worse.
But, gentle lords, friendless we are in France.
Y. Mor. Monsieur le Grand, a noble friend of yours,
Told us, at our arrival, all the news —
How hard the nobles, how unkind the king
Hath showed himself; but, madam, right makes room
Where weapons want; and, though a many friends
Are made away, as Warwick, Lancaster,
And others of our party and faction;
Yet have we friends, assure your grace, in England
Would cast up caps, and clap their hands for joy,
To see us there, appointed for our foes.
Kent. Would all were well, and Edward well reclaimed
For England's honour, peace, and quietness.
Y. Mor. But by the sword, my lord, 't must be deserved;
The king will ne'er forsake his flatterers.
Sir J. My lords of England, sith th' ungentle king
Of France refuseth to give aid of arms
To this distressèd queen his sister here,
Go you with her to Hainault; doubt ye not,
We will find comfort, money, men and friends

Digitized by Google

Ere long, to bid the English king a base.[n]
How say'st, young prince? What think you of the match?

P. Edw. I think King Edward will outrun us all.

Q. Isab. Nay, son, not so; and you must not discourage
Your friends, that are so forward in your aid.

Kent. Sir John of Hainault, pardon us, I pray;
These comforts that you give our woeful queen
Bind us in kindness all at your command.

Q. Isab. Yea, gentle brother; and the God of Heaven
Prosper your happy motion, good Sir John.

Y. Mor. This noble gentleman, forward in arms,
Was born, I see, to be our anchor-hold.
Sir John of Hainault, be it thy renown,
That England's queen, and nobles in distress,
Have been by thee restored and comforted.

Sir J. Madam, along, and you, my lords, with me,
That England's peers may Hainault's welcome see.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III[n]

Enter KING EDWARD, ARUNDEL, *the* Elder *and* Younger SPENSER, *and others*

K. Edw. Thus, after many threats of wrathful war,
Triumpheth England's Edward with his friends;
And triumph, Edward, with his friends uncontrolled![n]
My lord of Gloucester, do you hear the news?

Y. Spen. What news, my lord?

K. Edw. Why, man, they say there is great execution
Done through the realm; my lord of Arundel,
You have the note, have you not?

Arun. From the Lieutenant of the Tower, my lord.

K. Edw. I pray let us see it. [*Takes the note.*] What have we there?
Read it, Spenser. [*Hands the note to* Young SPENSER, *who reads the names.*

Digitized by Google

Why, so; they barked apace a month ago:
Now, on my life, they'll neither bark nor bite.
Now, sirs, the news from France? Gloucester, I trow
The lords of France love England's gold so well,
As Isabella gets no aid from thence.
What now remains? have you proclaimed, my lord,
Reward for them can bring in Mortimer?

Y. Spen. My lord, we have; and if he be in England,
'A will be had ere long, I doubt it not.

K. Edw. If, dost thou say? Spenser, as true as death
He is in England's ground; our portmasters
Are not so careless of their king's command.

Enter a Messenger

How now, what news with thee? from whence come these?

Mess. Letters, my lord, and tidings forth of France —
To you, my lord of Gloucester, from Levune.

[*Gives letters to* Young SPENSER.

K. Edw. Read.

Y. Spen. [*reads*].

"My duty to your honour premised, &c., I have, according to instructions in that behalf, dealt with the King of France his lords, and effected, that the queen, all discontented and discomforted, is gone: whither, if you ask, with Sir John of Hainault, brother to the marquis, into Flanders. With them are gone Lord Edmund, and the Lord Mortimer, having in their company divers of your nation, and others; and, as constant report goeth, they intend to give King Edward battle in England, sooner than he can look for them. This is all the news of import.

Your honour's in all service, LEVUNE."

K. Edw. Ah, villains! hath that Mortimer escaped?
With him is Edmund gone associate?

Digitized by Google

And will Sir John of Hainault lead the round?
Welcome, a God's name, madam, and your son;
England shall welcome you and all your rout.
Gallop apace, bright Phœbus, through the sky,
And dusky night, in rusty iron car,
Between you both shorten the time, I pray,
That I may see that most desirèd day,
When we may meet these traitors in the field.
Ah, nothing grieves me, but my little boy
Is thus misled to countenance their ills.
Come, friends, to Bristow, there to make us strong;
And, winds, as equal be to bring them in,
As you injurious were to bear them forth! [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV[n]

Enter QUEEN ISABELLA, PRINCE EDWARD, KENT, Young MORTIMER, *and* SIR JOHN *of* HAINAULT

Q. Isab. Now, lords, our loving friends and countrymen,
Welcome to England all, with prosperous winds!
Our kindest friends in Belgia have we left,
To cope with friends at home; a heavy case
When force to force is knit, and sword and glaive.
In civil broils make kin and countrymen
Slaughter themselves in others, and their sides
With their own weapons gore! But what's the help?
Misgoverned kings are cause of all this wreck;
And, Edward, thou art one among them all,
Whose looseness hath betrayed thy land to spoil,
Who made the channel overflow with blood
Of thine own people; patron shouldst thou be,
But thou —

Y. Mor. Nay, madam, if you be a warrior,
You must not grow so passionate in speeches.

Digitized by Google

Lords,
Sith that we are by sufferance of Heaven
Arrived, and armèd in this prince's right,
Here for our country's cause swear we to him
All homage, fealty and forwardness;
And for the open wrongs and injuries
Edward hath done to us, his queen and land,
We come in arms to wreak it with the sword;
That England's queen in peace may repossess
Her dignities and honours: and withal
We may remove these flatterers from the king,
That havoc England's wealth and treasury.

Sir J. Sound trumpets, my lord, and forward let us march.

Edward will think we come to flatter him.

Kent. I would he never had been flattered more!

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE V[n]

Enter KING EDWARD, BALDOCK, *and* Young SPENSER

Y. Spen. Fly, fly, my lord! the queen is over-strong;
Her friends do multiply, and yours do fail.
Shape we our course to Ireland, there to breathe.

K. Edw. What! was I born to fly and run away,
And leave the Mortimers conquerors behind?
Give me my horse, and let's reinforce[n] our troops:
And in this bed of honour die with fame.

Bald. Oh, no, my lord, this princely resolution
Fits not the time; away! we are pursued. [*Exeunt.*

Enter KENT, *with sword and target*

Kent. This way he fled, but I am come too late.
Edward, alas! my heart relents for thee.
Proud traitor, Mortimer, why dost thou chase
Thy lawful king, thy sovereign, with thy sword?

Digitized by Google

Vile wretch! and why hast thou, of all unkind,[n]
Borne arms against thy brother and thy king?
Rain showers of vengeance on my cursèd head,
Thou God, to whom in justice it belongs
To punish this unnatural revolt!
Edward, this Mortimer aims at thy life!
Oh, fly him, then! But, Edmund, calm this rage,
Dissemble, or thou diest; for Mortimer
And Isabel do kiss, while they conspire:
And yet she bears a face of love forsooth.
Fie on that love that hatcheth death and hate!
Edmund, away! Bristow to Longshanks' blood
Is false; be not found single for suspect.[n]
Proud Mortimer pries near unto thy walks.[n]

Enter QUEEN ISABELLA, PRINCE EDWARD, Young MORTIMER, *and* SIR JOHN *of* HAINAULT

Q. Isab. Successful battle gives the God of kings
To them that fight in right and fear his wrath.
Since then successfully we have prevailed,
Thankèd be Heaven's great architect, and you.
Ere farther we proceed, my noble lords,
We here create our well-belovèd son,
Of love and care unto his royal person,
Lord Warden of the realm, and sith the fates
Have made his father so infortunate,
Deal you, my lords, in this, my loving lords,
As to your wisdoms fittest seems in all.
Kent. Madam, without offence, if I may ask,
How will you deal with Edward in his fall?
P. Edw. Tell me, good uncle, what Edward do you mean?
Kent. Nephew, your father: I dare not call him king.
Y. Mor. My lord of Kent, what needs these questions?
'Tis not in her controlment, nor in ours,
But as the realm and parliament shall please,

Digitized by Google

So shall your brother be disposèd of. —
I like not this relenting mood in Edmund,
Madam, 'tis good to look to him betimes.
[*Aside to the* QUEEN.

Q. Isab. My lord, the Mayor of Bristow knows our mind.

Y. Mor. Yea, madam, and they 'scape not easily
That fled the field.

Q. Isab. Baldock is with the king.
A goodly chancellor is he not, my lord?

Sir J. So are the Spensers, the father and the son.

Kent. This Edward is the ruin of the realm.

Enter RICE AP HOWEL, *with the* Elder SPENSER, *prisoner, and* Attendants

Rice. God save Queen Isabel, and her princely son!
Madam, the Mayor and citizens of Bristow,
In sign of love and duty to this presence,
Present by me this traitor to the state,
Spenser, the father to that wanton Spenser,
That, like the lawless Catiline[n] of Rome,
Revelled in England's wealth and treasury.

Q. Isab. We thank you all.

Y. Mor. Your loving care in this
Deserveth princely favours and rewards.
But where's the king and the other Spenser fled?

Rice. Spenser the son, created Earl of Gloucester,
Is with that smooth-tongued scholar Baldock gone,
And shipped but late for Ireland with the king.

Y. Mor. Some whirlwind fetch them back or sink them all! — [*Aside.*
They shall be started thence, I doubt it not.

P. Edw. Shall I not see the king my father yet?

Kent. Unhappy Edward, chased from England's bounds. [*Aside.*

Sir J. Madam, what resteth, why stand you in a muse?

Digitized by Google

Q. Isab. I rue my lord's ill-fortune; but alas!
Care of my country called me to this war.
Y. Mor. Madam, have done with care and sad complaint;
Your king hath wronged your country and himself,
And we must seek to right it as we may.
Meanwhile, have hence this rebel to the block.
E. Spen. Rebel is he that fights against the prince;[n]
So fought not they that fought in Edward's right.
Y. Mor. Take him away, he prates;
[*Exeunt* Attendants *with the* Elder SPENSER.
You, Rice ap Howel,[n]
Shall do good service to her majesty,
Being of countenance in your country here,
To follow these rebellious runagates.
We in meanwhile, madam, must take advice,
How Baldock, Spenser, and their 'complices,
May in their fall be followed to their end. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE VI[n]

Enter the Abbot, Monks, KING EDWARD, Young SPENSER, *and* BALDOCK (*the three latter disguised*)

Abbot. Have you no doubt, my lord; have you no fear;
As silent and as careful we will be,
To keep your royal person safe with us,
Free from suspect, and fell invasion
Of such as have your majesty in chase,
Yourself, and those your chosen company,
As danger of this stormy time requires.
K. Edw. Father, thy face should harbour no deceit.
Oh! hadst thou ever been a king, thy heart,
Pierced deeply with a sense of my distress,
Could not but take compassion of my state.

Digitized by Google

Stately and proud, in riches and in train,
Whilom I was, powerful and full of pomp:
But what is he whom rule and empery
Have not in life or death made miserable?
Come, Spenser; come, Baldock, come, sit down by me;
Make trial now of that philosophy,
That in our famous nurseries of arts
Thou suck'dst from Plato and from Aristotle.[n]
Father, this life contemplative is Heaven.
Oh, that I might this life in quiet lead!
But we, alas! are chased; and you, my friends,
Your lives and my dishonour they pursue.
Yet, gentle monks, for treasure, gold nor fee,
Do you betray us and our company.

Monk. Your grace may sit secure,[n] if none but we
Do wot of your abode.

Y. Spen. Not one alive, but shrewdly I suspect
A gloomy fellow in a mead below.
'A gave a long look after us, my lord;
And all the land I know is up in arms,
Arms that pursue our lives with deadly hate.

Bald. We were embarked for Ireland, wretched we!
With awkward winds and sore[n] tempests driven
To fall on shore, and here to pine in fear
Of Mortimer and his confederates.

K. Edw. Mortimer! who talks of Mortimer?
Who wounds me with the name of Mortimer,
That bloody man? Good father, on thy lap
Lay I this head, laden with mickle care.
Oh, might I never open these eyes again!
Never again lift up this drooping head!
Oh, never more lift up this dying heart!

Y. Spen. Look up, my lord.—Baldock, this drowsiness
Betides no good; here even we are betrayed.

Digitized by Google

Enter, with Welsh hooks, RICE AP HOWEL, *a* Mower, *and* LEICESTER

Mow. Upon my life, these be the men ye seek.
Rice. Fellow, enough. — My lord, I pray be short,
A fair commission warrants what we do.
Leices. The queen's commission, urged by Mortimer;
What cannot[n] gallant Mortimer with the queen?
Alas! see where he sits, and hopes unseen
To escape their hands that seek to reave his life.
Too true it is, *Quem dies vidit veniens superbum,*
Hunc dies vidit fugiens jacentem.[n]
But, Leicester, leave to grow so passionate.
Spenser and Baldock, by no other names,
I do arrest you of high treason here.
Stand not on titles, but obey the arrest;
'Tis in the name of Isabel the queen.
My lord, why droop you thus?
K. Edw. O day the last of all my bliss on earth!
Centre of all misfortune![n] O my stars,
Why do you lour unkindly on a king?
~~Comes~~ Leicester, then, in Isabella's name
To take my life, my company from me?
Here, man, rip up this panting breast of mine,
And take my heart in rescue of my friends!
Rice. Away with them!
Y. Spen. It may become thee yet
To let us take our farewell of his grace.
Abbot. My heart with pity earns to see this sight,
A king to bear these words and proud commands.
[*Aside.*
K. Edw. Spenser, ah, sweet Spenser, thus then must we part?
Y. Spen. We must, my lord, so will the angry Heavens.
K. Edw. Nay, so will hell and cruel Mortimer;
The gentle Heavens have not to do in this.
Bald. My lord, it is in vain to grieve or storm.

Digitized by Google

Here humbly of your grace we take our leaves;
Our lots are cast; I fear me, so is thine.
K. Edw. In Heaven we may, in earth ne'er shall we meet;
And, Leicester, say, what shall become of us?
Leices. Your majesty must go to Killingworth.
K. Edw. Must! it is somewhat hard, when kings must go.
Leices. Here is a litter ready for your grace,
That waits your pleasure, and the day grows old.
Rice. As good be gone, as stay and be benighted.
K. Edw. A litter hast thou? lay me in a hearse,
And to the gates of hell convey me hence;
Let Pluto's bells ring out my fatal knell,
And hags howl for my death at Charon's shore,
For friends hath Edward none but these,
And these must die under a tyrant's sword.
Rice. My lord, be going; care not for these,
For we shall see them shorter by the heads.
K. Edw. Well, that shall be, shall be: part we must!
Sweet Spenser, gentle Baldock, part we must!
Hence feignèd weeds! unfeignèd are my woes;
[*Throws off his disguise.*
Father, farewell! Leicester, thou stay'st for me,
And go I must. Life, farewell, with my friends.
[*Exeunt* KING EDWARD *and* LEICESTER.
Y. Spen. Oh! Is he gone? Is noble Edward gone?
Parted from hence? never to see us more?
Rend, sphere of Heaven! and, fire, forsake thy orb!
Earth, melt to air! gone is my sovereign,
Gone, gone, alas! never to make return.
Bald. Spenser, I see our souls are fleeting hence;
We are deprived the sunshine of our life:
Make for a new life, man; throw up thy eyes,
And heart and hands to Heaven's immortal throne;
Pay nature's debt with cheerful countenance;
Reduce we all our lessons unto this,

Digitized by Google

To die, sweet Spenser, therefore live we all;
Spenser, all live to die, and rise to fall.

Rice. Come, come, keep these preachments till you come to the place appointed. You, and such as you are, have made wise work in England; will your lordships away?

Mow. Your lordship, I trust, will remember me?

Rice. Remember thee, fellow! what else? Follow me to the town. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

ACT THE FIFTH

SCENE I[a]

Enter KING EDWARD, LEICESTER, *the* BISHOP *of* WINCHESTER, *and* TRUSSEL

Leices. Be patient, good my lord, cease to lament,
Imagine Killingworth Castle were your court,
And that you lay for pleasure here a space,
Not of compulsion or necessity.

K. Edw. Leicester, if gentle words might comfort me,
Thy speeches long ago had eased my sorrows;
For kind and loving hast thou always been.
The griefs of private men are soon allayed,
But not of kings. The forest deer, being struck,
Runs to an herb that closeth up the wounds;
But, when the imperial lion's flesh is gored,
He rends and tears it with his wrathful paw,
And highly scorning that the lowly earth
Should drink his blood, mounts up to the air.
And so it fares with me, whose dauntless mind
The ambitious Mortimer would seek to curb,
And that unnatural queen, false Isabel,
That thus hath pent and mewed me in a prison;
For such outrageous passions cloy my soul,
As with the wings of rancour and disdain,
Full often am I soaring up to Heaven,
To plain me to the gods against them both.
But, when I call to mind I am a king,
Methinks I should revenge me of my wrongs,
That Mortimer and Isabel have done.
But what are kings, when regiment is gone,

Digitized by Google

But perfect shadows in a sunshine day?
My nobles rule, I bear the name of king;
I wear the crown, but am controlled by them,
By Mortimer, and my unconstant queen,
Who spots my nuptial bed with infamy;
Whilst I am lodged within this cave of care,
Where so row at my elbow still attends,
To company my heart with sad laments,
That bleeds within me for this strange exchange.
But tell me, must I now resign my crown,
To make usurping Mortimer a king?

B. of Win. Your grace mistakes; it is for England's good,
And princely Edward's right we crave the crown.

K. Edw. No, 'tis for Mortimer, not Edward's head;
For he's a lamb, encompassèd by wolves,
Which in a moment will abridge his life.
But if proud Mortimer do wear this crown,
Heavens turn it to a blaze of quenchless fire!
Or like the snaky wreath of Tisiphon,[a]
Engirt the temples of his hateful head;
So shall not England's vine be perishèd,
But Edward's name survives, though Edward dies.

Leices. My lord, why waste you thus the time away?
They stay your answer; will you yield your crown?

K. Edw. Ah, Leicester, weigh how hardly I can brook
To lose my crown and kingdom without cause;
To give ambitious Mortimer my right,
That like a mountain overwhelms my bliss,
In which extreme my mind here murdered is.
But what the heavens appoint, I must obey!
Here, take my crown; the life of Edward too;
[*Taking off the crown.*
Two kings in England cannot reign at once.
But stay awhile, let me be king till night,
That I may gaze upon this glittering crown;
So shall my eyes receive their last content,

Digitized by Google

My head, the latest honour due to it,
And jointly both yield up their wishèd right.
Continue ever thou celestial sun;
Let never silent night possess this clime:
Stand still you watches of the element;
All times and seasons, rest you at a stay,
That Edward may be still fair England's king!
But day's bright beam doth vanish fast away,
And needs I must resign my wishèd crown.
Inhuman creatures! nursed with tiger's milk!
Why gape you for your sovereign's overthrow!
My diadem I mean, and guiltless life.
See, monsters, see, I'll wear my crown again!
[*He puts on the crown.*
What, fear you not the fury of your king?
But, hapless Edward, thou art fondly led;
They pass not for thy frowns as late they did,
But seek to make a new-elected king;
Which fills my mind with strange despairing thoughts,
Which thoughts are martyrèd with endless torments,
And in this torment comfort find I none,
But that I feel the crown upon my head;
And therefore let me wear it yet awhile.

Trus.[n] My lord, the parliament must have present news,
And therefore say, will you resign or no?
[*The* KING *rageth.*

K. Edw. I'll not resign, but whilst I live be king.
Traitors, be gone! and join you with Mortimer!
Elect, conspire, install, do what you will —
Their blood and yours shall seal these treacheries!

B. of Win. This answer we'll return, and so farewell.
[*Going with* TRUSSEL.

Leices. Call them again, my lord, and speak them fair;
For if they go, the prince shall lose his right.

K. Edw. Call thou them back, I have no power to speak.

Digitized by Google

Leices. My lord, the king is willing to resign.
B. of Win. If he be not, let him choose.
K. Edw. Oh, would I might! but Heavens and earth conspire
To make me miserable! Here, receive my crown;
Receive it? no, these innocent hands of mine
Shall not be guilty of so foul a crime.
He of you all that most desires my blood,
And will be called the murderer of a king,
Take it. What, are you moved? pity you me?
Then send for unrelenting Mortimer,
And Isabel, whose eyes, being turned to steel,
Will sooner sparkle fire than shed a tear.
Yet stay, for rather than I'll look on them,
Here, here! [*Gives the crown.*
Now, sweet God of Heaven,
Make me despise this transitory pomp,
And sit for aye enthronizèd in Heaven!
Come, death, and with thy fingers close my eyes,
Or if I live, let me forget myself.
B. of Win. My lord —
K. Edw. Call me not lord; away — out of my sight:
Ah, pardon me: grief makes me lunatic!
Let not that Mortimer protect[n] my son;
More safety there is in a tiger's jaws,
Than his embracements. Bear this to the queen,
Wet with my tears, and dried again with sighs;
[*Gives a handkerchief.*
If with the sight thereof she be not moved,
Return it back and dip it in my blood.
Commend me to my son, and bid him rule
Better than I. Yet how have I transgressed,
Unless it be with too much clemency?
Trus. And thus most humbly do we take our leave.
K. Edw. Farewell;
[*Exeunt the* BISHOP *of* WINCHESTER *and* TRUSSEL.
I know the next news that they bring

Digitized by Google

Will be my death; and welcome shall it be;
To wretched men, death is felicity.

Enter BERKELEY, *who gives a paper to* LEICESTER

Leices. Another post! what news brings he?
K. Edw. Such news as I expect — come, Berkeley, come,
And tell thy message to my naked breast.
Berk. My lord, think not a thought so villainous
Can harbour in a man of noble birth.
To do your highness service and devoir,
And save you from your foes, Berkeley would die.
Leices. My lord, the council of the queen commands
That I resign my charge.
K. Edw. And who must keep me now? Must you, my lord?
Berk. Ay, my most gracious lord — so 'tis decreed.
K. Edw. [*taking the paper*]. By Mortimer, whose name is written here!
Well may I rend his name that rends my heart!
[*Tears it.*
This poor revenge has something eased my mind.
So may his limbs be torn, as is this paper!
Hear me, immortal Jove, and grant it too!
Berk. Your grace must hence with me to Berkeley straight.
K. Edw. Whither you will; all places are alike,
And every earth is fit for burial.
Leices. Favour him, my lord, as much as lieth in you.
Berk. Even so betide my soul as I use him.
K. Edw. Mine enemy hath pitied my estate,
And that's the cause that I am now removed.
Berk. And thinks your grace that Berkeley will be cruel?
K. Edw. I know not; but of this am I assured,

Digitized by Google

That death ends all, and I can die but once.
Leicester, farewell!

Leices. Not yet, my lord; I'll bear you on your way.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE II[a]

Enter QUEEN ISABELLA *and* Young MORTIMER

Y. Mor. Fair Isabel, now have we our desire;
The proud corrupters of the light-brained king
Have done their homage to the lofty gallows,
And he himself lies in captivity.
Be ruled by me, and we will rule the realm.
In any case take heed of childish fear,
For now we hold an old wolf[n] by the ears,
That, if he slip, will seize upon us both,
And gripe the sorer, being griped himself.
Think therefore, madam, that imports us much
To erect your son[n] with all the speed we may,
And that I be protector over him;
For our behoof will bear the greater sway
Whenas a king's name shall be under writ.

Q. Isab. Sweet Mortimer, the life of Isabel,
Be thou persuaded that I love thee well,
And therefore, so the prince my son be safe,
Whom I esteem as dear as these mine eyes,
Conclude against his father what thou wilt,
And I myself will willingly subscribe.

Y. Mor. First would I hear news he were deposed,
And then let me alone to handle him.

Enter Messenger

Letters! from whence?

Mess. From Killingworth, my lord.

Q. Isab. How fares my lord the king?

Mess. In health, madam, but full of pensiveness.

Digitized by Google

Q. Isab. Alas, poor soul, would I could ease his grief!

Enter the BISHOP *of* WINCHESTER *with the crown*

Thanks, gentle Winchester. [*To the* Messenger.] Sirrah, begone. [*Exit* Messenger.

B. of Win. The king hath willingly resigned his crown.

Q. Isab. O happy news! send for the prince, my son.

B. of Win. Further, or this letter was sealed, Lord Berkeley came,

So that he now is gone from Killingworth;
And we have heard that Edmund laid a plot
To set his brother free; no more but so.
The lord of Berkeley is as pitiful
As Leicester that had charge of him before.

Q. Isab. Then let some other be his guardian.

Y. Mor. Let me alone, here is the privy seal.
[*Exit the* BISHOP *of* WINCHESTER.
Who's there? — Call hither Gurney and Matrevis.
[*To* Attendants *within.*
To dash the heavy-headed Edmund's drift,
Berkeley shall be discharged, the king removed,
And none but we shall know where he lieth.

Q. Isab. But, Mortimer, as long as he survives,
What safety rests for us, or for my son?

Y. Mor. Speak, shall he presently be dispatched and die?

Q. Isab. I would he were, so 'twere not by my means.

Enter MATREVIS *and* GURNEY

Y. Mor. Enough. —
Matrevis, write a letter presently
Unto the lord of Berkeley from ourself
That he resign the king to thee and Gurney;
And when 'tis done, we will subscribe our name.

Mat. It shall be done, my lord. [*Writes.*

Digitized by Google

Y. Mor. Gurney.
Gur. My lord.
Y. Mor. As thou intend'st to rise by Mortimer,
Who now makes Fortune's wheel turn as he please,
Seek all the means thou canst to make him droop,
And neither give him kind word nor good look.
Gur. I warrant you, my lord.
Y. Mor. And this above the rest: because we hear
That Edmund casts to work his liberty,
Remove him still from place to place by night,
Till at the last he come to Killingworth,
And then from thence to Berkeley back again;
And by the way, to make him fret the more,
Speak curstly to him; and in any case
Let no man comfort him if he chance to weep,
But amplify his grief with bitter words.
Mat. Fear not, my lord, we'll do as you command.
Y. Mor. So now away; post thitherwards amain.
Q. Isab. Whither goes this letter? to my lord the king?
Commend me humbly to his majesty,
And tell him that I labour all in vain
To ease his grief, and work his liberty;
And bear him this as witness of my love. [*Gives a ring.*
Mat. I will, madam. [*Exit with* GURNEY.
Y. Mor. Finely dissembled. Do so still, sweet queen.
Here comes the young prince with the Earl of Kent.
Q. Isab. Something he whispers in his childish ears.
Y. Mor. If he have such access unto the prince,
Our plots and stratagems will soon be dashed.
Q. Isab. Use Edmund friendly as if all were well.

Enter PRINCE EDWARD, *and* KENT *talking with him*

Y. Mor. How fares my honourable lord of Kent?
Kent. In health, sweet Mortimer: how fares your grace?
Q. Isab. Well, if my lord your brother were enlarged.

Digitized by Google

Kent. I hear of late he hath deposed himself.
Q. Isab. The more my grief.
Y. Mor. And mine.
Kent. Ah, they do dissemble! [*Aside.*
Q. Isab. Sweet son, come hither, I must talk with thee.
Y. Mor. You being his uncle, and the next of blood,
Do look to be protector o'er the prince.
Kent. Not I, my lord; who should protect the son,
But she that gave him life? I mean the queen.
P. Edw. Mother, persuade me not to wear the crown:
Let him be king — I am too young to reign.
Q. Isab. But be content, seeing 'tis his highness' pleasure.
P. Edw. Let me but see him first, and then I will.
Kent. Ay, do, sweet nephew.
Q. Isab. Brother, you know it is impossible.
P. Edw. Why, is he dead?
Q. Isab. No, God forbid.
Kent. I would those words proceeded from your heart.
Y. Mor. Inconstant Edmund, dost thou favour him,
That wast a cause of his imprisonment?
Kent. The more cause have I now to make amends.
Y. Mor. [*Aside to* Q. ISAB.] I tell thee, 'tis not meet that one so false
Should come about the person of a prince.
My lord, he hath betrayed the king his brother,
And therefore trust him not.
P. Edw. But he repents, and sorrows for it now.
Q. Isab. Come, son, and go with this gentle lord and me.
P. Edw. With you I will, but not with Mortimer.
Y. Mor. Why, youngling, 'sdain'st thou so of Mortimer?
Then I will carry thee by force away.
P. Edw. Help, uncle Kent! Mortimer will wrong me.
Q. Isab. Brother Edmund, strive not; we are his friends;

Digitized by Google

Isabel is nearer than the Earl of Kent.
Kent. Sister, Edward is my charge, redeem him.
Q. Isab. Edward is my son, and I will keep him.
Kent. Mortimer shall know that he hath wrongèd me!—
Hence will I haste to Killingworth Castle,
And rescue aged Edward from his foes,
To be revenged on Mortimer and thee. [*Aside.*

[*Exeunt on one side* QUEEN ISABELLA, PRINCE EDWARD, *and* Young MORTIMER; *on the other* KENT.

SCENE III[a]

Enter MATREVIS *and* GURNEY *and* Soldiers, *with* KING EDWARD

Mat. My lord, be not pensive, we are your friends;
Men are ordained to live in misery,
Therefore come — dalliance dangereth our lives.
K. Edw. Friends, whither must unhappy Edward go?
Will hateful Mortimer appoint no rest?
Must I be vexèd like the nightly bird,
Whose sight is loathsome to all wingèd fowls?
When will the fury of his mind assuage?
When will his heart be satisfied with blood?
If mine will serve, unbowel straight this breast,
And give my heart to Isabel and him;
It is the chiefest mark they level at.
Gur. Not so, my liege, the queen hath given this charge
To keep your grace in safety;
Your passions make your dolours to increase.
K. Edw. This usage makes my misery to increase.
But can my air of life[a] continue long
When all my senses are annoyed with stench?
Within a dungeon[a] England's king is kept,
Where I am starved for want of sustenance.
My daily diet is heart-breaking sobs,

Digitized by Google

That almost rent the closet of my heart;
Thus lives old Edward not relieved by any,
And so must die, though pitièd by many.
Oh, wàter, gentle friends, to cool my thirst,
And clear my body from foul excrements!

Mat. Here's channel water, as your charge is given;
Sit down, for we'll be barbers to your grace.

K. Edw. Traitors, away! what, will you murder me,
Or choke your sovereign with puddle-water?

Gur. No; but wash your face, and shave away your beard,
Lest you be known and so be rescuèd.

Mat. Why strive you thus? your labour is in vain!

K. Edw. The wren may strive against the lion's strength,
But all in vain: so vainly do I strive
To seek for mercy at a tyrant's hand.

[*They wash him with puddle-water, and shave off his beard.*

Immortal powers! that knows the painful cares
That wait upon my poor distressèd soul,
Oh, level all your looks upon these daring men,
That wrong their liege and sovereign, England's king!
O Gaveston, 'tis for thee that I am wronged,
For me, both thou and both the Spensers died!
And for your sakes a thousand wrongs I'll take.
The Spensers' ghosts, wherever they remain,
Wish well to mine; then tush, for them I'll die.

Mat. 'Twixt theirs and yours shall be no enmity.
Come, come away; now put the torches out,
We'll enter in by darkness to Killingworth.

Enter KENT

Gur. How now, who comes there?

Mat. Guard the king sure: it is the Earl of Kent.

K. Edw. O gentle brother, help to rescue me!

Digitized by Google

Mat. Keep them asunder; thrust in the king.
Kent. Soldiers, let me but talk to him one word.
Gur. Lay hands upon the earl for his assault.
Kent. Lay down your weapons, traitors! yield the king!
Mat. Edmund, yield thou thyself, or thou shalt die.
Kent. Base villains, wherefore do you gripe me thus?
Gur. Bind him and so convey him to the court.
Kent. Where is the court but here? here is the king;
And I will visit him; why stay you me?
Mat. The court is where Lord Mortimer remains;
Thither shall your honour go; and so farewell.
[*Exeunt* MATREVIS *and* GURNEY, *with* KING EDWARD.
Kent. Oh, miserable is that commonweal,
Where lords keep courts, and kings are locked in prison!
Sol. Wherefore stay we? on, sirs, to the court!
Kent. Ay, lead me whither you will, even to my death,
Seeing that my brother cannot be released. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV[n]

Enter Young MORTIMER

Y. Mor. The king must die, or Mortimer goes down;
The commons now begin to pity him:
Yet he that is the cause of Edward's death,
Is sure to pay for it when his son's of age;
And therefore will I do it cunningly.
This letter,[n] written by a friend of ours,
Contains his death, yet bids them save his life. [*Reads.*
"*Edwardum occidere nolite timere, bonum est.*
Fear not to kill the king, 'tis good he die."
But read it thus, and that's another sense:
"*Edwardum occidere nolite, timere bonum est.*
Kill not the king, 'tis good to fear the worst."

Digitized by Google

Unpointed as it is, thus shall it go,
That, being dead,[n] if it chance to be found,
Matrevis and the rest may bear the blame,
And we be quit that caused it to be done.
Within this room is locked the messenger
That shall convey it, and perform the rest:
And by a secret token that he bears,
Shall he be murdered when the deed is done. —
Lightborn, come forth!

Enter LIGHTBORN

Art thou so resolute as thou wast?

Light. What else, my lord? and far more resolute.

Y. Mor. And hast thou cast how to accomplish it?

Light. Ay, ay, and none shall know which way he died.

Y. Mor. But at his looks, Lightborn, thou wilt relent.

Light. Relent! ha, ha! I use much to relent.

Y. Mor. Well, do it bravely, and be secret.

Light. You shall not need to give instructions;
'Tis not the first time I have killed a man.
I learned in Naples how to poison flowers;[n]
To strangle with a lawn thrust down the throat;[n]
To pierce the windpipe with a needle's point;
Or whilst one is asleep, to take a quill
And blow a little powder in his ears:
Or open his mouth and pour quicksilver down.
And yet I have a braver way than these.

Y. Mor. What's that?

Light. Nay, you shall pardon me; none shall know my tricks.

Y. Mor. I care not how it is, so it be not spied.
Deliver this to Gurney and Matrevis. [*Gives letter.*
At every ten mile end thou hast a horse.
Take this [*Gives money*]: away! and never see me more.

Light. No!

Digitized by Google

Y. Mor. No; unless thou bring me news of Edward's death.

Light. That will I quickly do. Farewell, my lord.

[*Exit.*

Y. Mor. The prince I rule, the queen do I command,
And with a lowly congé to the ground,
The proudest lords salute me as I pass;
I seal, I cancel, I do what I will.
Feared am I more than loved — let me be feared,
And when I frown, make all the court look pale.
I view the prince with Aristarchus' eyes,
Whose looks were as a breeching to a boy.
They thrust upon me the protectorship,
And sue to me for that that I desire.
While at the council-table, grave enough,
And not unlike a bashful puritan,
First I complain of imbecility,
Saying it is *onus quam gravissimum;*
Till being interrupted by my friends,
Suscepi that *provinciam*[n] as they term it;
And to conclude, I am Protector now.
Now is all sure: the queen and Mortimer
Shall rule the realm, the king; and none rules us.
Mine enemies will I plague, my friends advance;
And what I list command who dare control?
Major sum quam cui possit fortuna nocere.[n]
And that this be the coronation day,
It pleaseth me, and Isabel the queen. [*Trumpets within.*
The trumpets sound, I must go take my place.

Enter KING EDWARD THE THIRD, QUEEN ISABELLA, *the* ARCHBISHOP *of* CANTERBURY, Champion *and* Nobles.[n]

A. of Cant. Long live King Edward, by the grace of God,
King of England and Lord of Ireland!

Digitized by Google

Cham. If any Christian, Heathen, Turk, or Jew,
Dare but affirm that Edward's not true king,
And will avouch his saying with the sword,
I am the champion that will combat him.

Y. Mor. None comes, sound trumpets.

[*Trumpets sound.*

K. Edw. Third. Champion, here's to thee.

[*Gives a purse.*

Q. Isab. Lord Mortimer, now take him to your charge.

Enter Soldiers, *with* KENT *prisoner*

Y. Mor. What traitor have we there with blades and bills?

Sol. Edmund, the Earl of Kent.

K. Edw. Third. What hath he done?

Sol. 'A would have taken the king away perforce,
As we were bringing him to Killingworth.

Y. Mor. Did you attempt his rescue, Edmund? speak.

Kent. Mortimer, I did; he is our king,
And thou compell'st this prince to wear the crown.

Y. Mor. Strike off his head! He shall have martial law.

Kent. Strike off my head! base traitor, I defy thee!

K. Edw. Third. My lord, he is my uncle, and shall live.

Y. Mor. My lord, he is your enemy, and shall die.

Kent. Stay, villains!

K. Edw. Third. Sweet mother, if I cannot pardon him,
Entreat my Lord Protector for his life.

Q. Isab. Son, be content; I dare not speak a word.

K. Edw. Third. Nor I, and yet methinks I should command;
But, seeing I cannot, I'll entreat for him —
My lord, if you will let my uncle live,
I will requite it when I come to age.

Digitized by Google

Y. Mor. 'Tis for your highness' good, and for the realm's. —
How often shall I bid you bear him hence?
Kent. Art thou king? must I die at thy command?
Y. Mor. At our command. — Once more away with him.
Kent. Let me but stay and speak; I will not go.
Either my brother or his son is king,
And none of both them thirst for Edmund's blood:
And therefore, soldiers, whither will you hale me?
[Soldiers *hale* KENT *away, to be beheaded.*
K. Edw. Third. What safety may I look for at his hands,
If that my uncle shall be murdered thus?
Q. Isab. Fear not, sweet boy, I'll guard thee from thy foes;
Had Edmund lived, he would have sought thy death.
Come, son, we'll ride a-hunting in the park.
K. Edw. Third. And shall my uncle Edmund ride with us?
Q. Isab. He is a traitor; think not on him; come.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE V[a]

Enter MATREVIS *and* GURNEY

Mat. Gurney, I wonder the king dies not,
Being in a vault up to the knees in water,
To which the channels of the castle run,
From whence a damp continually ariseth,
That were enough to poison any man,
Much more a king brought up so tenderly.
Gur. And so do I, Matrevis: yesternight
I opened but the door to throw him meat,
And I was almost stifled with the savour.
Mat. He hath a body able to endure

Digitized by Google

More than we can inflict: and therefore now
Let us assail his mind another while.

Gur. Send for him out thence, and I will anger him.

Mat. But stay, who's this?

Enter LIGHTBORN

Light. My Lord Protector greets you. [*Gives letter.*

Gur. What's here? I know not how to construe it.

Mat. Gurney, it was left unpointed for the nonce;
"*Edwardum occidere nolite timere,*"
That's his meaning.

Light. Know ye this token? I must have the king. [*Gives token.*

Mat. Ay, stay awhile, thou shalt have answer straight.
This villain's sent to make away the king. [*Aside.*

Gur. I thought as much. [*Aside.*

Mat. And when the murder's done,
See how he must be handled for his labour.
Pereat iste! Let him have the king. [*Aside.*
What else? Here is the key, this is the lock,[n]
Do as you are commanded by my lord.

Light. I know what I must do. Get you away.
Yet be not far off, I shall need your help;
See that in the next room I have a fire,
And get me a spit, and let it be red-hot.

Mat. Very well.

Gur. Need you anything besides?

Light. What else? A table and a feather-bed.

Gur. That's all?

Light. Ay, ay; so, when I call you, bring it in.

Mat. Fear not thou that.

Gur. Here's a light, to go into the dungeon.
[*Gives a light, and then exit with* MATREVIS.[n]

Light. So, now

Digitized by Google

Must I about this gear; ne'er was there any
So finely handled as this king shall be.
Foh, here's a place indeed, with all my heart!
K. Edw. Who's there? what light is that? wherefore com'st thou?
Light. To comfort you, and bring you joyful news.
K. Edw. Small comfort finds poor Edward in thy looks.
Villain, I know thou com'st to murder me.
Light. To murder you, my most gracious lord!
Far is it from my heart to do you harm.
The queen sent me to see how you were used,
For she relents at this your misery:
And what eyes can refrain from shedding tears,
To see a king in this most piteous state?
K. Edw. Weep'st thou already? list awhile to me.
And then thy heart, were it as Gurney's is,
Or as Matrevis', hewn from the Caucasus,
Yet will it melt, ere I have done my tale.
This dungeon where they keep me is the sink
Wherein the filth of all the castle falls.
Light. O villains!
K. Edw. And there in mire and puddle have I stood
This ten days' space; and, lest that I should sleep,
One plays continually upon a drum.
They give me bread and water, being a king;
So that, for want of sleep and sustenance,
My mind's distempered, and my body's numbed,
And whether I have limbs or no I know not.
Oh, would my blood dropped out from every vein,
As doth this water from my tattered robes.
Tell Isabel, the queen, I looked not thus,
When for her sake I ran at tilt in France,
And there unhorsed the Duke of Cleremont.
Light. Oh, speak no more, my lord! this breaks my heart.
Lie on this bed,[n] and rest yourself awhile.

Digitized by Google

K. Edw. These looks of thine can harbour nought but death:
I see my tragedy written in thy brows.
Yet stay; awhile forbear thy bloody hand,
And let me see the stroke before it comes,
That even then when I shall lose my life,
My mind may be more steadfast on my God.
Light. What means your highness to mistrust me thus?
K. Edw. What mean'st thou to dissemble with me thus?
Light. These hands were never stained with innocent blood,
Nor shall they now be tainted with a king's.
K. Edw. Forgive my thought for having such a thought.
One jewel have I left; receive thou this. [*Giving jewel.*
Still fear I, and I know not what's the cause,
But every joint shakes as I give it thee.
Oh, if thou harbourest murder in thy heart,
Let this gift change thy mind, and save thy soul!
Know that I am a king: Oh, at that name
I feel a hell of grief! where is my crown?
Gone, gone! and do I still remain alive?
Light. You're overwatched, my lord; lie down and rest.
K. Edw. But that grief keeps me waking, I should sleep;
For not these ten days have these eyelids closed.
Now as I speak they fall, and yet with fear
Open again. Oh, wherefore sitt'st thou here?
Light. If you mistrust me, I'll begone, my lord.
K. Edw. No, no, for if thou mean'st to murder me,
Thou wilt return again, and therefore stay. [*Sleeps.*
Light. He sleeps.
K. Edw. [*waking*]. Oh, let me not die yet! Oh, stay a while!
Light. How now, my lord?

Digitized by Google

K. Edw. Something still buzzeth in mine ears,
And tells me if I sleep I never wake;
This fear is that which makes me tremble thus.
And therefore tell me, wherefore art thou come?
Light. To rid thee of thy life. — Matrevis, come!

Enter MATREVIS *and* GURNEY

K. Edw. I am too weak and feeble to resist —
Assist me, sweet God, and receive my soul!
Light. Run for the table.
K. Edw. Oh, spare me, or dispatch me in a trice. 116
[MATREVIS *brings in a table.*
Light. So, lay the table down, and stamp on it,
But not too hard, lest that you bruise his body.
[KING EDWARD *is murdered.*
Mat. I fear me that this cry will raise the town,
And therefore, let us take horse and away.
Light. Tell me, sirs, was it not bravely done?
Gur. Excellent well: take this for thy reward.
[GURNEY *stabs* LIGHTBORN, *who dies*
Come, let us cast the body in the moat,
And bear the king's to Mortimer our lord:
Away! [*Exeunt with the bodies.*

SCENE VI[a]

Enter Young MORTIMER *and* MATREVIS

Y. Mor. Is't done, Matrevis, and the murderer dead?
Mat. Ay, my good lord; I would it were undone!
Y. Mor. Matrevis, if thou now growest penitent
I'll be thy ghostly father; therefore choose,
Whether thou wilt be secret in this,
Or else die by the hand of Mortimer.
Mat. Gurney, my lord, is fled, and will, I fear,
Betray us both, therefore let me fly.

Digitized by Google

Y. Mor. Fly to the savages!
Mat. I humbly thank your honour. [*Exit.*
Y. Mor. As for myself, I stand as Jove's huge tree,
And others are but shrubs compared to me.
All tremble at my name, and I fear none;
Let's see who dare impeach me for his death!

Enter QUEEN ISABELLA

Q. Isab. Ah, Mortimer, the king my son hath news
His father's dead, and we have murdered him!
Y. Mor. What if he have? the king is yet a child.
Q. Isab. Ay, but he tears his hair, and wrings his hands,
And vows to be revenged upon us both.
Into the council-chamber he is gone,
To crave the aid and succour of his peers.
Ay me! see where he comes, and they with him;
Now, Mortimer, begins our tragedy.

Enter KING EDWARD THE THIRD, Lords, *and* Attendants

1*st Lord.* Fear not, my lord, know that you are a king.
K. Edw. Third. Villain! —
Y. Mor. Ho, now, my lord!
K. Edw. Third. Think not that I am frighted with thy words!
My father's murdered through thy treachery;
And thou shalt die, and on his mournful hearse
Thy hateful and accursèd head shall lie.
To witness to the world, that by thy means
His kingly body was too soon interred.
Q. Isab. Weep not, sweet son!
K. Edw. Third. Forbid me not to weep; he was my father;
And, had you loved him half so well as I,

Digitized by Google

You could not bear his death thus patiently.
But you, I fear, conspired with Mortimer.
1st Lord. Why speak you not unto my lord the king?
Y. Mor. Because I think it scorn to be accused.
Who is the man dares say I murdered him?
K. Edw. Third. Traitor! in me my loving father speaks,
And plainly saith, 'twas thou that murder'dst him.
Y. Mor. But has your grace no other proof than this?
K. Edw. Third. Yes, if this be the hand of Mortimer.
[*Showing letter.*
Y. Mor. False Gurney hath betrayed me and himself.
[*Aside.*
Q. Isab. I feared as much; murder cannot be hid.
[*Aside.*
Y. Mor. It is my hand; what gather you by this?
K. Edw. Third. That thither thou didst send a murderer.
Y. Mor. What murderer? Bring forth the man I sent.
K. Edw. Third. Ah, Mortimer, thou knowest that he is slain;
And so shalt thou be too. — Why stays he here?
Bring him unto a hurdle, drag him forth;
Hang him, I say, and set his quarters up;
But bring his head back presently to me.
Q. Isab. For my sake, sweet son, pity Mortimer.
Y. Mor. Madam, entreat not, I will rather die,
Than sue for life unto a paltry boy.
K. Edw. Third. Hence with the traitor! with the murderer!
Y. Mor. Base Fortune, now I see, that in thy wheel
There is a point, to which when men aspire,
They tumble headlong down: that point I touched,
And, seeing there was no place to mount up higher,
Why should I grieve at my declining fall? —
Farewell, fair queen; weep not for Mortimer,

Digitized by Google

That scorns the world, and, as a traveller,
Goes to discover countries yet unknown.

K. Edw. Third. What! suffer you the traitor to delay?

[Young MORTIMER *is taken away by* 1st Lord *and* Attendants.

Q. Isab. As thou receivedest thy life from me,
Spill not the blood of gentle Mortimer!

K. Edw. Third. This argues that you spilt my father's blood,
Else would you not entreat for Mortimer.

Q. Isab. I spill his blood? no.

K. Edw. Third. Ay, madam, you; for so the rumour runs.

Q. Isab. That rumour is untrue; for loving thee,
Is this report raised on poor Isabel.

K. Edw. Third. I do not think her so unnatural.

2nd Lord. My lord, I fear me it will prove too true.

K. Edw. Third. Mother, you are suspected for his death,
And therefore we commit you to the Tower
Till farther trial may be made thereof;
If you be guilty, though I be your son,
Think not to find me slack or pitiful.

Q. Isab. Nay, to my death, for too long have I lived,
Whenas my son thinks to abridge my days.

K. Edw. Third. Away with her, her words enforce these tears,
And I shall pity her if she speak again.

Q. Isab. Shall I not mourn for my belovèd lord,
And with the rest accompany him to his grave?

2nd Lord. Thus, madam, 'tis the king's will you shall hence.

Q. Isab. He hath forgotten me; stay, I am his mother.

2nd Lord. That boots not; therefore, gentle madam, go.

Q. Isab. Then come, sweet death, and rid me of this grief. [*Exit.*

Digitized by Google

Re-enter 1st Lord, *with the head of* Young MORTIMER

1st Lord. My lord, here is the head of Mortimer.
K. Edw. Third. Go fetch my father's hearse, where it shall lie;
And bring my funeral robes. [*Exeunt* Attendants.
Accursèd head,
Could I have ruled thee then, as I do now,
Thou had'st not hatched this monstrous treachery! —
Here comes the hearse; help me to mourn, my lords.

Re-enter Attendants *with the hearse and funeral robes*

Sweet father, here unto thy murdered ghost
I offer up this wicked traitor's head;
And let these tears, distilling from mine eyes,
Be witness of my grief and innocency. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

THE text followed, in the main, is that of Bullen. The spelling and punctuation have been modernized, and a few slight changes have been made in the subdivision of scenes. Editorial interpolations in the way of readings have in all cases been enclosed in double brackets: [ ]. Marlowe's own stage directions are indicated by single brackets.

Digitized by Google

NOTES

Figures in black type refer to pages; those in light face to lines.

TAMBURLAINE THE GREAT

PART THE FIRST

Tamburlaine was probably written and first acted in 1587. It was first published in 1590, in which year there were two editions. The play was received with great favour, as is attested by at least four subsequent editions in rapid succession. Marlowe probably got his material for the play chiefly from Thomas Fortescue's English translation (*Foreste*, 1571) of Pedro Mexia's life of Timur,[1] published at Seville in 1543. Perondinus's *Vita Magni Tamerlanis* (Florence, 1551) doubtless gave him suggestions when describing Tamburlaine's person. He may have derived hints from Herodotus, Euripides, and Xenophon for his description of Persian effeminacy.

29 : 1–2. From jigging veins . . . pay. These words may be regarded as the death-knell of rhyme and clownish conceits. See Introduction, pp. 4–5.

36 : 170. And Jove may. And may Jove. Marlowe endows his Persian characters with a knowledge of Greek mythology.

43 : 205. As far . . . wings. Cf. Ovid (*Trist.*, III, x, line 45): "Et quamvis Boreas jactatis insonet alis."

44 : 243. Whose statues . . . Scythia. Cf. Ovid (*Ex Ponto*, III, ii, lines 95–96):

> "Manis amor juvenum, quamvis abiere tot anni,
> In Scythia magnum nunc quoque nomen habet."

45 : 11. Pitch. A projecting point of some part of the body, as the shoulder. Here it means height in general. The word also meant the height to which a falcon rises before swooping down on its prey.

[1] Tamburlaine means Timur the lame.

Digitized by Google

51 : 9. **Clouts . . . pin.** Terms of archery. The pin passed through the centre of the clout, or white mark, fastening it to the butt or target.

63 : 57. **the young Arabian.** Alcidamas, to whom Zenocrate had been betrothed.

79 : 96. **Plato's wondrous year.** A cycle of about 26,000 years, the period of time required for the equinoxes to complete their revolution. See Plato's *Timæus*.

84 : 81. **Pen.** This refers to his sword.

89 : 5. **sent ye . . . flags.** The sense of *sent out* seems to be understood with the *when* clause, "Have sent ye out, when first my milk-white flags were sent out (appeared)."

91: 95. **conceit of foil.** Expectation of defeat.

92 : 115–127. **Save . . . nobility.** Mr. Edward T. McLaughlin paraphrases this long sentence as follows: "I, Tamburlaine, the inflexible conqueror, am allowing myself to be tempted by Zenocrate to conclude terms with her father. Such a hesitation would be unworthy, were it not in tribute to beauty, which touches every high-minded hero, and also were not the enticement resisted, as I will resist it, and thus prove myself more resolute than Jove himself."

93 : 138. **As if . . . us.** As if we must lose our lives.

96 : 256. **Make ready my coach.** Cf. Ophelia's speech, "Come, my coach," etc. (*Hamlet*, IV, v).

PART THE SECOND

106. Soria. Syria, according to Cunningham and Bullen. Dyce, however, thinks it may refer to Tyre, which, since the rise of the Arabic power in the East, had been known as Sor.

108 : 28. **Giants as big.** On the contrary, the inhabitants are almost dwarfs. Cf. *Doctor Faustus*, Scene i, 124. — 37. **The Terrene . . . falls.** A mistake of Marlowe's, whose ideas of geography seem vague. The Danube, of course, does not fall into the Mediterranean, but into the Black Sea.

115 : 31. **Their legs . . . air.** Both Bullen and Cunningham omitted this line.

120 : 208. **And . . . Europe.** The bracketed words were inserted by Cunningham to complete the line.

127 : 40. **And if.** If; *and* and the shortened form *an* are frequently so used in our old literature.

Digitized by Google

129 : 87–88. **Helen (... Tenedos).** Cf. *Doctor Faustus*, xiii, 91–92:

"Was this the face that launched a thousand ships
And burnt the topless towers of Ilium?"

138 : 1. **northward.** Cunningham suggests this ought to be *southward*, since Balsera itself was pretty far south.

146 : 101. **for running away again.** In order to prevent you running away again. — 134. **Good . . . take it.** "Here Almeda must be supposed to look tremblingly at Tamburlaine." (Cunningham.)

147 : 137–138. **king . . . arms.** An allusion to granting heraldic coat-of-arms, played upon by Tamburlaine.

152 : 32. **foil.** Defilement, dishonour.

153 : 56. **for being seen.** In order not to be seen.

154 : 114. **about the females' miss.** Because the females are missing.

157 : 78. **She anoints her throat.** Mr. J. P. Collier shows that this incident is borrowed from *Orlando Furioso*, Book xxix.

158 : 1. **Holla . . . Asia.** This line was parodied in derision by many writers. See Pistol's parody, for example, in *2 Henry IV*, II, iv, lines 177 ff.

159 : 48–49. **hedges . . . colts.** *Hedges* apparently refers to teeth, and *kicking colts* to tongues, as is shown three lines below.

161 : 119. **Like . . . high.** Compare Spenser's *Faërie Queene* (1590), I, vii, stanza 32 for this and the five succeeding lines. The variations are so slight that Bullen is led to suggest that Marlowe must have seen the passage in MS.

165. spare. To spare. This refers to the kings out of harness.

176 : 136. **quickly sail to India.** These lines have been considered by some commentators as an anticipation of the present Suez Canal. It is, however, a matter of historical record that the Egyptians under Sesostris (reigned 1394–1328 B.C.) commenced a canal for the purpose of uniting the Red Sea at Arsinoe (Suez) with the easternmost branch of the Nile. This was completed by Ptolemy Philadelphus II about 277 B.C. Marlowe's lines, however, were probably inspired by the project of Venice to pierce the Isthmus of Suez, after her commercial supremacy had suffered so severely from Vasco da Gama's discovery of the sea-route to India by way of the Cape of Good Hope.

178 : 199. **And . . . sovereignty.** And plead in vain how unpleasing is sovereignty when it is bought with the price of the death of such a father.

Digitized by Google

THE TRAGICAL HISTORY OF DOCTOR FAUSTUS

The earliest extant edition of *Doctor Faustus* is that of 1604; the second edition (1609) agrees almost exactly with the first; a third edition, published in 1616, differs materially from the earlier quartos, containing many new scenes and many alterations. The present text follows that of the edition of 1604, with a few emendations adopted in the texts of Dyce and Bullen.

Marlowe founded his tragedy on a famous German work, " The History of Dr. Johann Faust, the widely-noised conjuror and master of the Black Art," which was first printed in Frankfort-on-the-Main in 1587. The earliest known English translation bears the date of 1592 and was entitled *The History of the damnable Life and deserved Death of Dr. John Faustus.* See Introduction, pp. 12–13.

182. The Pope. In the quartos of 1604 and 1609 the Pope is not mentioned by name, but in the scene inserted in the third edition of 1616 he is addressed by Bruno as " Pope Adrian." This " Saxon Bruno " was introduced as a rival who had been overcome by Pope Adrian. There is nothing, however, to identify either as historical characters and no foundation in fact, whether as referring to the pontificate of Adrian VI (1522–1523) or any other. — **Emperor of Germany.** Charles V, emperor from 1519 to 1556. — **The Seven Deadly Sins.** Pride, covetousness, lust, anger, gluttony, envy, and sloth. In Scene vi, *anger* is called wrath; and *lust*, lechery.

183 : 2. mate. Confound, defeat. Marlowe is wrong; the Carthaginians under Hannibal were victorious at the Battle of Lake Trasimenus. — 4. **In courts of kings.** *Nor* is understood before these words. — 7–8. **perform The form.** Show forth the outline. — 9. **appeal our plaud.** Appeal for our applause.

184. Dyce suggests that the Chorus, before going out, drew a curtain, and disclosed Faustus sitting in his study. — 27. **Justinian.** Under his reign (527–565) the civil jurisprudence was digested in the *Code*, the *Pandects*, and the *Institutes*.

185 : 45. Che sera sera. For *che sarà sarà*, the modern form of an old Italian proverb. The correct modern rendering of it would be, according to Professor Ward, *What shall be, will be* (That which is fixed by fate to happen will happen); or, *What*

Digitized by Google

shall be, shall be (That which is fixed by fate to happen will inevitably happen). The use of *shall* and *will* in Elizabethan times was not at all settled. — 63. **German Valdes and Cornelius.** Cornelius is the famous Cornelius Agrippa. Valdes is not known. In Scene ii it is said that "they two are infamous throughout the world." It has been suggested that Valdes refers to Paracelsus.

186 : 71. **that.** The magical book. — 74. **Jove.** Here used as *God*. — 88. **the public schools.** The university class rooms at Wittenberg. Marlowe probably had Oxford in mind. The term is still in use at the English universities. — 91. **the Prince of Parma.** Alexander Farnese, Prince (from 1586, Duke) of Parma. — 94. **the fiery keel . . . bridge.** A reference to the "demon fire-ship" with which the Dutch, besieged in Antwerp (1584–1585), effected a breach in the bridge built by the Duke of Parma across the Scheldt.

187 : 101–102. **but . . . object.** Perhaps no more than: that will receive no objection. The words are probably corrupt. — 114. **sweet Museus.** Cf. Virgil's *Æneid*, VI, 667. — 116. **shadows.** The shadows raised by Agrippa the magician. — 124. **Lapland giants.** Laplanders are, on the contrary, small. Cf. *Tamburlaine*, Part the Second, I, Scene i, line 28.

189. The scene is before Faustus's house, as Wagner presently speaks of his master being within, at dinner. — 25. **the place of execution.** Faustus's dining-room, where execution is done upon meat and drink.

190. The scene is a grove. See the conversation of Faustus and Valdes near the end of Scene i.

194. The scene, Dyce suggests, is probably a street. — 16. **Qui mihi discipulus.** The first words of W. Lily's "Ad discipulos carmen de moribus."

195 : 54. **round slop.** *Slop* is used in early English in the sense of an over-garment. *Round slop* were loose breeches or large trunk-hose, and the word has the same general meaning among seamen to-day.

197 : 42. **Solamen . . . doloris.** The origin of this proverb is unknown, though its purport may originally have come from Seneca. The idea has often been expressed. Cf. Chaucer (*Troilus and Criseyde*, i. 708) and Milton (*Paradise Regained*, i. 398).

201 : 163. **thunder and lightning.** "*Thunder* should be pronounced as a monosyllable, and *lightning* as a trisyllable (*light-ening*)." (A. W. Ward.)

Digitized by Google

202 : 172. **characters and planets.** Probably a hendiadys for *characters of planets.* — 180. **I warrant thee.** I warrant thee that the book contains what I say. — The scene is a room in Faustus's house. Following Wagner, Bullen, and Ward, a new scene has been begun here, though no interruption in the dialogue is shown in the quartos of 1604 and 1609. In the quarto of 1616 Scene v ends with the first two lines, as here arranged, of Scene vi. Then a new scene begins with the lines of the Chorus given here at the end of Scene vi.

203 : 21–23. **swords . . . dispatch myself.** "These imaginary temptations to suicide are merely the delusions (cf. Macbeth's dagger) of Faustus's own self-tortured mind, which are to be distinguished from his temptation to suicide by Mephistophiles, xiii, 52." (A. W. Ward.) — 28. **he . . . Thebes.** Amphion, who moved rocks by the sound of his lyre. Cf. Tennyson's poem, *Amphion.* — 37. **centric earth.** In the Ptolemaic or pre-Copernican system of astronomy the earth is regarded as the *centre* of the heavenly system. Hence, the term *centric.* — 46. **situ et tempore.** Both as to the direction of, and time occupied by, their revolutions.

204 : 79. **Remember this.** Mephistophiles refers to his own previous speech.

205 : 116. **Ovid's flea.** This refers to the lascivious *Carmen de Pulice,* which was formerly believed to be by Ovid. Bernhardy describes it as " a production of the later Middle Ages."

208 : 11. **to this day.** To-day. — The scene is the Pope's privy chamber. — 13. **Maro's.** Virgil's (Publius Virgilius Maro). In the Middle Ages Virgil was reputed as a magician, and so Faustus would naturally take special interest in him. One of his magical exploits was the cutting through of a mile of stone in one night. — 17. **a sumptuous temple.** St. Mark's at Venice.

209 : 40. **double cannons.** This may mean simply large cannon or cannon with double bores. — 43. **Africa.** Perhaps the writer of the *History of the Damnable Life of Faustus* (from which the passage is taken) had in mind the obelisk brought to Rome from Thebes in Egypt in A.D. 353, by the Emperor Constantius.

212. The scene is an inn yard.

213. As Dyce points out, a scene is evidently wanting between the *Exeunt* at the end of Scene viii and the *Enter* of Robin and Ralph. — 3. **a simple purchase.** A clear gain or acquisition. — 7. **Drawer.** The louts obviously mistake. The vintner was the keeper of a public house who sold the wine; the drawer, his servant

Digitized by Google

who drew it for guests. — 12. **etc.** The actor was left at liberty to furnish his own abuse.

214 : 18. **a matter of truth.** A charge affecting their credit for truth. — 19. **t'one.** The one; compare the use of *tother* for *the other*.

215. Before this scene, another (in which figure Martino, Frederick, and Benvolio, gentlemen of the Imperial Court) is added in the quarto of 1616. The present scene is an apartment in the Emperor's palace. Much of the text of this scene is closely borrowed from the prose *History*.

216 : 44. **so far forth.** To such an extent.

218. The scene, as Faustus presently indicates, is first a "fair and pleasant green." It then changes to a room in Faustus's house at Wittenberg, where Faustus falls asleep in his chair.

219 : 25. **at any hand.** In any case; in any way. — 30. **am I made man.** Am I a made man. — 32. **the quality . . . hey-ding-ding.** Dr. Furnivall points out that the reference is to the refrain of *Old Simon the King* (See Percy's Folio, *Loose and Humorous Songs*). — 40. **Thy fatal time.** The time allotted to thee by fate. — 46. **Doctor Lopus.** Dr. Roderigo Lopez, physician to Queen Elizabeth. As Marlowe died before Lopez came into notoriety, it is hardly possible to credit Marlowe himself with this allusion.

220 : 57. **the dearest horse.** That is, he shall have to pay most dearly for it.

221. The scene is laid at the court of the Duke of Vanholt (Anhalt). Before this scene in the quarto of 1616 is inserted another, in which the Horse-courser tells the story of the jest Faustus played upon him.

222. This scene is inside Faustus's house.

224 : 52. **to do thee right.** To pay thee thy due. — 52. **Mephistophiles . . . dagger.** Cf. Faustus's imaginary temptations to suicide, Scene vi, 23.

225 : 75. **Faustus . . . blood.** This stage direction is by Dyce.

226 : 108–109. **the monarch . . . arms.** Marlowe's mythology seems to be in error here. But Van der Velde thinks that "the monarch of the sky" means the sky itself, which is mirrored in the spring Arethusa, and thus lends it an azure hue. Moreover, Arethusa was a general name given by the Greeks to springs. — 114. **sift.** Cf. *St. Luke* xxii. 31, "Satan hath desired to have you, that he may sift you as wheat." — 115. **furnace.** An allusion to the furnace from which Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego were

Digitized by Google

delivered (*Daniel* iii.). — This scene, laid in a room in Faustus's house, has been described by Mr. Fleay as the only dramatic death-bed scene that can be compared in horror to *2 Henry VI*, III, iii.

228 : 74. **O lente . . . equi!** "By an exquisite touch of nature — the brain involuntarily summoning words employed for other purposes in happier hours — Faust cries aloud the line which Ovid whispered in Corinna's arms." (J. A. Symonds.) Cf. Ovid, *Amores*, i. 13, 40.

229 : 84–85. **Mountain . . . God.** Cf. *Hosea* x. 8, and *Revelation* vi. 16. — 106. **Pythagoras' metempsychosis.** To Pythagoras, a Greek philosopher of Samos, is ascribed the doctrine of the transmigration of souls, which was first held by the ancient Egyptians.

230. Before the entrance of the Chorus, there is in the quarto of 1616 a short scene between the Scholars, when they find the mangled limbs of Faustus. — 6. **Only to wonder at.** To content themselves with wondering at; not to essay. — 9. **Terminat . . . opus.** "The source of this line, which has an Ovidian sound, but does not occur in Ovid, remains undiscovered." (A. W. Ward.)

THE JEW OF MALTA

An incidental reference to the death of the Duke of Guise (see Prologue, line 3 and note) proves that *The Jew of Malta* was written after 1588; probably before 1592. There is no earlier edition of the play than the quarto of 1633. It was frequently acted, under Henslowe's management, between 1591–1592 and 1596. As in *Tamburlaine*, Marlowe sought his plot in oriental history, although no direct source is known. He embodied hearsay versions of the siege of Malta by the Turks under Selim, son of the Sultan Solyman, in 1565, and of another attack on the island by the Spaniards. The indebtedness of Shakespeare's *Merchant of Venice* to *The Jew of Malta* is too well known to require comment.

233 : 1. **Machiavel.** Niccolo Machiavelli (1469–1527), the celebrated Florentine statesman and political writer. He was frequently introduced on the Elizabethan stage as the personification of all that was false and perfidious in state policy. — 3. **the Guise.** The Duke of Guise, who was responsible for the Massacre of St. Bartholomew in 1572, and was assassinated in 1588.

235 : 4. **Sabans.** The old editions have Samintes. But, as Bullen points out, there is no connection between them and "the men

Digitized by Google

of Uz." The Sabans were natives of Saba, Sabea, or Sheba, a kingdom in southern Arabia.

236 : 39. **halcyon's bill.** It was a common belief in folklore that the beak of a stuffed halcyon (kingfisher) suspended freely would take the direction of the wind.

239. The scene is here supposed to be shifted to a street or to the Exchange.

240 : 193. **Ego . . . proximus.** Misquoted from Terence's *Andria*, IV, i, 12, " Proximus sum egomet mihi."

241. The scene is in the senate- or council-house.

247 : 214. Dyce suggests that on the Jews' departure the scene is shifted to a street near Barabas's house.

250 : 293. **unseen hypocrisy.** Cunningham reads *unforeseen*, and explains the meaning to be, " A steady, consistent piece of acting is better than having to put on the hypocrite at a moment's warning." — 309. **waters.** Bullen suggests that this word should be *cloisters*.

252 : 352. **thus.** The old edition has a † inserted here, probably to represent the sign Barabas made with his hand to indicate the notch in the plank under which the treasure was concealed.

254. The scene is before Barabas's house, now turned into a nunnery.

255 : 25. **wealth.** Bullen suggests that this should be *youth*. But is not youth wealth? Certainly such a use is no more far-fetched than many other Elizabethan conceits. — 39. **Bueno . . . era.** This line in the early editions is scarcely intelligible Spanish. Marlowe probably had little real knowledge of that language. The reading given here is the result of the most plausible guesses of the commentators and may be translated " Good for all (people) my wealth was not."

256 : 63. **Hermoso . . . dineros.** The reading now generally followed, meaning " Beautiful is the pleasure of money."

257 : 32. **lately lost.** Rhodes was wrested from the Knights of St. John by Solyman II in 1522.

258. The scene is the market-place. — 24. **Heave . . . dog.** Cf. *Merchant of Venice*, I, iii, where Shylock says to Antonio, " Still have I borne it with a patient shrug."

263 : 175. **nose.** Barabas was represented on the stage with a large false nose, as was Shylock in all probability.

264. The scene shifts here to the outside (front) of Barabas's house.

Digitized by Google

267 : 303. **Jebusite.** The Jebusites were one of the seven Canaanitish nations which, according to the *Old Testament*, were doomed to destruction.

270. The scene is the outside of Bellamira's house; she makes her appearance on a balcony.

271. The scene is a street. — **above.** On the gallery at the back of the stage. — 10. **What sight.** What a sight. The article was often omitted. — 10. **Lodowick.** "Here, and elsewhere in the play, *Lodowick* should be written and pronounced as in Italian, *Lodovico*. The error is probably due to the copyist who first transcribed the play for the press." (Thayer.)

272. The scene is a room in Barabas's house. — 3. **held in hand.** "Kept in expectation, having their hopes flattered." (Dyce.)

275. The scene is still Barabas's house, but an interval of time has elapsed.

277 : 59. **he . . . spoon.** A very old proverb. Cf. Chaucer's *Squire's Tale*, lines 602–603.

278 : 93. **by the eye.** In abundance. — 101. **In few.** In short. — 102. **juice of hebon.** A deadly poison, variously identified as ebon (ebony), henbane, or the German *eibe*, yew. Cf. Shakespeare's *hebenon*, *Hamlet* I, v, 62.

279. The scene is the interior of the council-house.

280. The scene is the interior of the convent.

281 : 49. **crucified a child.** Crucifixion was a crime of which the Jews were frequently accused. It gave Christians a pretext for extortion, especially when a sovereign happened to need ready money.

282. The scene is a street in Malta.

285 : 114. **the Turk.** Ithamore.

286. The scene is a room in the house of Barabas.

287 : 26–27. **he stands . . . bacon.** It would appear from the following scene that the body was placed upright against the wall outside of the house. — The scene is outside Barabas's house.

288. The scene is a veranda of Bellamira's house.

290 : 44. **Turk of tenpence.** A contemptuous term, common at the time.

291 : 105. **by Dis above.** This blunder is intentionally made. — 106. **Shalt live . . . my love.** Cf. the beginning of Marlowe's well-known lyric, *The Passionate Shepherd to His Love*, "Come live with me, and be my love."

Digitized by Google

292 : 124. **ream.** A play upon *realm* and *kingdom;* realm often was written without the *l*, and was commonly pronounced *ream.* — 138. **division.** "Divisions for the voice are intended to be sung in one breath to one syllable. The performance of this style of music is called running a division." (Stainer and Barrett's *Dictionary of Musical Terms.*)

293. This scene is in the street. Dyce suggests that it is Barabas's house. But as Barabas presently asks Pilia-Borsa, "Pray, when, sir, shall I see you at my house?" he would appear to be wrong.

295. The scene is a veranda of Bellamira's house.

296 : 25. **Snickle hand too fast.** A corrupt passage. *Snickle* is a noose, here perhaps a verb. Cunningham proposes, "snickle hard and fast."

297 : 77. **elder.** "Judas is said to have hanged himself on an elder tree." (Ellis.)

299. The scene is inside the council-house.

301. The scene is outside the city wall, over which Barabas's body has been thrown, according to the governor's orders.

302. The scene is an open place in the city.

303. The scene here shifts to the governor's residence, inside the citadel.

306. The scene is outside the city walls.

308. The scene is a street in Malta. — The scene is a hall in the citadel, with a gallery at the end.

EDWARD THE SECOND

Edward II was entered in the Stationers' Registers on July 6, 1593, and first published in 1594. This edition was not known until a copy of it was discovered in 1876 in the library at Cassel. Other editions followed in 1598, 1612, and 1622. They are all practically the same and have but few corrupt passages. The play was probably written about 1590. Professor Ward and Dr. Wagner incline to the belief that Marlowe derived his history mainly from Robert Fabyan's *New Chronicles of England and France* (1516). He probably also used the narratives of Stow and Holinshed. Dramatizations of English history were well known long before Marlowe; but this was an early successful application of history to biographical tragedy and was not without its effect on Shakespeare.

Digitized by Google

315. The scene is a street in London. The play is not divided into acts and scenes in the original editions.

317 : 61. **boy.** At this time all women's parts were performed by boys. Actresses did not appear on the English stage until the Restoration. — 74. **Lancaster.** Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, was a bitter opponent of the King, an enemy to Gaveston, and the most powerful nobleman in the realm.

318 : 102. **Four earldoms.** Leicester and Derby had been bestowed upon his father, Edmund, Earl of Lancaster ; these had been inherited by Thomas, who added to them Lincoln and Salisbury through his marriage with Alice, daughter and heiress of Henry de Lacy. — 117. **Brother.** Kent was half-brother to King Edward II, his mother being Margaret of France, the second wife of Edward I.

319 : 127. **Wiltshire.** It is not known that either of the Mortimers had any special interest or influence in Wiltshire.

321. The scene is at Westminster.

323 : 47. **Unto the forest.** Dyce says these words "would imply that the scene was at Windsor," where there was a forest. This, however, does not seem necessary. The scene was more probably in London, as a little later the archbishop says, "I'll entreat you all to cross to Lambeth." The phrase *unto the forest* simply means *into the desert, away from the world.*

324. "This scene of five lines, both awkward and unnecessary, is an example of the play's occasionally clumsy construction." (E. T. McLaughlin.) — Scene iv is at the New Temple, London, as indicated in Scene ii.

325 : 30. **peasant . . . minion.** Piers Gaveston was the son of a Gascon knight and had been a playfellow and close companion of Edward from childhood.

331 : 223. **torpedo.** A kind of eel that stuns by giving a species of electric shock.

333 : 299. **brought . . . on his way.** Accompanied.

335 : 359–362. **Whose . . . Scots.** The historical character, the elder Mortimer, was not placed in command of a Scottish expedition, nor was England at that time engaged in any foreign war. "Regarding the First Act as a whole, we must credit Marlowe with a clear exposition of the central thought of the play, viz. Edward and his favourites *vs.* a strong combination of powerful nobles. Isabel and Kent, at present on the king's side, are set in motion toward a transfer of regard. . . . The construction of Scene iv is poor. Gaveston's exile is demanded, resisted, obtained; he leaves

Digitized by Google

England; Isabel entreats, and finally secures his recall; he is summoned; and, after a general pacification of kings and barons, a new resistance is threatened — all in the single scene." (E. T. McLaughlin.)

336 : 378. **cousin.** Here used for *niece.* She was Margaret de Clare, daughter of the elder Gilbert de Clare, Earl of Gloucester, and Johanna of Acre, daughter of King Edward I. She was married to Gaveston in 1307.

338. The scene, Dyce suggests, is in a hall in Gloucester house.

339 : 55. **to form a verb.** A slang phrase meaning *to put a thing neatly; to say the right thing.*

341 : 20. **Æque tandem.** Justly at length. The meaning is that Gaveston, the canker, will finally get justice, and be killed. — 28. **Undique mors est.** On all sides death.

345 : 143. **the broad seal.** "A brief, or letters patent, under the Great Seal, authorizing a person to collect alms for a particular purpose." (O. W. Tancock.)

346 : 168. **Valois.** This title is not accurately used as Isabella's three brothers (Louis X, Philip V, Charles IV) did not belong to the house of Valois. Her cousin (Philip IV of Valois) ascended the throne in 1328. — 185. **this jig.** This song is taken almost entirely from Fabyan's *Chronicle,* p. 420. It does not occur in Holinshed. — 192. **Wigmore shall fly.** Wigmore (Castle) shall be sold. This property of the Mortimer family was in Hereford, on the Welsh border.

348 : 254. **the only heir.** In reality her two sisters were also heiresses in equal right.

349. The scene is in the neighbourhood of Tynemouth Castle. — 5. **of policy.** In deceit, in craft. — 22–23. **that Dead Sea . . . Mortimer.** An erroneous explanation of the origin of the name. A famous ancestor of the Mortimer family had been a crusader and won renown by the shores of the Dead Sea (*Mortuum Mare*). This fact and the similarity of the Latin name to *de Mortuo mari,* the Latinized form of Mortemer, a town in Normandy, readily suggested such an origin. Cunningham says, "In all Latin deeds the Mortimers are called 'de mortuo mari.'"

350. The scene is inside Tynemouth Castle.

352. Scene: the open country.

353 : 15. **Greekish strumpet.** Helen of Troy. — 29. **That heading . . . other.** A soldier and nobleman would expect beheading, which was honourable; a felon would expect hanging.

Digitized by Google

355 : 82. "**had I wist.**" "An exclamation implying repentance of a rash deed." (Dyce.)

357. The scene is laid near Deddington or Warwick. — 5. **Centre . . . bliss.** "The meaning is: Must this day, which was to be, which seemed to be, the point on which all bliss centred, since on it I was to see the King, must this day be the end of my life? What a melancholy contrast! The very thought of the *bliss* bids him urge Pembroke's men to speed to the King." (O. W. Tancock.) Cf. IV, vi, 61–62.

358. The scene is near Boroughbridge, in Yorkshire. — 16. **magnanimity.** Cf. the classical use of this word, as in the *Æneid*, VI, 649, and III, 704. Here it means the courage of a man superior to all control. — 27. **steel it.** Try this matter with our swords; compare, *try our steel.*

359. the Elder Spenser. This scene represents the elder Spenser as a stranger, introduced to the King by his son, although actually he must have been well known to him, as he was one of the most influential of the barons.

360 : 66. **Sib.** According to Wagner, "An endearing abbreviation of Isabel." More probably an abbreviation of *gossip*.

362 : 145. **merely.** Of my pure love, and for no other reason.

365. The scene is laid in another part of the battle-field. — 10. **in regard of.** In care for; having regard to.

366 : 25. **Winchester.** The elder Spenser, who was Earl of Winchester. — 36–37. **can ragged stony walls . . . Heaven?** Cf. the lines of Lovelace:

> "Stone walls do not a prison make,
> Nor iron bars a cage."

367 : 56. **clap so close.** Strike so secretly.

368. The scene is in the neighbourhood of the Tower of London. — Scene ii is in Paris.

370 : 44. **not I.** "I will not advance my standard against the King my father." (O. W. Tancock.) — **I trow.** I assure you.

371 : 66. **to bid . . . a base.** To challenge to a race or encounter. The phrase probably refers to the old game of prisoner's base. — The scene is an apartment in the King's palace at Westminster. — 3. **uncontrolled.** The word refers to Edward, not to friends.

373. The scene is in the neighbourhood of Harwich.

374. The scene is in the neighbourhood of Bristol. — 6. **reinforce.** The word is here used in the sense of *encourage, hearten*, rather than in the modern sense of strength by reinforcements.

Digitized by Google

375 : 14. **of all unkind.** Most unnatural of all. — 26. **be not . . . suspect.** Be not found walking alone (lest thereby you fall a victim of foul play), because of suspicion against you. — 10–27. **This way he fled . . . thy walks.** This soliloquy is introduced for the purpose of informing the audience of the views and character of Kent.

376 : 60. **Catiline.** The allusion is merely general abuse.

377 : 79. **the prince.** The King. — 81. **Rice ap Howel.** Holinshed, p. 339, says, "Lord Henry, Earl of Leicester, and the Lord William de la Zouche and one Rice ap Howell that was lately delivered out of the Tower where he was prisoner" were sent by the Queen into Wales "to see if they might find means to apprehend the King by help of their acquaintance in those parts, all three of them having lands thereabouts." — The scene is in the abbey of Neath.

378 : 19. **Thou suck'dst . . . Aristotle.** Plato, and particularly Aristotle, were read in Latin translations at the Universities during the Middle Ages. Not many in England knew Greek at that time. — 26. **sit secure.** Be free from care. Cf. *Judges* xviii. 7. — 34. **sore.** A dissyllable.

379 : 50. **cannot.** Cannot do. The verb is here used absolutely. — 53–54. **Quem . . . jacentem.** Seneca, *Thyestes*, 613. — 61–62. **O day the last . . . misfortune.** Cf. note on III, i, 5.

382. The scene is an apartment in Kenilworth Castle.

383 : 45. **Tisiphon.** Cf. Virgil, *Æneid*, VI, 571:

> "Tisiphone . . . torvosque sinistra
> Intentans angues."

384 : 84. **Trussel.** Sir William Trussel was proctor for the parliament which met at Westminster on January 7, 1327. A few days later he renounced homage and fealty to the King, who had already given his consent to the election of his son and who was then in confinement at Kenilworth.

385 : 115. **protect.** Be Protector of. "The King's fear and love for his son," as Mr. Tancock remarks, "are delicately used to draw the sympathy of the audience and to prevent his complaints from being too wearisome and unmanly."

387. The scene is an apartment in the royal palace. — 7. **wolf.** "The allusion is to the Greek proverb, *τὸν λύκον τῶν ὄτων ἔχω.*" (Wagner.) *Wolf* refers to the King. — 11. **to erect your son.** To make your son king.

391. The scene is inside Kenilworth Castle. — 17. **air of life.** Breath of life. Latin, *aura vitæ*. — 19. **dungeon.** It is conjectured

Digitized by Google

that the castle in which the King was confined was Berkeley, though he was undoubtedly removed thence later to Kenilworth. His description of the vault or dungeon would seem to apply to the former.

392 : 23. **old Edward.** He was only forty-three at the time of his murder. Stow often speaks of him as the " old king."

393. The scene is an apartment in the royal palace. — 6. **this letter.** The story of the ambiguous Latin line, as Professor Ward (*Hist. of Dram. Lit.*, I, 198) points out, is " taken from a contemporary account of Thomas de la Moor, who was an eyewitness of Edward II's resignation." Probably Marlowe derived it from Holinshed.

394 : 14. **being dead.** He being dead. — 31. **poison flowers.** Cf. *The Jew of Malta*, III, v, 65–106, and IV, vi, 45–49. Poisoning was a fashionable crime in Marlowe's time. Gifts, such as flowers, were ingeniously employed to poison persons at a distance. — 32. **To strangle . . . throat.** Lawn is a piece or strip of linen. " There was a species of torture in which a man was bound tightly to a frame, his nostrils were plugged, and a jet of water was sent down his throat carrying with it a strip of linen, which was drawn out from time to time to prevent complete suffocation. Cf. *Engl. Hist. Review*, April, 1889, p. 237. Such a mode of stopping the breath would have left no mark. For a notice of a different kind of water torture, compare *Aurora Leigh*, p. 17." (O. W. Tancock.)

395 : 60–62. **onus . . . provinciam.** These are Ciceronianisms, taking off the precise Latinity of the puritan, *i.e.* purist who affects them. — 68. **Major . . . nocere.** Cf. Ovid, *Metam.*, VI, 195. — The scene is now at Westminster.

397. The scene is within Berkeley Castle.

398 : 25. **lock.** *Lake* in the old edition. *Lock* is suggested by Mr. Bullen, who also thinks *lake* may mean the dungeon. — " A change of scene is supposed to the dungeon. The actor who personated Lightborn most probably drew a curtain and discovered the captive king." (Dyce.)

399 : 71. **bed.** It is not clear just what were the stage arrangements in this scene. There was very probably no bed in the dungeon. Dyce suggests that the bed was thrust upon the stage from the wing, after Gurney and Matrevis withdrew.

401. The scene is an apartment in the royal palace.

402 : 10. **Jove's huge tree.** The oak. A common allusion in the Elizabethan dramatists. Cf. *As you Like It*, III, ii, 218.

Digitized by Google

GLOSSARY

Terms readily found in an unabridged dictionary, an encyclopædia, or a gazetteer are for the most part not included in this list.

Abide, pay for.
Acantha, probably Acanthus, near Mount Athos.
Adamant, magnet, loadstone.
Again, against.
Albanus, Pietro d' Abano (*circa* 1250–1316), an Italian physician and alchemist.
Almain, German.
Amorous, effeminate.
Answerable (to), in keeping (with).
Aphorism, a maxim of medical art.
Argier, Algiers.
Argue, prove, manifest.
Artier, artery.
Asant', Zante.
Assure, pledge; solemnly promise.
Astracism, constellation.
Avouch, maintain as true, make good.
Azamor, a maritime town of Morocco.

Bagdeth, Bagdad.
Baliol, probably a misprint for *Belial*.
Balsera, Bassora or Basra, a city on the Shat-el-Arab, fifty-five miles from the Persian Gulf.
Bandy, exchange blows; contend.
Basilisk, "pieces of ordnance, so called from their fancied resemblance to the fabulous serpent of that name" (Cunningham).
Basso, bashaw; now written pasha.
Baston, stick, cudgel.
Belcher, a facetious term — probably = spitfire.
Belgia, Lower Germany, or the Netherlands, in which Hainault, a part of modern Belgium, was included.
Bevers, refreshments taken between meals.
Biledull, Beled-ul-Jerid (the land of dates), situated south of the Barbary States.
Bills, prescriptions or advertisements.
Blubbered, swollen with grief — a word formerly not used with a ridiculous significance.
Bombard, the earliest kind of cannon.
Borno, Bornu, a region in the eastern part of Central Africa.
Boss, a fat woman.
Bottle, bundle.
Brave, gaily dressed, fine.
Brave, scorn, insult.
Britainy, Britain.
But, only; for no other reason than.
Byather, Biafra, on the African west coast, north of the equator.

Call, offer salvation to. Cf. *St. Matthew*, xxii. 14, "Many are called, but few chosen."
Carbonado, grilled or broiled piece of flesh.
Case, couple.
Cast, consider; conjecture; plot.
Catzerie, roguery.
Cavalieros, mounds for the mounting of cannon.
Cazzo (Italian), a vulgar Italian oath; a base fellow.
Chafe, quarrel.
Chafer, a brazier.
Champion, an old spelling of *champaign*, level, open country.
Channel, gutter; neck or throat.
Chirke, Chirk, a parish in Wales near the border.
Coal-black Sea, the Black Sea.

Digitized by Google

Compass, cheat.
Competitor, companion, associate, sharer.
Conceit, fancy, imagination; thought, mind; anticipation.
Consort, band.
Controulment, control, check, restraint.
Convertite, convert.
Countenance, importance.
Counterbuff, beat, insult.
Countervail, equal.
Covent, convent.
Cross, a coin having a cross-shaped impression on one side.
Crossbite, to cheat in return.
Cullion, scoundrel; base fellow.
Curse, excommunicate.
Curstly, crossly.
Custom, enter at the custom-house, or pay the duty.

Dalliance, idle delay.
Dardania, Troy.
Dated, allotted.
Dead, kill.
Diametarily, diametrically.

Earn, yearn; be sad.
Ebena, probably a personification of *Even*, *Evening*.
Ecstasy, violent emotion.
Egregious, eminent, distinguished.
Embden, Emden, a town of ancient East Friesland.
Empale, enclose, encircle.
Entertain, receive into service.
Entreat, treat.
Envy, hate.
Erring, wandering.
Exercise, sermon.
Exigent, need, extremity

Fact, deed.
Fear, make fear, frighten.
Fleet, float.
Foil, defeat; dishonour.
Foil, to defile.
Follower, successor.
Forslow, to waste, neglect.
Fustian, nonsensical jargon; also, a punning perversion of *Faustus*.

Gaudy, adorned, ornamented.
Gear, business.
Gentleman, nobleman.
Glozing, flattering.
Gorgon, Demogorgon.
Grantland, Greenland.
Gravel, puzzle.
Guallatia, probably Gualata large oasis in Sahara, betw Morocco and Timbuktu.

Happily, haply.
Haught, lofty.
Hay, hey-de-guy, a rural danc
Hey-pass, juggler, from the t *hey-pass* employed by juggle
Hook, spear.
Horse-courser, horse-dealer.
Hypostasis, sediment.

Ill, ill deed.
Imbecility, incapacity.
Impartial, unkind — misused *partial*.
Imprecation, prayer.
Incivil, brutal.
Incony, dainty, sweet.
Injurious, insolent, offensive.

Jaertis, the Jaxartes River, n the Syr Darya in Bokhara.
Jerome's Bible, the Vulgate Latin version of the Scriptu attributed to St. Jerome, whom most of it was written
Jet, strut.
Jig, merry or satirical verses.
John the Great, Prester John fabulous Christian monarch the twelfth century.
Jubaltèr, Gibraltar.

Kern, an irregular foot-soldier.
Killingworth, Kenilworth.
Knave's acre, Poultney Str chiefly inhabited by dealers old goods and glass bottles.

Lady Vanity, an allegorical char ter in the old moralities.
Lake, ditch.
Lantchidol, "Lantchidol is t part of the Indian Ocean wh

Digitized by Google

lies between Java and New Holland (Australia)" (Broughton).
Leave, cease.
Let, hinder.
Linstock, the stick holding the match to set off a cannon.
Looseness, unrestrained conduct.
Lown, rascal; a variant of *loon*.
Lure, probably means light. But compare the term in falconry, meaning a decoy.

Mail, bag or trunk. Fr. *malle*.
Make a leg, to bow.
Malgrado, in spite of (Ital.).
Manage, wield; conduct, lead.
Manico, Manica, or Manika, a district of the Mozambique territory; Mashonaland.
Mare Major(e), the old name of the Black Sea — so called by Marco Polo.
Mare Roso, the Red Sea.
Mate, confound, humble. Cf. *checkmate*.
May, can.
Merchant, trading vessel.
Merely, purely.
Mithridate, an antidote for poisons.
Motion, mention.
Move, exasperate.
Muffes, a term used depreciatively of the Swiss and Germans.
Muschato, mustachio, moustache.

Natolia, Anatolia, a large region of Asiatic Turkey, nearly identical with Asia Minor.
Need, must.
New Temple, the new building of the Templars, modelled on the temple near the Holy Sepulchre, Jerusalem.

Oblia, Olbia, a Greek colony in Scythia, now Stomogil, on the river Bug, Russia.
on cai me on, the Greek ὂν καὶ μὴ ὄν of Aristotle, "being and not being."
Once, once for all.
Orminius' Mount, probably Armenyes in Transylvania.
Ostry, inn, hostelry.
Outlandish, foreign.
Outrageous, beyond all bounds.
Overpeer, look down upon.

Paramour, mistress — a term formerly used without any disreputable meaning.
Pass, care; be moved.
Passionate, agitated by strong feeling; sorrowful; compassionate.
Peevish, wayward.
Phyteus, probably a form of Pythius.
Pioner, the old form of *pioneer*.
Plage, region, clime.
Plainer, complainer, one who makes plaint.
Plate, a silver coin.
Podolia, a Russian province.
Port, gate.
Portague, a Portuguese gold coin.
Portingale, Portugal.
Portly, stately.
Practice, artifice.
Presently, at once.
Prest, ready.
Pretend, intend; portend.
Prevail, avail.
Prevent, anticipate.
Proceed, make progress; prosper.
Profess, adopt; be a teacher of.
Progne, Procne.
Proof, point.
Propterea quod, because.
Prorex, viceroy.
Protest, swear.
Purchase, plunder, loot.
Pyramides, probably obelisks, although formerly it also meant the spires of churches.

Quandoquidem, since that.
Quiet, fixed.
Quit, acquitted; free (of blame).
Quite, requite.

Rack, torture.
Racking, scudding.
Raze, graze, touch.
Reave, take away, steal.
Rebate, blunt.

Digitized by Google

Redeem, pay back, hand over.
Reduce, repair.
Regiment, rule.
Remit, neglect.
Reny, abjure; deny one's faith.
Resistless, unable to resist.
Resolve, dissolve; inform, satisfy.
Respect, consideration; regard for the particular circumstances, or for the difference in circumstances.
Rest, remain.
Retire, retreat.
Retorqued, bent back.
Rhamnus, in Attica, where Nemesis had a temple.
Rhodes, Roda, in the Duchy of Saxe-Altenburg.
Riso, Riza or Rize, a town near Trebizond.
Rivo Castiliano, an exclamation used at drinking bouts.
Running, quickly prepared, hasty.
Rutter, trooper, ritter.

Saba, Sabæa; the queen of Sheba.
Sarell, seraglio, harem.
Scalonia, Ascalon.
Scamble, collect, scrape.
Sclavonian, natives of Scalonia (Ascalon).
Scour, a slang term for *chastise*.
Several, separate.
Shadow, image forth.
Shall, is sure to, will certainly.
Shaver, a term of belittlement or contempt originally applied to priests with shaven crown.
Shot, musketeers.
Should, would certainly.
Silverlings, silver coins. Cf. *Isaiah* vii. 23.
Snickle, a noose; hangman's halter.
Sod, if; if so be; provided that.
Sollar, attic; loft.
Sonnet, a particular set of notes on the trumpet or cornet, different from a flourish; a sennet.
Sort, turn; a small company.
Stand, insist.
State, majesty; power; person of state.
State, establish.
Stavesacre, kind of larkspur, used as a cure for lice.
Stay, await, stay for; break off; stand still.
Still, constantly, unceasingly; always.
Still, distil.
Stoka, a confluent of the river Danube.
Stomach, feel anger at, take offence.
Stoop, humiliate, put down.
Sure, affianced.

Taint, touch in tilting.
Tall, brave, bold.
Tanti, so much for that (or them).
Terminine, terminus, limit.
Terrene Sea, Terrene Main, the Mediterranean.
Tesella, now Tesegdelt, a town of Morocco, south of Mogador.
Timeless, untimely; premature.
Tire, prey, seize; a term in falconry.
To, equal to.
Tottered, tattered.
Towardness, fitness — the opposite of *frowardness*.
Train, stratagem.
Train, entice, lure, entangle.
Trier, Treves.
Triumph, tournament.
Trowl, roll.
Tyras, the Dniester River.

Ure, practice.

Vail, lower, humble; lower the flag.
Valurous, valuable.
Vanholt, Anhalt.

Weed, garment.
Wertenberg, Wittenberg.
When, an exclamation of impatience.
When as, when.
While, until.
Will, desire.

Yet, even now.

Zoacum, a tree described in the Koran, Chap. xxvii.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
3 9015 00513 4294

DO NOT REMOVE
OR
MUTILATE CARDS

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google